



## **LESSON A**

### **Learning to read Bulgarian**

Bulgarian is written in the Cyrillic alphabet, the same alphabet in which Russian is written. The correspondence between letters and sounds in Bulgarian is very close to that of Russian, but not identical. Once students who know Russian have adjusted to the minor differences, they will find Bulgarian very easy to read.

Students who are encountering the Cyrillic alphabet for the first time should not despair -- it is not as hard as it looks. Indeed, it will be considerably easier to learn to read Bulgarian than it was to learn to read English. One of the reasons for this is that, with very few exceptions, every Bulgarian letter always stands for the same sound. Furthermore, every sound is always rendered by the same Bulgarian letter. Once the correspondence between letter and sound is learned, therefore, one is able to read (and to write) Bulgarian. The few exceptions to the "one letter = one sound" rule will be detailed in Lesson C.

The letters of the Bulgarian alphabet are presented below in four different groups. The full Bulgarian alphabet is given at the end of Lesson A.

#### **Letter and sound found in English, letter-sound correspondence as in English**

<i>Letter</i>	<i>sound</i>	<i>as in</i>
a	a	father
e	e	bet
к	k	skin, score
м	m	mall, mix
т	t	stiff

Note that -т- and -к- are pronounced *without* the puff of breath that normally accompanies them in English. Pronounce "kin" holding your hand in front of your mouth; now pronounce "skin". You will note that the "k" in "skin" lacks the puff of breath that is present when you say "kin". *All* instances of -к- (and of -т-) in Bulgarian should be pronounced in this second way, without the puff of breath.

**Letter and sound found in English,  
letter-sound correspondence not as in English**

Letter	sound	as in
В	v	video, evidence
Н	n	noise, instance
О	o	or
Р	r	[trilled -r-] *
С	s	sister, center
У	u	boot
Х	ch	[velar -ch-] **

\* found in many European languages

\*\* as in Scottish *loch* or German *Bach*

The sounds represented by -p- and -x- exist in English only as an imitation of the native pronunciation of certain European speakers. These sounds are quite common, however, especially in certain intellectual environments.

The sounds represented by -o- and -y- are very close to those of English -o- and -u-. The difference is that the Bulgarian vowel sounds are pronounced without the offglide (the slight "w" sound at the end) that accompanies them in English. Pronounce "boat" and "boot" very slowly and listen for the point at which each vowel glides down into a hint of "w". To pronounce the Bulgarian sound correctly, stop *before* the English -o- or -oo- sound moves to the "w" stage.

**Sound found in English,  
letter not found in English**

Letter	sound	as in
б	b	boy, abide
г	g	girl, again
д	d	doll, add
ж	zh	pleasure
з	z	zebra, to use
и	ee	feet
й	y	yard, bayou
л	l	less, alive
п	p	spin
ф	f	feature, tough
ц	ts	cats, tsetse
ч	ch	church
ш	sh	shift, sugar
щ	sht	ashtray
ъ	[a] *	sofa

\* English unstressed [a]

Bulgarian -п- is pronounced like English -p- in "spin" (that is, without the puff of breath that accompanies the English -p- in "pin"; see the note above for -т- and -к-). Bulgarian -н- is pronounced without the final glide into "y" (see the note above for -о- and -у-).

The other sound-letter correspondences may seem strange, but will be acquired with practice. Pronounce the English words given above and listen for the sound. Take care to differentiate between the sounds -п- and -с-, and between -н- and -й-. Students who know Russian should take additional care to note that -щ- signifies both the sounds -sh- and -t- together, and that -ъ- represents a fully stressable vowel.

### Neither sound nor letter found in English

The letters in the final group function to distinguish hard from soft consonants. To learn the hard/soft distinction, compare the pronunciation of the middle consonant in the following pairs of English words:

<i>hard</i>	<i>soft</i>
canon	canyon
willow	William

Most consonants in Bulgarian are hard. Soft consonants are possible only before the vowels -о-, -у-, -а- and -ъ-, and are signaled by *vowel* letters, as follows:

<i>Letter</i>	<i>meaning</i>
ь	found only in the sequence -ьо-, signifies that the preceding consonant is soft
ю	signifies sequence of soft consonant + -у-
я	signifies sequence of soft consonant + -а-, or soft consonant + -ъ

Here are examples of soft consonants in Bulgarian, and of their expression in writing:

<i>hard</i>	<i>meaning</i>	<i>soft</i>	<i>meaning</i>	<i>contrast</i>
синовé	sons	сѣньо	blue	[hard vs. soft -н-]
балáда	ballad	бѣла	white	[hard vs. soft -б-]
лúда	crazy	любóв	love	[hard vs. soft -л-]

The letter -я- is also written for the sounds [-а-] and [-ъ-] when they occur after the letter -и-. Both the sequences и + а and и + ъ are written -ия. When the



## Lesson A

letters -ю- and -я- occur in initial position or after a vowel, they represent a complex of sounds, as follows:

<i>letter</i>	<i>meaning</i>	<i>written example</i>	<i>meaning</i>	<i>pronounced as</i>
ю	й + у	у́ютен	comfortable	[уй́утен]
я	й + а	я́бълка	apple	[йа́бълка]

Remember that the letters -ю- and -я- always signify a vowel sound *plus* something else: either the softening of a preceding consonant, or the presence of a preceding "y" glide.

### The Bulgarian alphabet

The names of the Cyrillic vowel letters are as they are pronounced, while the names of the consonant letters are pronounced with a following -ъ ( а, бъ, въ, гъ, дъ, etc.). The name of the letter -й- is и крѣтко, the name of the letter -ъ- is ер голям, and the name of the letter -ь- is ер малък.

Students learning Cyrillic for the first time must devote some attention to learning the alphabet sequence, as one cannot use a dictionary effectively without knowing alphabetical order. The order of letters in the Bulgarian alphabet is as in English in certain sequences, but quite different in others. For instance:

#### *Similar to English*

a-b	d-e	i-j-k-l-m-n-o-p	г-s-t-u
а-б	д-е	и-й-к-л-м-н-о-п	р-с-т-у

#### *Different from English*

b-d-e-f-g-h-i	f .. u-v-w-x	(end of alphabet)
б-в-г-д-ж-з-и	у-ф-х	ц-ч-ш-щ-ъ-ь-ю-я

The full Bulgarian alphabet is given on the following pages. Both upper and lower case letters are given, alongside with the Latin letters which are usually used when Bulgarian words are transliterated (rendered in the Latin alphabet).

Two different transliteration possibilities are given, the so-called "academic" transliteration, and the several transliterations used in more popular writings.

In this book, Bulgarian is transliterated as little as possible. In the few cases where it is necessary, a mixed system has been used: the "academic" version of the last four letters and the "popular" version of the others.

## THE BULGARIAN ALPHABET

CYRILLIC		TRANSLITERATED	
<i>upper case</i>	<i>lower case</i>	<i>academic</i>	<i>popular</i>
А	а	a	a
Б	б	b	b
В	в	v	v
Г	г	g	g
Д	д	d	d
Е	е	e	e
Ж	ж	ž	zh
З	з	z	z
И	и	i	i
Й	й	j	i
К	к	k	k
Л	л	l	l
М	м	m	m
Н	н	n	n
О	о	o	o
П	п	p	p
Р	р	r	r
С	с	s	s (ss)
Т	т	t	t
У	у	u	u (ou)
Ф	ф	f	f
Х	х	x	h (kh)
Ц	ц	c	ts
Ч	ч	č	ch
Ш	ш	š	sh
Щ	щ	št	sht
Ъ	ъ	ǎ	u
	ь	,	
Ю	ю	ju	iu (yu)
Я	я	ja	ia (ya)

## **LESSON B**

### **Learning to write Bulgarian**

It is best to learn to write Cyrillic by practicing on lined paper. Write the letters double height at the beginning, so as to learn which ones extend above (or below) the line and which ones remain the same height. The handwritten words on the following pages illustrate the formation of capital and lower case letters at the beginning of a word, and of lower case letters in the middle of a word. The student should be able to guess the meanings of most of these words.

It is advisable to learn to write Bulgarian letters correctly at the outset. It is much harder to unlearn mistakes once they have become set into habit.

#### **Height of the letters**

All capital letters extend to the full height. Of the lower case letters, only б, в and ф are written as high as capital letters (in the scheme as given below, only they extend above the line). All others are written at the same height (the height of the space between the two middle lines). Pay particular attention to this in the case of к and л: they do not reach the same height as their English counterparts.

#### **Depth of the letters**

The letters д, р, у, ц and ш extend below the line. This will seem natural for д and у, but it must be learned especially for the others. For ц and ш, the portion that extends below the line is the loop at the lower right corner.

#### **Diacritics and other distinguishing marks**

The breve mark *must* be written over the letter ѝ, in order to distinguish it from the letter и. Indeed, there are two words which consist only of the letter и. The one which means "her" is written with a grave accent mark (ѝ) in order to distinguish it from the one which means "and" (и).

The letters л, м and я are written with a small hook at the beginning, which *must* be there in order to distinguish them from other letters.

# Examples of Bulgarian handwriting

А, а	Америка	аспирин	пират
Аа	Америка	аспирин	пират
Б, б	България	бар	орбита
Бб	България	бар	орбита
В, в	Вьетнам	виза	овал
Вв	Вьетнам	виза	овал
Г, г	Гренландия	гангстер	диалог
Гг	Гренландия	гангстер	диалог
Д, д	Дания	дилър	шоколад
Дд	Дания	дилър	шоколад
Е, е	Европа	екватор	диета
Ее	Европа	екватор	диета
Ж, ж	Дон Жуан	жокей	имидж
Жж	Дон Жуан	жокей	имидж



Lesson B

З, з

Нова Зеландия

зона

дизайн

Зз Нова Зеландия зона дизайн

И, и

Италия

иллюстрация

стил

Ии Италия иллюстрация стил

Й, й

Йордания

йерархия

май

Йй Йордания йерархия май

К, к

Канада

кабина

рефлекс

Кк Канада кабина рефлекс

Л, л

Лондон

лазер

култ

Лл Лондон лазер култ

М, м

Мексико

мемоар

компютър

Мм Мексико мемоар компютър

Н, н

Норвегия

номер

секунда

Нн Норвегия номер секунда

# Lesson B

О, о

Осло

орбита

маратон

Оо

Осло

орбита

маратон

П, п

Пловдив

пакт

апатия

Пп

Пловдив

пакт

апатия

Р, р

Русия

ромб

метър

Рр

Русия

ромб

метър

С, с

София

саксофон

маска

Сс

София

саксофон

маска

Т, т

Турция

трилър

рекет

Тт

Турция

трилър

рекет

У, у

Унгария

утопия

стимул

Уу

Унгария

утопия

стимул

Ф, ф

Франция

фарс

графика

Фф

Франция

фарс

графика

Х, х

Хелзинки

хаос

шрих

Хх

Хелзинки

хаос

шрих

Lesson B

Ц, ц

Цейлон

церемония

танц

Цу цу Цейлон церемония танц

Ч, ч

Чикаго

чинчила

сандвич

Ч.ч Чикаго чинчила сандвич

Ш, ш

Шотландия

шанс

туш

Ш.ш Шотландия шанс туш

Щ, щ

Щраус

щат

машаб

Щу щу Щраус щат машаб

Ъ, ъ

ъперкът

спектакъл

сър

Ъъ ьперкът спектакъл сър

Ь

Кьолн

шофьор

импортьор

Ь Кьолн шофьор импортьор

Ю, ю

Югославия

юни

илюзия

Юю Югославия юни илюзия

Я, я

Япония

яхта

батерия

Яя Япония яхта батерия

## LESSON C

### Learning to pronounce Bulgarian

The best way to learn to pronounce Bulgarian correctly is, of course, to listen regularly and carefully to native speakers of Bulgarian (or to tapes of them) and to imitate them. The following comments are only a guide: the way to success is constant and consistent practice.

#### Word accent

Word accent in Bulgarian is similar to that of English in a number of ways. First, the syllable of the word which is accented is pronounced louder and with more emphasis than the other syllables of the word. Second, one cannot predict which syllable of the word is accented but must learn it for each word. Third, the syllable which is accented is pronounced clearly as it is written, but the syllables which are unaccented are often pronounced with less enunciation. As an example, divide the English words "initiation" and "stationary" into their separate syllables:

i - ni - ti - á - tion      stá - tio - na - ry

In "initiation", the fourth syllable is accented, and in "stationary", the first syllable is accented. In each case the accented "a" sound is clearer, stronger, and somewhat longer than the other sounds. To pronounce these words correctly, one must know precisely which syllable to accent in each word. Unfortunately, the spelling of English does not provide this information.

Bulgarian is similar: one must know the place of accent in order to pronounce the word correctly, and Bulgarian spelling does not provide this information. As a guide to learning, therefore, all Bulgarian words in this textbook will be accented. The student should memorize the place of accent when learning each word, and read and speak aloud as much as possible so that the place of accent will begin to sound right to the ear.

Another similarity between Bulgarian and English concerns unaccented words and particles. Take as an example the English sentence "I'll see you." Although it is composed of four meaningful chunks, only two bear clear stress (and in fast speech, only one does). These four chunks are

I	'll	see	you
+	-	++	-



## Lesson C

The words marked with a hyphen are written as separate components and have separate meaning. In terms of accent, however, they must lean on the neighboring word in order for the sentence to be pronounced correctly.

Bulgarian has a number of small words of this sort, called "clitics". They have no accent of their own, and obey strict word order rules. Learning to produce them in the proper order while still not accenting them takes considerable practice. Once achieved, however, it is a major step towards the acquisition of a real Bulgarian "accent".

One accentual property of Bulgarian which is not shared by English is the fact that Bulgarian can shift accent between certain forms of the same word (such as singular vs. plural). Such changes of accent must also be learned with each word.

### Unstressed vowels

Syllables which are not accented are pronounced with less enunciation than those which are; this phenomenon is sometimes called "vowel reduction". The degree and manner of this reduction vary in different areas of Bulgaria, but the following description is characteristic of most speakers in the capital area, Sofia. (Throughout this textbook, letters written within brackets represent the *sound* of a word and not its spelling.)

<i>letter</i>	<i>sound when accented</i>	<i>sound when unaccented</i>
о	[o]	[y] *
а	[a]	[ъ]
я	[я]	[йъ]

\* or sometimes like a mix between [o] and [y].

Unstressed -и-, -у- and -е- usually do not change their pronunciation. To illustrate vowel reduction, here is the spelling, and the most frequent pronunciation by Bulgarians, of three sample words:

<i>spelling</i>	<i>pronunciation</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>
няколко	[някулку]	several
пощата	[пощътъ]	post office
ютия	[йутййъ]	iron [for clothing]

This incomplete correspondence of sound and letter can give the student some difficulty at the beginning. With attention, it is relatively easy to get used to.

## Voicing assimilation

Most Bulgarian consonants exist in pairs, according to a phenomenon called "voicing". The terms ("voiced" vs. "unvoiced") are not important to learn, but the relationship is. This is because when certain consonants are pronounced together, the first will adjust its degree of voicing to the second, in a process called voicing assimilation.

"Voicing" refers to a relatively stronger vibration of the vocal cords. To hear voicing in English, hold your hand on your throat and say first "bin", then "pin". The vibration which distinguishes the sound -b- from the sound -p- is called voicing.

The Bulgarian consonants for which this distinction is important are the following:

(voiced)	б	д	г	з	ж	дж	в
(unvoiced)	п	т	к	с	ш	ч	ф

When a voiced consonant occurs immediately before an unvoiced one, it is pronounced as its unvoiced partner (the one immediately below it in the chart); and when an unvoiced consonant occurs immediately before a voiced one, it is pronounced as its voiced partner (the one immediately above it in the chart). When voiced consonants occur at the end of the word, they are pronounced like their unvoiced partners. Here are examples of voicing assimilation in Bulgarian:

*written form    spoken form    assimilation process*

изпúскам	[испúскам]	voiced > unvoiced before unvoiced (-з- > -с- before -п-) unvoiced > voiced before voiced (-т- > -д- before -б-) voiced > unvoiced at end of word
отбйвам	[одбйвам]	
гrát	[грát]	

## "Grammatical" pronunciation

There is a striking non-correspondence between letter and sound in the case of three different grammatical categories. In these instances, sounds that are *written* as -а or -я are always *pronounced* as [-ъ] or [-йъ]. When the vowel is unstressed, the difference is minimal, as unstressed -а and -я are usually pronounced as [-ъ] / [-йъ] anyway. When the vowel is stressed, however, the difference is very noticeable.

This phenomenon occurs in the 1<sup>st</sup> singular and 3<sup>rd</sup> plural present of verbs, and the definite form of masculine nouns. In the following examples, the apostrophe indicates that the preceding consonant is soft.

# Lesson C

	<i>spelling</i>	<i>pronunciation</i>	<i>meaning</i>
<i>1<sup>st</sup> singular</i>	четá вървя	[четъ́] [върв'ъ́]	I read I walk
<i>3<sup>d</sup> plural</i>	четáт вървят	[четъ́т] [върв'ъ́т]	they read they walk
<i>masculine definite</i>	в градá деня́т през деня́	[в градъ́] [ден'ъ́т] [през ден'ъ́]	in the city the day during the day



Holiday sign in downtown Sofia, late December 1990

## LESSON 1

### **DIALOGUE**

#### От Варна за Сѳия

// Милѳна, Димитър, Ангел, Дѳйвид и Джули пътуват за Сѳия от Варна. //

Милена: Тръгваме! Най-пѳсле!

Ангел: Вие за къде пътувате?

Димитър: За Сѳия. А вие?

Ангел: И аз пътувам за Сѳия. Как се казвате?

Димитър: Аз се казвам Димитър Стойков. А тя...

Милена: Казвам се Милѳна! Милѳна Стойкова!

Ангел: Откъде сте? От Варна ли сте?

Димитър: Да. Ние сме от Варна.

Ангел: А вие, госпѳжице?

Джули: Аз се казвам Джули Бейкър. Студѳнтка съм, от Амѳрика.

Дейвид: И аз съм студѳнт, също от Амѳрика. Казвам се Дѳйвид Бѳйд.

Ангел: От Амѳрика ли сте? Студѳнти? Мнѳго интереснѳ!

Милена: Ёй! Откъде дѳха? Става течѳние!

Джули: Каквѳ е "течѳние"?



## BASIC GRAMMAR

### 1.1. Gender of nouns

Nouns in Bulgarian are either masculine, feminine or neuter. Practically all masculine nouns end in a consonant, and most feminine nouns end in -a. This includes most personal names. Here are some examples of masculine and feminine nouns:

<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>
Димитър	Милена
Стойков	Стойкова
Ангел	госпожица
студент	студентка

Nouns referring to profession or role are usually masculine. They can refer either to a male person, or to the category in general. The same noun with -ка added refers only to a female person.

### 1.2. Vocative form of nouns

When a person or object is being addressed, a special form, called the vocative, is used. The endings are -e for masculine nouns and -o (or -e) for feminine nouns. Here are examples of the most frequently used vocative forms, those for the nouns meaning "Mr.", "Mrs." and "Miss". Note that the accent changes place in the vocative of госпожа (Госпожо!).

<i>neutral form</i>	<i>vocative form</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>
господин	господин-е	Mr.
госпожа	госпож-о	Mrs.
госпожица	госпожиц-е	Miss

### 1.3. Plural of nouns

Most masculine nouns, and practically all feminine nouns, form the plural by adding -и. Masculine nouns add this ending directly to the singular form, while feminine nouns replace the singular ending -a by the ending -и. For example:

	<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>
<i>masculine</i>	студѐнт	студѐнт-и
<i>feminine</i>	студѐнтк-а	студѐнтк-и

The noun *госпожѐ* shifts stress in the plural (*госпѐжи*). Such stress shifts are very exceptional.

#### 1.4. Personal pronouns: the verb "be"

Following is the conjugation of the verb "be" in the present tense. It is given together with the personal pronouns.

	<i>singular</i>		<i>plural</i>	
<i>1<sup>st</sup> person</i>	ѐз съм	I am	ниѐ сме	we are
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> person</i>	ти си	you are *	виѐ сте	you are **
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> person</i>	той ѐ	he is	теѐ са	they are
	тя ѐ	she is		

\* (single person / familiar)

\*\* (single person / formal, or more than one person)

The 3<sup>rd</sup> plural form *са* is pronounced [сѐ].

#### 1.5. Present tense of verbs

All verbs have six forms in the present tense. The subject of the verb determines which form is to be used. Here is the present tense conjugation of the verb *пѣтѹвам* "go, travel". Many other Bulgarian verbs are conjugated according to this same pattern.

*пѣтѹвам*

		<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>	
<i>пѣтѹвам</i>	<i>1<sup>st</sup> person</i>	пѣтѹв-ам	пѣтѹв-амѐ	<i>пѣтѹвѐме</i>
<i>пѣтѹваѡ</i>	<i>2<sup>nd</sup> person</i>	пѣтѹв-аш	пѣтѹв-атѐ	<i>пѣтѹватѐ</i>
<i>пѣтѹва</i>	<i>3<sup>rd</sup> person</i>	пѣтѹв-а	пѣтѹв-ат	<i>пѣтѹват</i>

Because the ending of the verb always specifies the verb's subject, personal pronouns are optional in Bulgarian. The phrases "I am a student" and "I am traveling to Sofia" can be expressed both with and without the pronoun "I". For example:

## Първи урок / Lesson 1

Пътувам за Сѳфия.	I am traveling to Sofia.
Аз пътувам за Сѳфия.	[same]
Студѣнт съм.	I am a student.
Аз съм студѣнт.	[same]

### 1.6. Questions

Questions in Bulgarian, as in English, are of two types. One type includes a word such as “why?”, “who?”, and “where?”. This type of question requests specific information. The other kind simply asks whether a particular statement is true or not, and expects yes or no as an answer. In Bulgarian, as in English, each type of question has specific word-order rules associated with it.

If a question word such as “where?” is present, it always comes right before the verb. Thus, if a subject is present, the word order will be different from that of English. For example:

Вие	За къде	пътувате?	Where are you going?
	за къде	пътувате?	[same]

The word order in a yes-no question changes only if the verb is **съм**. In these sentences the verb is placed at the end. Otherwise the word order stays the same. All yes-no questions, however, must contain the particle **ли**. This particle is placed right *before* a form of the verb **съм**, and right *after* all other verb forms. For example:

Вие	пътувате	днѣс.	You are traveling today.
Вие	пътувате	ли днѣс?	Are you traveling today?
Вие	сте	студѣнт.	You are a student.
Вие	студѣнт	ли сте?	Are you a student?

### 1.7. Prepositions

The usage of prepositions in Bulgarian (as in English) is highly idiomatic. Most prepositions have a basic meaning, but all have numerous additional meanings which are not directly predictable from the basic meaning.

(a) The basic meaning of the preposition **от** is that of English “from”. This meaning is also present in the compound question word **откъдѣ**.

Аз съм от Върна.	I am from Varna.
Откъдѣ дѹха?	Where is it blowing from?

(b) The basic meaning of the preposition **за** is that of English "for". When referring to a travel goal, it is usually translated "to". The English expressions "Where are you headed for?" or "I'm leaving for Europe" may help the student to remember this usage of **за**.

Пътуваме за Сѳия.  
За къде пътувате?

We are traveling to Sofia.  
Where are you traveling to?

### 1.8. Clitics and word order

Bulgarian includes a number of small, unaccented words called clitics. Among the most frequent clitics are the forms of the verb **съм**, and the particle **се**. Clitics must obey special word order rules, the most important of which is that they cannot begin a sentence or phrase. In addition, the particle **се** must always occur next to the verb it accompanies (and directly before it if possible). Likewise, a form of **съм** must always occur next to a predicate noun or adjective (and directly before it if possible). Here are examples:

Аз се казвам Дѳвид Бѳйд.  
Казвам се Дѳвид Бѳйд.

My name is David Boyd.  
[same]

Аз съм студѳнт.  
Студѳнт съм.

I am a student.  
[same]

### 1.9. The conjunction "and"

There are two different ways to express the idea "and" in Bulgarian. If the two things joined are considered to be equivalent, the conjunction **и** is used; but if there is some sort of contrast, Bulgarians use the conjunction **а**. For example:

Милѳна и Димитър пътуват за Сѳия. Milena and Dimitri are traveling to Sofia.

Милѳна пътува за Сѳия, а Веселин пътува за Габрово. Milena is traveling to Sofia, and Veselin is traveling to Gabrovo.



## EXERCISES

I. Write the questions to which the following are answers:

1. Ние пътуваме за Варна. *Nie pătuvame za Varne.*
2. Да, те са студенти.
3. Да, той е лекар.
4. От София съм.
5. Той е от София, а тя е от Варна.
6. Казвам се Милена. *Kazvam se Milena.*
7. Той се казва Максим. *Toj se kaza Maksim.*

II. Fill in the blanks with the correct verb form.

1. Ангел \_\_\_\_\_ от София.
2. Милена и Димитър \_\_\_\_\_ от Варна.
3. Аз откъде \_\_\_\_\_?
4. Вие от Америка ли \_\_\_\_\_?
5. Ти студент ли \_\_\_\_\_?
6. Ние \_\_\_\_\_ студентки.
7. Те от София ли \_\_\_\_\_?

III. Choose the correct conjunction.

1. Аз се казвам Иван \_\_\_\_\_ вие как се казвате?
2. Ние сме от Варна \_\_\_\_\_ те са от Габрово.
3. Джули \_\_\_\_\_ Дейвид са студенти от Америка. \_\_\_\_\_ Ангел не е студент.
4. Иван \_\_\_\_\_ Коста са лекари.
5. Иван е лекар \_\_\_\_\_ Коста е лекар.
6. Иван е лекар \_\_\_\_\_ Димитър не е.
7. Аз се казвам Мария, \_\_\_\_\_ тя се казва Мария.

## ADDITIONAL GRAMMAR NOTES

### 1.1a. Gender of nouns

Both first and last names in Bulgarian usually mark gender. Thus, male members of a family will have surnames ending in a consonant (Стóйков), while female members will have surnames ending in -а (Стóйкова).

Foreign names are spelled as they are pronounced:

Джу́ли Бе́йкър	Julie Baker
Де́йвид Бо́йд	David Boyd

Masculine nouns referring to a profession or role cover a broad range of meaning: they can mean the category in general, a specific male person who is a member of that category, or (in the plural) a mixed group at least one of which is male. The same noun with the suffix -ка refers exclusively to a specific female person who belongs to that category. Compare the following possible translations:

Те са студéнти. They are students.

- a) "they" = a group of male students
- b) "they" = a group of male and female students
- c) "they" = general (gender not important)

Те са студéнтки. They are students.

"they" = a group of female students

When Bulgarians choose to focus more on the fact of a profession than on the sex of its practitioner, they may also use the masculine form to refer to a woman representative of that profession:

Тя е ле́кар. She is a doctor.

For many nouns such as студéнт and ле́кар, there also exist the suffixed nouns студéнтка and ле́карка. In all cases the non-suffixed noun refers either to males specifically or to the category in general, and the suffixed noun refers exclusively to females. Glossary lists in this textbook will designate nouns of this sort as follows:

Glossary listing:	студéнт (ка)	student
-------------------	--------------	---------

### 1.3a. Vocative form of nouns

The title **господѝн** is used in the vocative when it stands alone, but when it appears with a surname, the neutral form is used.

Господѝне!	Sir!
Господѝн Атанасов!	Mr. Atanasov!

Certain masculine nouns add **-ю** in the vocative. Among these are **другѝр** "comrade" and **приятѝл** "friend". The vocative forms of **другѝр** and **другѝрка** are **другѝрю** (both with and without a surname) and **другѝрко**. The vocative forms of personal names will be learned in Lesson 2.

### 1.4a. Personal pronouns; the verb "be"

As in most European languages (other than English), Bulgarian has two different words meaning "you". The singular form **тѝ** is used to address children, animals, God, and close friends. The plural form **вѝе** is used to address people one does not know well and wishes to treat with courtesy, or those who are elders or people of higher rank. In this meaning, the pronoun **вѝе** refers to a single person. When it is written in a letter, it is usually capitalized. The pronoun **вѝе** (non-capitalized) is also the only form one can use to address a group of people.

In English, one must always use a subject pronoun. One cannot, for instance, say \* "Am a student", but must rather say "I am a student". (The asterisk means that a phrase or sentence is ungrammatical.) In Bulgarian, however, subject pronouns are optional. They are used when the person is identified for the first time, or when one wishes to emphasize the identity of the subject. Otherwise, they are omitted.

Third person singular pronouns are **тѝй** (masculine), **тѝя** (feminine) and **тѝ** (neuter). Although most nouns designating human beings are either masculine or feminine, there are a few neuter nouns which also refer to humans (such as **детѝ** "child", **момчѝ** "boy" and **момѝчѝ** "girl"). The neuter pronoun is used to refer to these nouns.

### 1.6a. Questions

Both Bulgarian and English have specific word order rules for the formation of questions. Furthermore, both languages have different rules for yes-no questions and for Q-word questions (those containing a question word such as "who", "what", or the like).

## Първи урок / Lesson 1

Q-word questions in English must reverse the order of subject and auxiliary verb. In the following, for example, the subject, "you", and the auxiliary verb, "are", switch places:

(statement)		You	are		going.
(question)	Where		are	you	going?

To form correct Q-word questions in Bulgarian, one must remember both that the word order does *not* shift, and that the Q-word itself must always precede the verb directly. Thus:

(statement)	Вие		пътувате.
(question)	Вие	за къде	пътувате?
		За къде	пътувате?

Yes-no questions in English are formed by changing the order of subject and verb and adding rising intonation. Note the difference between the statement and the question in the following:

### Statement

You are a student.	<i>word order</i> [subject - verb]	<i>sentence intonation</i> falling
--------------------	---------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

### Question

Are you a student?	<i>word order</i> [verb - subject]	<i>sentence intonation</i> rising
--------------------	---------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

In Bulgarian, the word order changes only if the verb is **съм**; otherwise it remains the same. The particle **ли** is always added, however. It carries no stress of its own, but causes a strong high-pitched stress on the immediately preceding word. Study the following contrasts between statement and question:

### Statement

	<i>meaning</i>	<i>intonation</i>
Вие пътувате днес.	You are traveling today.	sentence: falling
Вие сте студент.	You are a student.	sentence: falling

### Question

	<i>meaning</i>	<i>intonation</i>
Вие пътувате ли днес?	Are you traveling today?	verb: high sentence: falling
Вие студент ли сте?	Are you a student?	predicate: high sentence: falling

### 1.7a. Prepositions

Monosyllabic prepositions are pronounced together with their objects as one word. Each of the following phrases, therefore, has only one accent:

от Върна	from Varna
за Сърфия	to Sofia

Students who know other Slavic languages must pay especial attention to the usage of prepositional phrases in Bulgarian. This is because nouns in Bulgarian, unlike those in other Slavic languages, do not have case endings. Relationships between nouns are expressed exclusively by prepositional phrases, and the same preposition can have a number of different meanings depending on the context. One example is the preposition **на**, which has at least three basic meanings:

<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Corresponding case form in other Slavic languages</i>
on	Locative (sometimes called prepositional)
to	Dative
of	Genitive

### 1.8a. Clitics: the particle *ce*

The particle *ce* occurs together with a number of verbs. This particle has several meanings, the most general of which is to make a verb intransitive. When *ce* accompanies a verb, it is an integral part of that verb and must appear with every instance of the verb. Although some verbs do not even exist without *ce*, most verbs exist in two variants -- with and without *ce*. For these verbs, it is important to note that the presence or absence of *ce* changes the meaning. For instance, **казвам** (without *ce*) means "say", but **казвам се** means "to be called":

Казвам се Джули Бейкър.	My name is Julie Baker.
-------------------------	-------------------------

### 1.9a. The conjunction "and"

The contrast in meaning between the conjunctions **а** and **и** is much greater when they are used at the beginning of a sentence. In these cases, **и** is usually translated as "also", while **а** continues to be translated as "and". For example:

И аз пътувам за Сърфия.	I'm also traveling to Sofia.
А вие, госпожице?	And you, miss?

## **SAMPLE SENTENCES**

1. -- Лéкар ли сте?  
-- Дá, а вíе?  
-- И áз.
2. -- За кýдe пътýватe днeс?  
-- За Вáрна. И вíе ли?  
-- И áз.
3. -- Елéна и Лилýна са студéнтки. А Мари́я и Ёскра?  
-- И Мари́я e студéнтка. А Ёскра не é студéнтка. Тя e преподавáтелка.
4. Áз кáзвам: "Кáк се кáзватe?"  
Тóй кáзва: "Кáзвам се Áнгел. А вíе?"  
Áз кáзвам: "И áз се кáзвам Áнгел."
5. -- Каквó кáзваш?  
-- Кáзвам íстината.  
  
-- Кáк се кáзваш?  
-- Кáзвам се Ивáн.

## **SENTENCES FOR TRANSLATION**

1. Are you a teacher, Miss?
2. Are you from Varna? We are going to Varna soon.
3. His name is Angel. He is a physician. He is from Plovdiv.
4. Does he know Mrs. Antonova? She is also from Plovdiv.
5. The Stoykovs are traveling to Sofia today. They are teachers.
6. Where are you from, sir? And where are you going?
7. Lilyana and Milena are friends. David and Julie are also friends.



## READING SELECTION

### Кореспонденция - (1)

Бойко Атанасов е лекар. Калина Атанасова е учителка. Те са от София. И Боб Мичел е лекар. Той е от Сан Франциско, а сега пътува за София.

15 март, Сан Франциско

Господин Атанасов,

Аз се казвам Роберт Мичел. Лекар съм. Приятел съм на Джон Грийн. Той е учител в София. Познава госпожа Атанасова.

Скоро пътувам за София. Вие сега в София ли сте? И вие, казва Джон, сте лекар. Значи, ние сме лекари. Много интересно! За съжаление аз разбирам само малко български.

Роберт Мичел



Alexander Nevsky Cathedral, Sofia (detail of dome)

## GLOSSARY

а	and	как се казваш?	what is your name?
а вие, госпожице?	and you, miss?		(familiar)
аз	I	какво	what
аз се казвам	my name is	какво е "течение"?	what's a "течение"? / what does течение mean?
бай	uncle, old man *	кир	sir (archaic term *)
	(term of address)	кира	of address
български	Bulgarian (language)		ma'am (archaic term *)
в	in	къде	of address
вие	you (pl.)		where
вие	you (sg., polite)	лекар (ка)	doctor, physician *
господин	Sir, Mr. *	ли	(question particle)
госпожя (pl.	Ma'am, Mrs. *	малко	a little
госпожи)		март	March *
госпожица	Miss	много	very
да	yes	много интересно	that's very interesting
детё	child *	момиче	girl *
днес	today *	момче	boy *
другар (ка)	comrade *	на	of
духа	it's blowing	най-после	finally
е	is (3sg.)	не	not
ей!	hey!	ние	we
ефенди	effendi, sir (archaic *)	от	from
	(term of address)	от Америка	are you from America?
за	for, to	ли сте?	
за къде пътувате?	where are you going?	откъде	whence, from where
за съжаление	unfortunately	откъде сте?	where are you from?
значи	that means, so, thus	познава	s/he knows,
и	and, also		is acquainted with
и аз	me too	преподавател (ка)	teacher (university level)
и вие ли?	and you as well?	приятел (ка)	friend *
интересно	interesting *	пътувам	travel, am traveling (1sg.)
истина	truth *	пътуват	travel, are traveling (3pl.)
истината	the truth	пътувате	travel, are traveling (2pl.)
каква	s/he says	разбирам	understand (1sg) *
казва се	his/her name is	са	are (3pl)
казвам	I say, I tell *	САЩ	USA
казвам се	my name is	= Съединените	(United
казваш	you say (familiar)	американски щати	States of America)
как	how	само	only
как се казвате?	what is your name?	се	verbal particle
	(polite)		

## Първи урок / Lesson 1

сега	now *	течение	current, draft
секретар (ка)	secretary *	ти	you (sg., familiar)
си	are (2sg.)	то	it (rarely: he, she)
скоро	soon	той	he, it
сме	are (1pl.)	тръгваме	[we're] leaving
става	there's getting to be	тя	she, it
става течение	there's a draft	тя се казва	her name is
сте	are (2pl.)		
студент (ка)	university student *	учител (ка)	teacher (up to 12th grade) *
съжаление	pity *		
съм	am (1sg.)		
също	also	щат	state *
		Щатите	the States
те	they		

## CULTURAL COMMENTARY

### Reference to the U.S.

As do many elsewhere in the world, Bulgarians use the term *Америка* colloquially to refer to the U.S. The official term for the U.S. is *САЩ* (*Съединените американски щати*), pronounced as one word [cáš]. Some also refer to the U.S. colloquially as *Щатите* ("the States").

### Traveling: air currents

As in certain other countries, Bulgarians are very sensitive to currents of air, especially when traveling. The belief is that exposure to such currents will cause illness, especially in children.

### Forms of address: Mr., Ms., etc.; professional titles

The term *госпожá* is used in the manner of English "Ms.", when one can not (or does not wish to) specify the marital status of the woman concerned. If the woman is known to be single but is middle-aged or older, it is also considered more polite to refer to her as *госпожá*.

The terms *господин*, *госпожá* and *госпóжица* are now the neutral forms of address. They were introduced into Bulgaria in the late 19th century to replace the old terms of address *ефенди*, *кйр* (*кйра*) and *бай* (the latter used only for older men). During the socialist regime (1944-1989) they were used only to address foreigners from the west; in Bulgaria at that time one used *другар* and *другарка*. The term *бай* is still used familiarly to refer to older people.

For certain high-prestige professions, it is considered derogatory to use the form ending in *-ка* to refer to a woman practitioner of that profession. For instance, one would not refer to a woman Secretary-General of the U.N. as *секретарка* unless one wanted to imply disrespect.

### Letter writing

When Bulgarians write dates, they put the date first and then the month (similar to English "the fifteenth of March"). A letter is headed with the date and the place of its writing.

### School systems

As in other countries, there is one system of schooling that takes the student from the elementary grades through graduation from high school, and another that is concerned with university education. Bulgarian extends this difference even to the words for "teacher": *учител* refers exclusively to a teacher in elementary or high school, and *преподавател* exclusively to a teacher at university level. Similarly, the term *студент* refers only to university students.

There is an English language high school in Sofia, which for many years has employed British and American teachers. Although the students are Bulgarian, all instruction is in English. Admission to the school is highly competitive. There are similar schools with instruction in French, German, Spanish, and Russian. An American university (also with English language instruction) was opened in Bulgaria in 1991. It is located in the southwestern Bulgarian city of Blagoevgrad.

## LESSON 2

### **DIALOGUE**

#### Пътуват с влак

// Димитър, Милена, Ангел, Джули, Дейвид (и други) пътуват с влак от Варна за София. Влакът е много дълъг. Те са в купе № 7 (номер седем). Купето е тясно. Коридорът също е тесен. Вратата на купето е затворена. Таня отваря вратата. //

Таня: Извинете, къде е място № 1 (номер едно)?

Ангел: То е до вратата. Мястото е свободно.

Камен: А ние, мамо?

Таня: Вие сте тук. Камене, ти си на № 2 (номер две), а Надка е на № 3 (номер три).

Ангел: Ето, госпожо, място № 2 е също до вратата, а място № 3 е в средата. Имате ли багаж?

Таня: Благодаря, много сте любезен. Ето, чанта и куфар. Чантата е малка, но тежка. Куфарът е голям, но не е тежък.

Камен: Мамо, какво има в чантата? Гладен съм. И жаден. И Надка е жадна! Ние сме жадни!

Таня: После, Камене.

Камен: Какво има в чантата? Това не е ли шише?

Таня: Да, това е шише, но....

Камен: Какво има в шишето?

Таня: Ракия. От село.

Ангел: Ракия ли? Това е чудесно! Добре дошли, госпожо!

## BASIC GRAMMAR

### 2.1. Gender of nouns

Every noun in Bulgarian belongs to one of three genders: masculine, feminine or neuter. Because pronouns, adjectives and articles all have different forms depending on the gender of the noun they refer to, it is extremely important to know the gender of every noun.

The gender of a noun can usually be inferred from its ending. Since endings by definition contain a vowel, masculine nouns (which end in a consonant) are said to have a "zero" ending. Neuter nouns end in -o or -e, and feminine nouns usually end in the sound [a], which can be written either -a or -я. For example:

<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
багаж	врат-а	куп-е
влак	госпож-а	мяст-о
коридор	раки-я	течени-е

### 2.2. Pronoun agreement

Every pronoun which refers to a singular noun must agree with that noun in gender. There is only one plural pronoun. Here are the forms, followed by examples of usage in sentences:

<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>plural</i>
той	тя	то	те

<i>masculine:</i>	Това е влак. Той е дълъг.	That's a train. It is long.
<i>feminine:</i>	Това е ракия. Тя е силна.	This is rakia. It is strong.
<i>neuter:</i>	Ето село. То е малко.	Here's a village. It is small.
<i>plural:</i>	Дейвид и Джули са студенти. Те са от Америка.	David and Julie are students. They are from America.
	Ето, чанта и куфар. Те са тежки.	Here, a bag and a suitcase. They are heavy.

### 2.3. Definite articles

Bulgarian has a definite article, similar in usage to English "the". The Bulgarian definite article is added after the ending of the noun, and must agree with it in gender. Here are the forms of the article, followed by examples of usage in sentences.

	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>plural</i>
	-ЪТ	-ТА	-ТО	-ТЕ
<i>masculine:</i>	Това е влак. Влакът е дълъг.			That's a train. The train is long.
<i>feminine:</i>	Това е ракия. Ракията е силна.			This is rakia. The rakia is strong.
<i>neuter:</i>	Ето село. Селото е малко.			Here's a village. The village is small.
<i>plural:</i>	Това са студенти. Студентите са от Америка.			These are students. The students are from America.
	Ето чанти и кюфари. Чантите са тежки, а кюфарите не са тежки.			Here are bags and suitcases. The bags are heavy, but the suitcases are not heavy.

The masculine definite article is always pronounced as [-ЪТ]. After nouns ending in -тел, -ар, and -й, it is written -ят. Nouns ending in -й drop the -й before adding the definite article. For example:

<i>indefinite form</i>	студент	лekar	приятел	трамвай
<i>definite form</i>	студент-ът	лekar-ят	приятел-ят	трамвай-ят

### 2.4. Adjective agreement

Adjectives in Bulgarian must also agree with the nouns they modify. There are three endings in the singular, corresponding to the three genders, and one in the plural. Here are the endings, followed by examples of usage.

	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>plural</i>
	(zero)	-а	-о	-и
<i>masculine</i>	Кюфарът е тежък.			The suitcase is heavy.
<i>feminine</i>	Чантата е тежка.			The bag is heavy.
<i>neuter</i>	Мястото е свободно.			The seat is empty.
<i>plural</i>	Студентите са свободни.			The students are free. [= not busy]

## Втори урок / Lesson 2

These agreement patterns follow a "rhyming principle", whereby nouns, definite articles and adjectives often repeat the same sound. This principle is especially clear in feminine and neuter nouns:

Чантата е голяма и тежка.

The bag is big and heavy.

Селото е малко и хубаво.

The village is small and pretty.

### 2.5. Fleeting vowels in adjectives

Feminine, neuter and plural nouns and adjectives end in a vowel. Masculine nouns and adjectives usually end in a consonant. Frequently, this consonant is preceded by the vowel -ъ- or -е-, which drops out in other forms of the adjectives (and is therefore called "fleeting"). For example:

<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>plural</i>
доб-ъ-р	доб-ра	доб-ро	доб-ри
теж-ъ-к	теж-ка	теж-ко	теж-ки
глад-е-н	глад-на	глад-но	глад-ни
свобод-е-н	свобод-на	свобод-но	свобод-ни

### 2.6. Alternating vowels in adjectives

A number of adjectives occur with -я- in the singular and -е- in the plural. Certain of these adjectives have -е- in the masculine form as well. For example:

<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>plural</i>
голям	голяма	голямо	vs. големи
бял	бяла	бяло	vs. бели
тесен	vs. тясна	vs. тясно	vs. тесни

### 2.7. Vocative of personal names

The vocative of masculine names ends in -е. If the neutral form of the name ends in -ър, this -ъ- is lost before the vocative ending.

<i>masculine</i>	<i>neutral form</i>	<i>vocative form</i>
	Камен	Камене
	Димитър	Димитре
	Петър	Петре
	господин	господине



The vocative of feminine names ends in -о or -е. If the neutral form of the name ends in -ца, -га or -ка, the ending -е is added. In other nouns, the ending -о is used.

	neutral form	vocative form
feminine	ма́ма	ма́мо
	госпожа́	госпо́жо
	На́дка	На́дке
	О́лга	О́лге
	Роси́ца	Роси́це

## 2.8. Имам vs. има

The verb **има́м** means "have", and corresponds in usage to English "have".

И́мате ли бага́ж?

Do you have [any] baggage?

The 3<sup>rd</sup> singular form **има́** is also used in the general meaning "there is" or "there are". This form of the verb is unchanging regardless of whether the subject is singular or plural. For example:

И́ма ли ту́ка свобóдно мя́сто?  
Какво́ има́ в ча́нтата?

Is there an empty seat here?  
What is [there] in the bag?

В ча́нтата има́ интере́сни  
кни́ги.

There are [some] interesting books in  
the bag.

## 2.9. Negation

Verbs are negated by placing the particle **не** immediately before the verb. Although this particle is not accented, it causes the following word to receive a strong accent, *even if this word is a clitic*. For example:

Ни́е не пъту́ваме днeс.  
Не сýм учите́л.  
Не é студeнтка.

We are not traveling today.  
I am not a teacher.  
She is not a student.

Negation of the verb **има́м** is an exception. Here, one must use a different verb, **ня́мам**. For example:

-- И́маш ли е́дин мо́лив?  
-- Ня́мам мо́лив.

"Do you have a pencil?"  
"I don't have a pencil."

## 2.10. Position of ли

The question particle **ли** usually occurs right after the verb. Exceptions are the verb **съм**, and a conscious intent to focus one's question on something other than the verb. In the case of **съм**, the particle **ли** occurs immediately before the verb, unless the verb is negated, in which case **ли** occurs immediately after the verb.

Той студент ли е?	Is he a student?
Той не е ли студент?	Isn't he a student?

In the case of special focus, the particle **ли** is placed after the word in question. When question focus changes, word order often changes as well. For example:

Ракия ли?	Is it rakia [you've got there]?
Камен ли пътува днес?	Is it Kamen who's traveling today?
Камен днес ли пътува?	Is it today that Kamen is traveling?
Днес ли пътува Камен?	[same]

## 2.11. Prepositions

(a) The basic meaning of the preposition **в** is "in" (or "into", depending on the context). The sense "within a closed or defined space" is usually implied. Thus:

Те са в купе № 7.	They are in compartment No. 7.
Ты си в средата.	You are in the middle [of the row].

It can also mean "within the confines of" in a less literal sense, as in the idiomatic expression **в отпуската** "on leave, on a break, on vacation"; one could think of this as "within the time frame allowed to one to be absent from work".

(b) The basic meaning of the preposition **до** is "next to", "by" (or "up to"). The general idea is that of approaching a limit.

Мястото е до вратата.	The seat is next to the door.
Коридорът е до купето.	The corridor is by the compartment.

(c) The preposition **на** has a number of different meanings. The first (seen already in Lesson 1) is that of possession. For example:

Вратата на купето е затворена.	The door of the compartment is closed.
Приятел съм на Джон Грийн.	I am a friend of John Green's.
Книгата е на Надка.	The book is Nadka's.

In another meaning, **на** is closely related to **в**, and is often translated "on", "at" or "in". In the following example, for instance, the reference is not to being physically *in* the seat, but to having the ticket for that seat:

Тѝ си <b>на</b> нóмер двé, а тѝ е <b>на</b>	You're in seat no. 2, and she's in
нóмер трѝ.	no. 3.

(d) The basic meaning of the preposition **с** is "with". When referring to means of conveyance, it is translated idiomatically as "by". For example:

Тé пѣтúват <b>с</b> влáк, а тѝ	They are traveling by train and she
пѣтúва <b>с</b> автобúс.	is traveling by bus.



Windmill at the entrance to Nesebăr, near Burgas

## EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate pronoun.

1. Откъде е ракията? \_\_\_\_\_ е от село.
2. За къде пътува влакът? \_\_\_\_\_ пътува за Сѳия.
3. Къде е селото? \_\_\_\_\_ е до Сѳия.
4. Откъде са Димитър и Милѳна? \_\_\_\_\_ са от Варна.
5. Къде са кѳфарите? \_\_\_\_\_ са в купѳто.
6. Вратата отворѳена ли е? Нѳ, \_\_\_\_\_ е затворѳена.
7. Къде е Димитър? \_\_\_\_\_ е в ѳтпуска.

II. Complete each sentence with the article and the appropriate form one of the following adjectives: домашен, чудѳсен, малък, голям, дълъг, тежък, затворѳен.

1. Кѳща \_\_\_\_\_ е \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Вратá \_\_\_\_\_ е \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Кѳфари \_\_\_\_\_ са \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Автобѳс \_\_\_\_\_ е \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Раки́я \_\_\_\_\_ е \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Вино \_\_\_\_\_ е \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Чанти \_\_\_\_\_ са \_\_\_\_\_.

III. How many different questions can you make out of the following sentences by using the particle *ли* in different positions?

1. Той пътува с влак.
2. Купѳто е тясно.
3. Мястото е свободнѳ.
4. Камен е гладен и жаден.
5. В шишѳто има ракия.
6. Тания отваря вратата.
7. Място нѳмер двѳ е до вратата.

## ADDITIONAL GRAMMAR NOTES

### 2.1a. Gender of nouns

The great majority of masculine nouns end in a consonant; that is, their ending is the "zero" ending. Certain masculine nouns referring to persons, however, end in a vowel. Most feminine nouns end in the vowel -a, but there are a sizable number of feminine nouns with a zero ending. The forms of these irregular nouns will be learned later.

### 2.2a. Pronoun agreement

Pronoun agreement in Bulgarian differs considerably from that of English. With certain idiomatic exceptions, the English pronouns "he" and "she" refer only to male and female persons. Otherwise the pronoun "it" is used.

In Bulgarian, however, it is the grammatical gender of a noun which determines the form of the pronoun. English speakers would refer to a train or a door as "it", but Bulgarian must refer to a train (в<sup>л</sup>а<sup>к</sup>) as то<sup>й</sup>, and a door (в<sup>р</sup>а<sup>т</sup>а) as тя. In the plural, however, English and Bulgarian are similar: the pronouns "they" and те are used regardless of the meaning of the noun.

### 2.3a. Definite articles

The forms of the definite article in Bulgarian are unchanging. Every feminine noun takes the article -та no matter what its form, and every neuter noun takes the article -то. Most plural nouns take the article -те, and the great majority of masculine nouns take the article -ът / -ят. The spelling -ят occurs in a number of masculine nouns. In masculine nouns which end in -а or -тел or in the consonant -й, this spelling is predictable. In others, it must be learned. The definite forms of the latter type of nouns will be noted in vocabulary lists.

The usage of definite articles in Bulgarian is generally similar to that of English: when a noun has been specified or "defined" in a conversation, subsequent mentions of that noun are usually accompanied by the definite article. There are differences, however. One of these concerns reference to family members. When the relationship is a direct one and is clear from the context, Bulgarian uses the article where English would use "my", "your" or the like. For example:

Пра<sup>ц</sup>ам с бра<sup>т</sup>овче<sup>д</sup>ката  
Кръ<sup>с</sup>ти<sup>н</sup>а едно ши<sup>ш</sup>е  
до<sup>м</sup>а<sup>ш</sup>на ра<sup>к</sup>ия.

I am sending with my cousin Krăstina  
a bottle of homemade rakia.

### 2.5a. Fleeting vowels in adjectives

The stem of an adjective is found by dropping the vowel ending from the feminine or neuter form. Thus the stem of the adjective **тежка** is **тежк-**, the stem of the adjective **добра́** is **добр-**, and the stem of the adjective **гладна** is **гладн-**. When the stem of an adjective ends in two consonants, the masculine form usually inserts a vowel between these two consonants. This vowel is called "fleeting" because it disappears in all other forms of the adjectives. Fleeting vowels can be either **-ъ-** or **-е-**. That in stems whose final consonant is **-н-** will often be **-е-**; and for stems whose final consonant is **-к**, it will often be **-ъ-**.

Adjectives are listed in dictionaries in the masculine singular form. While it is not possible to predict with certainty which vowels will "fleet" and which will remain, the general rule is that **-ъ-** and *unstressed* **-е-** will disappear. Thus, one should assume that the feminine forms of **болен** and **дълъг** are **болна** and **дълга**, respectively. Exceptions to this rule will be noted in vocabulary lists. If you encounter an adjective in a non-masculine form and have trouble finding it in the dictionary, try predicting a masculine form with an inserted vowel.

### 2.6a. Alternating root vowels

A number of Bulgarian words occur with **-я-** in some forms of the word, and **-е-** in others. The rule governing the alternation is as follows: If the vowel is stressed, **-е-** occurs if there is **-е-** or **-н-** in the following syllable; otherwise **-я-** occurs. If the vowel is unstressed, it is always **-е-**. Adjectives learned in this lesson exemplify the first half of this rule. Examples of the second half will be seen later.

### 2.7a. Vocative of personal names

The regular vocative ending for masculine personal names, and for feminine personal names in **-ка**, **-га** or **-ца**, is **-е**. The ending **-о**, however, is used regularly only with those feminine nouns which refer to relationships (e.g. **госпожа́**, **ма́ма**). In personal names, this vocative ending is used more and more rarely (and, for some speakers, carries a tinge of unfriendliness). Students are advised to avoid it.

The ending **-о** in **друга́рко** is an anomaly: since the neutral form of the noun ends in **-ка**, one would expect the ending **-е**.

### 2.8a. Има́м vs. има

The impersonal meaning of **има́** is largely the same as that of French *il y a*, and Russian *есть*. (and is similar to that of German *es gibt*). Similarly, the impersonal meaning of **ня́ма** is like that of French *il n'y a pas de* and Russian *нет* (and is similar to that of German *es gibt kein*).



**2.12. "Presentative" това**

The word **това** is used in connection with the verb **съм** to introduce persons or topics. Although it can be translated with English "this", "that", "these" or "those", its form in Bulgarian is unchanging. Its order in the sentence is likewise unchanging: it always comes at the beginning. Students must pay attention to this word order rule when **това** occurs in a question. Thus:

Това е книга.  
Това са книги.  
Това книги ли са?  
Това не е ли шише?

This/that is a book.  
These/those are books.  
Are these/those books?  
Isn't that a bottle?

**2.13. Agreement with вие**

When the plural pronoun **вие** refers to a single person, the verb continues to be plural. Adjectives, however, are usually in the singular. For instance:

Вие сте много любезен.

You are very kind.

**2.14. The conjunction "but"**

The conjunction **но** implies strong contrast and is always translated "but". There is a gradation between the three conjunctions **и**, **а** and **но** which is schematized in the chart below and illustrated by the examples following.

<i>conjunction</i>	<i>translation</i>	<i>meaning</i>
<b>и</b>	and	<i>equivalence</i>
<b>а</b>	and	<i>comparison</i>
<b>но</b>	but	<i>contrast</i>

Чантата е голяма и тежка.

The bag is big and heavy.

Чантата е малка, а куфарът е голям.

The bag is small and the suitcase is big.

Чантата е малка, но е тежка.

The bag is small, but it is heavy.

### **SAMPLE SENTENCES**

1. Ма́йка пъту́ва ли?
2. Ма́йка ли пъту́ва?
3. Ка́мен е гла́ден.
4. Ка́мен гла́ден ли е?
5. Ка́мен ли е гла́ден?
6. Раки́ята е от се́ло.
7. Раки́ята от се́ло ли е?
8. Това́ раки́я от се́ло ли е?
9. Еле́на и Лиля́на са прия́телки.
10. Еле́на и Лиля́на прия́телки ли са?
11. Еле́на и Лиля́на ли са прия́телки?
12. Ка́мен и На́дка са гла́дни. А А́нгел е жа́ден, но не е́ гла́ден.
13. Ча́нтата е голя́ма и те́жка. А ку́фарът е голя́м, но не е́ те́жък.

### **SENTENCES FOR TRANSLATION**

1. Rositsa, is there a good lawyer here in Sofia?
2. Mladen, do you have a manual for the TOEFL test?
3. The corridors are very narrow, and the compartment is also cramped.
4. There are hungry students in the compartment. They are also thirsty.
5. Where are there houses with large doors and entryways? In Plovdiv, Mladen's house is small, but it has a large entryway. In Sofia, Stoyan's house is large, but it has a small entryway.
6. The wind is very strong. Where is it blowing from?
7. Is the suitcase heavy? No, it isn't heavy. But the bag is very heavy.

## READING SELECTION

### Кореспонденция - (2)

Сегá Бóйко и Бóб са приятели. Бóб отнóво е в Сán Францiско. Бóйко е в Сóфия. Калина изучáва английски.

1 юли, Сóфия

Драги Бóб,

Сърдечни поздравии от Сóфия! Пращам с братовчедката Кръстiна едно шишé домашна раки́я за здраве. Грòздова е, от сéло.

Ние сме здрави. Врéмето е тóпло, но има силен вятър. Аз съм в óтпуска и ремонтирам кýщата. Имам óще мнóго рáбота, а мálко врéме. Вие как сте? Здрави ли сте?

Всичко хубаво,

Бóйко

Патриша Мичел е адвокатка. Женá е на Рóберт Мичел.

4 юли, Сán Францiско

Драги Бóйко и Калина,

Благодаря за раки́ята. Тя е мнóго силна! Ние в Калифóрния обикновéно не обичаме мнóго силен алкохóл. Но обичаме раки́ята. Тя найстина е мнóго хубава.

Ние не сме мнóго добрé. Бóб е мálко бóлен. Има простúда. Каквó ремонтира Бóйко в кýщата?

Поздравии,

Патриша

P.S. Отдéлно пращам за Калина учебник за TOEFL.

## Втори урок / Lesson 2

### GLOSSARY

✱ автобус	bus	има силен вятър	it's very windy
адвокат (ка)	lawyer	има	s/he has
алкохол	alcohol	имате	you have ( <i>polite</i> )
английски	English (language)	имате ли багаж?	do you have [any] luggage?
багаж	baggage, luggage	имаш	you have ( <i>familiar</i> )
благодаря	thank you	интересен	interesting
болен	sick		
братовчед (ка)	cousin	какво има	what is there in the bag?
бял (pl. бели)	white	в чантата?	
в отпуската	on a break, vacation	книга	book
вино	wine	коридор	corridor, entryway
влак	train	коридорът е тесен	the passageway is narrow
врата	door	купе	compartment
време	time; weather	купе № 7	compartment No. 7
всичко	all, everything	купето е тясно	the compartment is cramped
всичко хубаво	all the best	куфар	suitcase
вятър	wind	къща	house
гладен	hungry	любезен	kind
голям (pl. големи)	large, big	майка	mother
гроздов	[made] of grapes	малко	a little, [very] little
две	two (in counting)	малко време	not much time
до	by, near, next to	малко болен е	he's under the weather
добре	well, fine	малък	small
добре дошли!	welcome!	мама	Mom
добър	good	мамо	Mom! ( <i>vocative</i> )
домашен	homemade	много	much
драги	dear ( <i>masc. plural</i> )	много работа	a lot of work
друг	other, another	молив	pencil
дълъг	long	място	place, seat
един	one, a ( <i>masculine</i> )	мястото е свободно	the seat is not taken
едно	one (in counting)	на	in, on, at
ето	here ( <i>pointing</i> )	на № 2 си	you've got No. 2
жаден	thirsty	наистина	really, truly
женя	woman, wife	но	but
затворен, -ена	closed	номер	number
здрав	healthy	нужда	need
здраве	health	няма	there isn't/aren't any
има	there is, there are	няма нужда	there's no need, it's not necessary
има още много	there's still a lot of	нямат	I don't have
работа	work [to do]	нямат	we don't have
има малко време	there's not much time	обикновено	usually
		обичаме	we like

## Втори урок / Lesson 2

отв́аря	s/he opens	се́дем	seven
отво́рен, -ена	open	се́ло	village
отде́лно	separately, under separate cover	си́лен	strong
отно́во	again, once more	среда́	middle
отпу́ска	break, time off, vacation	сърде́чен	hearty
о́ще	still, yet	те́жък	heavy
о́ще мно́го	a lot more yet	те́сен, тя́сна	tight, cramped, narrow
		то́ е до вратáта	it's by the door
		това́	that, this
		това́ не е ли шише́?	isn't that a bottle?
по́здрав	greeting	ТОEFL	Test Of English as a Foreign Language
по́сле	later, afterwards	то́пъл	warm
пра́щам	I am sending, I send	трамва́й	tram
просту́да	cold (illness)	три́	three
пъту́ва	s/he travels, is traveling	ту́ка	here (location); also ту́к
пъту́ваме	we travel, are traveling		
пъту́вам с вла́к	travel by train	уче́бник	textbook, manual
ра́бота	work	ху́бав	fine, nice, beautiful, pretty
раки́я	rakia (strong fruit brandy)		
ремонтíрам	I redo, make repairs	ча́нта	bag, briefcase
ремонтíра	s/he redoes, makes repairs	чуде́сен	marvelous, wonderful
с	with	шише́	bottle
свобо́ден	free, not occupied	ю́ли	July
свобо́ден съм сегá	I'm not busy now		



Rotunda "St. George", downtown Sofia

## **CULTURAL COMMENTARY**

### **Traveling: trains**

Trains are a very common means of travel in Bulgaria. Each car of the train is divided into a number of compartments. After climbing up into the train, one walks along the narrow corridor which runs the length of the car, and enters a compartment by sliding a door aside. Within the compartment are two rows of seats facing each other, stretching from the single large window to the compartment door. Second-class compartments have four seats on each side.

### **Food and drink: rakia**

Rakia (ракия), which is a strong, double-distilled brandy, is in a sense the national drink. It is normally made from grapes, but can be made from any fruit; plums or apricots can also serve as the base. The best is that which is home-made, outside the city. The drinking of rakia in moderate quantities is considered to be good for one's health, both physical and emotional. Indeed, for many Bulgarians, drinking rakia together is an important friendship ritual.

### **City and country**

A very large part of Bulgarian society is still rural, focused on the village (село); and practically everyone who lives in the city still has some sort of connection with a village, usually through family.

### **Gifts**

Bulgarians consider that the most appropriate (and the most certain) way to send someone a gift over a long distance is to send it with a person. The person to whom the gift is entrusted is under a strong obligation to deliver it, even if s/he does not know the recipient. The recipient, in turn, is usually obliged to entertain the person acting as go-between, at least briefly; and (naturally) to send a gift in return.

### **Vacation**

"Vacation" is a complex concept in Bulgaria. The majority of time off from work is spent not on holiday but in taking care of the business of daily life. One often hears Bulgarians say, only partly in jest, that they need to go back to work in order to get some rest.

### **Learning English**

Learning English is extremely popular among Bulgarians now. Some learn English because it has become the fashionable second language, but most learn it in order to have a salable skill. Passing the standardized TOEFL test certifies that one possesses this skill. One sees in Sofia now countless small agencies that offer crash courses in English that claim to prepare one for the TOEFL (pronounced тоѝфъл).

### **Body language**

The head movements accompanying the Bulgarian words for "yes" and "no" are the *opposite* of those used in English (and most other Western languages). To signify "yes", Bulgarians move their heads from side to side, with a slight rocking movement. To signify "no", they move their heads up and down; this gesture always begins with a sharp upward movement.



## LESSON 3

### **DIALOGUE**

#### Какво правиш?

Надка: Мамо, какво прави лелята?

Таня: Нали виждаш? Четё. Четё книга.

Надка: И аз четá! Аз правя като лелята!

Камен: Не, ти не четёш, ти само отваряш и затваряш книгите.

Таня: Камене! Няма нýжда! Ти си голям, а Надка е още малка. Тя още не четё, но рисува много добре. Надке, ёто един хубав молив. Добре ли си сегá?

Джули: Какво рисуваш? Къща ли?

Надка: Да, това е къща.

Джули: Каква хубава къща!

Надка: Разбýра се, че е хубава.

Джули: Какво е това, тýка в средáта на къщата?

Надка: Това е вратáта на къщата. Тáзи къща има много прозóрци, но само една вратá. Аз много обичам прозóрци. От прозóрците виждам гради́ната.

Дейвид: И тýка в купёто има един прозóрец. Той е голям, нали?

Надка: Да, но няма гради́на. Не обичам то́зи прозóрец!

Милена: И аз не обичам то́зи прозóрец, защóто е отворен. Ста́ва течёние! Това е много ло́шо!

Ангел: Стíга с то́зи прозóрец! Госпóжо, нали имате едно шише? Къде е това шише? Хáйде по една глётка!

**BASIC GRAMMAR****3.1. Present tense**

There are three present-tense conjugations in Bulgarian. They are named after the vowel of the 3<sup>rd</sup> singular ending: the **a**-conjugation, the **и**-conjugation, and the **е**-conjugation. Here are examples of the three conjugations:

**a-conjugation**

	<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>		<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>
1 <sup>st</sup> person	пѣтув-ам	пѣтув-аме		затвѣр-ям	затвѣр-яме
2 <sup>nd</sup> person	пѣтув-аш	пѣтув-ате		затвѣр-яш	затвѣр-яте
3 <sup>rd</sup> person	пѣтув-а	пѣтув-ат		затвѣр-я	затвѣр-ят

Verbs whose 3<sup>rd</sup> singular is in -я also belong to this conjugation; the -я- is consistent throughout the conjugation. All verbs of this conjugation are accented on the syllable immediately preceding the ending.

**и-conjugation**

	<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>		<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>
1 <sup>st</sup> person	прав-я	прав-им		бро-я	бро-им
2 <sup>nd</sup> person	прав-иш	прав-ите		бро-иш	бро-ите
3 <sup>rd</sup> person	прав-и	прав-ят		бро-и	бро-ят

Verbs of this conjugation can be accented on either the stem (as прав-я) or the ending (as бро-я). The place of accent must be learned with each verb.

**е-conjugation**

	<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>		<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>
1 <sup>st</sup> person	пѣш-а	пѣш-ем		чет-а	чет-ем
2 <sup>nd</sup> person	пѣш-еш	пѣш-ете		чет-еш	чет-ете
3 <sup>rd</sup> person	пѣш-е	пѣш-ат		чет-е	чет-ат

	<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>		<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>
1 <sup>st</sup> person	пѣ-я	пѣ-ем		живѣ-я	живѣ-ем
2 <sup>nd</sup> person	пѣ-еш	пѣ-ете		живѣ-еш	живѣ-ете
3 <sup>rd</sup> person	пѣ-е	пѣ-ят		живѣ-е	живѣ-ят

In the e-conjugation, the 1<sup>st</sup> singular and 3<sup>rd</sup> plural can end either in -а/-ат or -я/-ят. Verbs in the latter group always accent the syllable immediately before the ending. Those in the former group are accented either on the stem or the ending; the accent must be learned with each verb. When the 1<sup>st</sup> singular and 3<sup>rd</sup> plural forms are accented on the ending (-а́, -а́т or -я́, -я́т), these endings are pronounced as if the vowel in each case were [-ъ].

Bulgarian has no infinitive. One can predict the conjugation type from the dictionary form of a verb, the 1<sup>st</sup> singular form. Verbs in -ам or -ям belong to the а-conjugation, and verbs in -я preceded by a consonant or the vowel -о- belong to the и-conjugation. All others (including verbs in -я preceded by any other vowel) belong to the е-conjugation. In certain instances, primarily verbs ending in -ча, -ша or -жа, one cannot tell whether a verb belongs to the е-conjugation or the и-conjugation. For such verbs, the conjugation type must be learned. For these verbs, 2<sup>nd</sup> singular forms are regularly given in glossary listings, as follows:

пи́ша (-еш)

### 3.2. Demonstrative pronouns

The word for "this / these" agrees in gender with the noun it modifies.

<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>plural</i>
то́зи	та́зи	това́	те́зи

When the neuter form *това́* precedes the verb forms *е* or *са*, it can also mean "that" or "it". In this meaning, *това́* is unchanging, even if the verb is plural.

- |                                       |                                     |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| -- Какво́ рисува́ш? Къ́ща ли?         | "What are you drawing? A house?"    |
| -- Да́, това́ е къ́ща.                | "Yes, it's a house.                 |
| А това́ е врата́та на къ́щата.        | And this is the door of the house." |
| Това́ са Миле́на и Димитър Сто́йкови. | This is Milena and Dimitri Stoykov. |
| Това́ е мно́го интере́сно!            | That's very interesting!            |

### 3.3. Indefinite article

The Bulgarian indefinite article is similar in usage to English "a, an". Like the definite article, the indefinite article also agrees with its noun in gender. Here are examples, with the definite article given for comparison:

### Трети урок / Lesson 3

	<i>indefinite</i>	<i>definite</i>	<i>meaning</i>
<i>masculine</i>	един прозорец	прозорец-ът	a/the window
<i>feminine</i>	една врата	врата-та	a/the door
<i>neuter</i>	едно шише	шише-то	a/the bottle

Bulgarians use the definite article in roughly the same contexts as English. For Bulgarians, however, the indefinite article is optional. Either of the following is possible, and there is no essential difference in meaning:

Четá	една	интересна книга.	I'm reading an interesting book.
Четá		интересна книга.	[same]

In the plural, **едни** is used to mean "some [unspecified]". The same meaning can be conveyed without the article.

Четá	едни	интересни книги.	I'm reading some interesting books.
Четá		интересни книги.	[same]

#### 3.4. Adjectives vs. adverbs; какъв vs. какво

In most cases, adverbs are identical to the neuter form of adjectives. The adverb **добре**, however, has a different form. Compare the following:

ADJECTIVE ( <i>masculine, neuter</i> )	ADVERB	Meaning	
		<i>adjective</i>	<i>adverb</i>
същ, също	също	same	also
търпелив, търпеливо	търпеливо	patient	patiently
хубав, хубаво	хубаво	nice	nicely, well
отделен, отделно	отделно	separate	separately
чест, често	често	frequent	often
добър, добро	добре	good	fine, well, OK

The relationship between the question word **какво** and the adjectival pronoun **какъв** is similar to that between adverb and adjective. **Какво** is unchanging and always asks the question "what?". **Какъв** changes to modify a noun, and has several meanings, all of which are usually translated as "what". It can express an emotion such as surprise, it can ask a question about descriptive detail, or it can ask about professional or work identity. For example:

*question word*

Какво правиш?  
Какво е това?

What are you doing?  
What is that?

*pronominal adjective*

Каква хубава къща!  
Каква е тази книга?

What a nice house!  
What [sort of] book is that?

-- Какъв е той?  
-- Той е лекар.

"What does he do?"  
"He's a doctor."

### 3.5. Fleeting vowels in nouns: the suffix -ец

Certain masculine nouns contain a fleeting vowel, which drops out when the plural ending -и is added. The vowel in the frequently occurring suffix -ец is an example. In the examples below, the suffix is separated from the root by hyphens. When followed by the "zero" ending, the suffix is -ец, but when followed by the plural ending, it is simply -ц. For example:

<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>	<i>meaning</i>
прозѳр-ец	прозѳр-ц-и	window
америкѳн-ец	америкѳн-ц-и	American
чужден-ец	чужден-ц-и	foreigner, stranger

All nouns in -ец which do not drop this vowel in other forms will be noted in the glossary. Thus, the simple listing вегетериѳнец presumes the plural вегетериѳнци.

### 3.6. Plural of masculine nouns in -к or -г

Masculine nouns ending in -к or -г in the singular replace these consonants by -ц and -з, respectively, in the plural.

<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>	<i>meaning</i>
езѳк	езѳц-и	language
учѳбник	учѳбниц-и	textbook
археолѳг	археолѳз-и	archaeologist
сѳпруѳг	сѳпруѳз-и	spouse

### 3.7. Prepositions

- (a) The basic meaning of the preposition **кѳто** is "as, like". For example:

бѳлѳ кѳто снѳг

as white as snow

### Трети урок / Lesson 3

(b) The basic meaning of the preposition **по** is “along, by”; this usage will be learned in Lesson 5. One of the idiomatic meanings of this preposition is the distributive one, which is best translated by English “each”. For example:

Хайде по една глътка!

Let's each have a drink  
[= a swallow]!

Студентите четат по седем страници.

The students read seven pages each.  
[= The students (each) read seven pages at a time.]

(c) The basic meaning of the preposition **под** is “under”. For example:

Обувките на Петър са под пейката.

Peter's shoes are under the bench.



Man in traditional folk costume, Koprivshitsa folk festival

## EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of one of the following verbs: пи́ша, ви́ждам, вървя́, пра́вя, четá, зна́я.

1. Я́на \_\_\_\_\_ ка́ртичката с мо́лив.
2. Ти́ каквó \_\_\_\_\_? Кни́га ли \_\_\_\_\_?
3. Бага́жът на Дими́тър е те́жък. Дими́тър \_\_\_\_\_ мно́го ба́вно.
4. А́з не \_\_\_\_\_ къ́щата. Къ́де е тя?
5. Милéна и Лили́яна \_\_\_\_\_ грéшки.
6. Та́зи кни́га е на бълга́рски. \_\_\_\_\_ ли бълга́рски?
7. А́з не \_\_\_\_\_ грéшки.

II. Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the demonstrative pronoun:

1. \_\_\_\_\_ е мно́го интéресно.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ врата́ отво́рена ли е?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ ку́фар е те́жък.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ са Милéна и Дими́тър.
5. Защо́ \_\_\_\_\_ прозо́рци са отво́рени?
6. Каквó има́ в \_\_\_\_\_ е́зеро?
7. \_\_\_\_\_ америка́нци са студéнти.

III. Fill in the correct preposition.

1. На́дка рису́ва \_\_\_\_\_ мо́лив.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Та́ня има́ свобóдно мя́сто.
3. А́нгел отва́ря врата́та \_\_\_\_\_ купéто.
4. Милéна и Дими́тър пи́ят \_\_\_\_\_ една́ ча́ша ви́но.
5. Ива́н и Я́на живе́ят \_\_\_\_\_ Со́фия.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ прозо́рците \_\_\_\_\_ къ́щата има́ пе́йка.
7. И а́з съ́м жа́ден \_\_\_\_\_ На́дка.



**ADDITIONAL GRAMMAR NOTES****3.1a. Present tense**

The characteristic vowel of a conjugation -- the vowel which appears alone in the 3<sup>rd</sup> singular -- is called the theme vowel. The theme vowel of the a-conjugation, -a-, can also occur as -я-.

In the a-conjugation, all six forms contain the theme vowel. In the other two conjugations, the theme vowel is present only in four out of six forms (2-3sg and 1-2pl). The remaining two forms, the 1<sup>st</sup> singular and 3<sup>rd</sup> plural, always end in the sound [-ъ]. This sound is never written as -ъ-, but always as -а- or -я-. In this case sound and letter are not predictable from each other, even when this ending is accented. The words written *чета́* and *чета́т* must be pronounced [че́тъ] and [че́тът]; and the spoken forms [върв'ѣ] and [върв'ѣт], in which the apostrophe signals softening of the preceding consonant, must be written *вървѣ* and *вървѣт*.

Note also that in the a-conjugation the 1<sup>st</sup> singular ends in -м, and the 1<sup>st</sup> plural ends in -ме. In the е- and и-conjugations, however, the 1<sup>st</sup> singular ends in a vowel and the 1<sup>st</sup> plural ends in -м. Care must be taken to interpret correctly the meaning (and conjugation) of verbal forms ending in -м.

Although the great majority of verbs whose 1<sup>st</sup> singular ends in -я preceded by a consonant belong to the и-conjugation, a few of them belong to the е-conjugation. The most common of these is *къпя* (*къпеш*, etc.) "bathe".

**3.2a. Demonstrative pronouns**

The forms of the demonstrative pronouns are very similar to those of the personal pronouns; this similarity should be exploited in learning them. Here are the two sets of pronouns listed together:

<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>plural</i>	<i>Type</i>
<b>ТОЗИ</b>	<b>ТАЗИ</b>	<b>ТОВА</b>	<b>ТЕЗИ</b>	<i>Demonstrative</i>
<b>ТОЙ</b>	<b>ТА</b>	<b>ТО</b>	<b>ТЕ</b>	<i>Personal</i>

**3.3a. Indefinite article**

English has both a definite and an indefinite article, italicized in the following examples. Note that English must place one of these two articles before a singular noun. The third example on the following page is incorrect English.

- I am reading *an* interesting book.  
 I am reading *the* interesting book [I mentioned to you before].  
 \* I am reading interesting book.

Bulgarian differs from English in that only the definite article is obligatory when the meaning "definite" is present. To express the meaning "indefinite", Bulgarians have an option: sometimes they use the word for "one" and sometimes they use nothing.

Most standard Bulgarian grammars do not yet recognize a separate category of "indefinite article". The existence of a frequent accentual difference between the meanings "one" [as opposed to more than one] and "a" [the indefinite article], however, indicates that most Bulgarians do in fact distinguish these two meanings. When *едѝн, еднѝа, еднѝо* means "a", Bulgarians tend to pronounce it with a much weaker accent than when it means "one". In this book, *едѝн* with the meaning "indefinite article" will not be accented.

### 3.4a. Adjectives vs. adverbs

Adverbs are used either as predicates (after the verb *сѝм*) or as attributes (adding information about a verbal state or action). Note the difference, especially in the case of *добѝр*, between the predicative usage of an adverb (the first two examples) and of an adjective (the third example):

#### Predicative

- Добре ли си сегѝа?  
 -- Дѝа, добре сѝм.

"Are you OK now?"  
 "Yes, I'm fine."

Тѝй е много добѝр.

He's very good [= a very good person].

#### Attributive

Нѝдка рисѝва много добре.

Nadka draws very nicely.

### 3.5a. The suffixes -ѝц, -ѝн and -ѝки

In nouns referring to persons, the suffix *-ѝц* usually indicates origin (or membership in a particular group). Another suffix designating origin is *-ѝн* (which is historically related to English "one [of]"). In the plural, this suffix is dropped. When referring to origin, both these suffixes are frequently preceded by the suffix *-ѝн-*. Note that the noun *господѝн* "Mr." also contains the suffix *-ѝн-*, and that its plural (usually translated as "Gentlemen") is irregular.

#### singular

бѝлгар-ѝн  
 англич-ѝн-ѝн  
 господ-ѝн

#### plural

бѝлгар-ѝ  
 англич-ѝн-ѝ  
 господ-ѝ

#### meaning

Bulgarian  
 Englishman  
 Mr. (plural: Gentlemen)

### Трети урок / Lesson 3

The suffixes **-ец** and **-ин** form nouns of origin which refer either to a male (singular and plural usages) or to the generalized category (plural usage only). By contrast, the suffix **-к-** designates a specifically female representative of each category (since this suffix is always followed by the feminine noun ending **-а**, it is frequently referred to as **-ка**). These three suffixes are discussed in much greater detail in Lesson 23.

<i>singular/general</i>	<i>specifically female</i>	<i>meaning</i>
америк- <b>ан-ец</b>	америк- <b>ан-ка</b>	American
англич- <b>ан-ин</b>	англич- <b>ан-ка</b>	English[wo]man
българ- <b>ин</b>	българ- <b>ка</b>	Bulgarian
чужд- <b>ен-ец</b>	чужд- <b>ен-ка</b>	foreigner, stranger
вегетери- <b>ан-ец</b>	вегетери- <b>ан-ка</b>	vegetarian

The above forms are nouns. Adjectives indicating origin are formed with the suffix **-ск-**. When the masculine form of such an adjective is used alone, the noun "language" is understood, as in English. For example:

Разбѣрам са̀мо ма̀лко бѣлгарски.	I understand only a little Bulgarian.
Разбѣрате ли английски?	Do you understand English?

This suffix forms adjectives of numerous sorts. The form of the root to which the suffix is added is not always predictable. For example:

<i>national name [masculine]</i>	<i>stem</i>	<i>derived adjective</i>
бѣлгар- <b>ин</b>	бѣлгар-	бѣлгар- <b>ски</b>
англи- <b>ча̀нин</b>	англий-	англий- <b>ски</b>

In the masculine, these adjectives always end in **-и**. Other forms are regular:

<i>masculine</i>	бѣлгарск- <b>и</b>	ези́к	английск- <b>и</b>	рома̀н
<i>feminine</i>	бѣлгарск- <b>а</b>	раки́я	английск- <b>а</b>	кѣща
<i>neuter</i>	бѣлгарск- <b>о</b>	ви́но	английск- <b>о</b>	се́ло
<i>plural</i>	бѣлгарск- <b>и</b>	студѣнти	английск- <b>и</b>	студѣнти

### 3.8. Нали

The question word **нали́** can appear either at the beginning or at the end of a sentence. It signifies that the speaker expects a positive answer to the question. Its most frequent translation is as the so-called tag question ("isn't it?", "aren't you?", or the like). For instance:

Нали́ ви́ждаш?	Don't you see?
Нали́ има̀те мо̀лив?	You have a pencil, don't you?
То́й е го́лям, нали́?	It's big, isn't it?
Кѣща ри́суваш, нали́?	You're drawing a house, aren't you?

### 3.9. Definite forms of plurals in -a

A few masculine nouns, and all neuter nouns, form their plural in **-a**. The rules for forming these plurals will be learned in later lessons. For now, note the fact that *any* noun which ends in **-a**, no matter what its number or gender, takes the definite article **-та**. \*

Here are two examples. The plural of the masculine noun **но́мер** "number" is **номерá**, and the plural of the neuter noun **детé** "child" is the slightly irregular **децá**. The definite forms of these nouns are:

<i>gender</i>	<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>
<i>masculine</i>	<b>но́мерът</b>	<b>номерáта</b>
<i>neuter</i>	<b>детéто</b>	<b>децáта</b>

The easiest way to remember the forms of these plural articles is as follows:

**Nouns ending in -a take a rhyming form of the article,  
no matter what they mean.**

Thus:

**кни́гата**  
(*feminine singular*)

**децáта**  
(*neuter plural*)



### **SAMPLE SENTENCES**

1. Аз ймам (само) едйн приятел.
2. Един приятел пътува за Америка.
3. Аз ймам едно дете.
4. Едно дете отвъря вратата.
5. Това са студенти от Америка.
6. Това са цветни моливи. Това са книги.
7. Каква е тази книга? Това е роман.
8. Кой отвъря вратата? Едно дете. Какво е то? Малко или голямо?
9. Камен и Надка знаят по едно стихотворение.
10. Студентите ноят по едйн кифар.

### **SENTENCES FOR TRANSLATION**

1. What lovely windows there are in this house! Do you see these windows?
2. What are Kamen and Nadka doing? They are counting pencils. Now what are they drawing? Kamen is drawing a pond next to a house, and Nadka is drawing a mountain.
3. Unfortunately I know very little Bulgarian because I am a foreigner. We, as foreigners, read slowly.
4. Americans and English speak English. This Englishwoman also speaks Bulgarian. Do the American women speak Bulgarian?
5. Is there a post office in this village? No, there isn't, because this is a small village.
6. What's this under the bench? Are these shoes? What large shoes they are!
7. Bulgarians like books. They read books often, and not only in Bulgarian. Does this Bulgarian woman read English?

**READING SELECTION**

Кореспонденция - (3)

20 юли, Сѳия

Драга Патриша,

Пощата е много бавна, но има още много време. Няма място за паника. Чакам търпеливо книгата. Четя усилено други книги. Вече разбирам малко английски, но още не говоря.

Интересно, ти как си? Добре ли си? Боб здрав ли е вече?

Бойко ремонтира банята. Сменя плочките. Остава още малко. Обикновено ние почиваме в Копривщица, но тази година време за почивка няма. Децата са на село в Родопите -- нали знаеш, че аз съм оттам.

Копривщица е много хубаво място. Оттам правим излети в планините. Събираме малини и варим сладко. В Копривщица има типична българска атмосфера -- криви тесни улици и бели къщи с червени покриви.

Нали знаеш, Яна рисува много хубаво. Пращам тази рисунка за Майкъл. Това е църквата Александър Невски. Планината отзад е Витоша. На пейката до църквата сме Яна и аз. Идиличен пейзаж, нали?

Сърдечни поздрави

Калина



Street scene in Koprivshtitsa

## GLOSSARY

американец	American (male)	идиличен	idyllic
американка	American (female)	излет	excursion
англичанин	Englishman, English person	иш	or
англичанка	Englishwoman	интересно,	I wonder how you are?
археолог	archaeologist	ти как си?	
атмосфера	atmosphere	каква хубава къща!	what a nice house!
бавен	slow	какво е това?	what's this?
баня	bath, bathroom	какъв	what kind of, what
брой	count	какъв е той?	what [work] does he do?
българин	Bulgarian (male)	картичка	postcard
българка	Bulgarian (female)	като	like, as
варя	boil, cook	класически	classical
вегетерианец	vegetarian (male)	кой	who (see Lesson 5)
вегетерианка	vegetarian (female)	крив	crooked
вече	already, by now	къпя, -еш	bathe
виждам	see	леля	aunt (father's sister); "auntie"
вървя	walk, move, go	лош	bad
гимназия	academically oriented high school	малини	raspberry
гълтка	swallow	и	in, at
говоря	speak, talk	на български	[written or spoken] in Bulgarian
година	year	на село	[staying] in the village
гора	woods, forest	или	isn't it? aren't there?
господа	gentlemen	нали виждаш?	doesn't she? (etc.)
градина	garden	нали е голям?	don't you see?
грешка	mistake		it's big, isn't it?
дама	lady	нали знаеш,	you know, don't you,
дами и господа	ladies and gentlemen	че аз съм...	that I'm...
деца (pl. of дете)	children	начален	beginning, elementary
добре ли си сега?	are you O.K. now?	начално	elementary education
драг	dear	образование	
един	one (masculine)	и	no
една	one (feminine)	номер (pl. номера)	number
едно	one (neuter)	нося	carry, wear
езеро	lake, pond	няма място за	there's no need to worry
живя	live	пипня	
защо	why	обичам	like, love
защото	because	образование	education
затварям	close	обувка	shoe
пая	know	оставам	remain, stay
		остава още малко	there's still a bit left



## Трети урок / Lesson 3

отв́арям	open	сня́т	snow
отде́лен	separate	сре́ден	middle ( <i>adj.</i> )
отза́д	in back, behind	сти́га	[that's] enough
о́ще не говоря́	I can't speak yet	сти́га с то́зи	enough about that
о́ще не четё	s/he doesn't [know how to] read yet	прозо́рец	window
		стихотворе́ние	poem
па́ника	panic, worry	стра́ница	page
пейза́ж	landscape, scene from nature	съби́рам	gather, collect
		съпру́г	husband, spouse
пе́йка	bench	сѝщ	same
пи́ша (-еш)	write	та́зи	this ( <i>feminine</i> )
пи́я	drink	те́зи	these
плани́на	mountain	те́хникум	technical high school
плоч́ка	tile	типиче́н	typical
по	each ( <i>distributive</i> )	това́	this ( <i>neuter</i> )
под	under, below	то́зи	this ( <i>masculine</i> )
позна́вам	know, be acquainted with	търпели́в	patient ( <i>adj.</i> )
по́крив	roof	у́лица	street
почи́вам	rest, go on holiday	уси́лено	intensively
почи́вка	vacation trip, rest		
по́ща	mail, post office	хай́де	come on, let's
пра́вя	do, make	хай́де по една́	[come on,] let's each
пра́вя излет	go on an excursion	глы́тка!	have a drink!
пра́щам	send		
прозо́рец	window	цве́тен	colored
( <i>pl.</i> прозо́рци)		църќва	church
пъту́вам	travel		
		ча́кам	await, wait, wait for
разби́ра се	of course	ча́ша	glass, cup
разби́рам	understand	че	that ( <i>conjunction</i> )
рису́вам	draw	черве́н	red
рису́нка	drawing	чѐст	frequent
ромáн	novel	чѐсто	often
		четá	read
сла́дко	thick sweet preserves	чуждене́ц	foreigner, stranger ( <i>male</i> )
сла́дък	sweet	чужденка́	foreigner, stranger ( <i>female</i> )
сме́ням	change, replace		

## CULTURAL COMMENTARY

### Forms of address

Bulgarian children often refer to strangers by kinship terms such as "aunt", "uncle", "grandma", "grandpa", depending on the sex and the (relative) age of the stranger. A young (to middle-aged) woman could thus be referred to by a child as "lelya" (леля).

### School systems: levels

As in America, Bulgarian children begin school at age 6 or 7. After completing the four grades of elementary school (начално образование), they move to the three grades of middle school (прогимназия), and then to one of several higher educational schools. These are of two types: the

### Трети урок / Lesson 3

academically oriented (**гимназия**) and the technically oriented (**техникум**). By law Bulgarian children must complete at least one year of higher education (that is, through eight grades of school). Among the most prestigious of the academically oriented schools is the "classical" high school (**Класическата гимназия**). Students are admitted to university by a very rigorous series of examinations.

#### Home life: repairs

Home repairs, such as replacing the tiles in the bathroom, are almost always done by individual homeowners. Most Bulgarians learn to do these jobs out of necessity.

#### Geography: Koprivshtitsa

The picturesque town of Koprivshtitsa (**Копривщица**) is located to the east of Sofia, in the foothills of the mountain range called Sredna Gora (**Средна гора**). The town has been designated a "museum-city", and many of the houses in it have been given the protective status of "historical monument". The houses are all of the old, Ottoman-inspired style, with overhanging balconies and dark red-tiled roofs. The streets are narrow and cobblestoned. Koprivshtitsa was the site of the initial Bulgarian uprising against the Ottomans; the homes of several of the famous revolutionaries have been converted into museums.

#### Geography: the Rhodopes

The Rhodope mountains (**Родопите**) are situated in the south of Bulgaria. The region is known for its physical beauty and for its characteristic traditional handicrafts, music and speech.

#### Geography: Sofia

One of the most striking sights in Sofia is the cathedral dedicated to Alexander Nevski (**Александър Невски**), built in honor of the Russian armies who liberated Bulgaria from the Ottoman overlordship in the late 19th century. Its golden dome is visible from a great distance, and its massive interior, crypt treasury and excellent choir make for a memorable visit. There is a large open square in front of the church where Sofia residents stroll and often have their pictures taken. Many street vendors have set up business there in recent years.

#### Geography: Vitosha

Directly to the south of Sofia is Vitosha mountain (**Витоша**) at 7,506 feet. It is a favorite spot for excursions. On Sundays it is filled with Sofia residents picnicking and hiking; regularly scheduled city buses travel there.

#### City and country

Connections to one's rural roots are generally valued in Bulgaria. Those who still have relatives "in the village" (i.e. in a particular rural settlement) try to visit in the summers or at least to send their children there. These visits are not only for the rural experience, but also to maintain contact with one's extended family.

#### Food and drink: sladko

Bulgarians enjoy sweets, and particularly the thick, sweet home-cooked preserves called "sladko" (**сладко**). This can be made from any fruit, but it is commonly made from berries or plums, preferably freshly gathered. A combination of fruit, water and sugar is brought to the boil and then simmered for several hours. The resulting sweet is served to guests on small saucers when they first arrive, together with a glass of cold water or a small cup of Turkish coffee.

## LESSON 5

### **DIALOGUE**

#### Идва един висок човек

// Ангел стои в коридора и пуши. Идва един висок човек. Носи фотоапарат, касетофон, и видеокамера. Ангел го гледа и мисли. Какъв ли е този човек? Исква да го пита, но не знае как. //

Веселин: Извинете, искам да мина.

Ангел: Заповядайте, минете.

Веселин: Не мога, няма място.

Ангел: Защо носите толкова много? Гледам ви и се чудя. Какво работите?

Веселин: Журналист съм.

Ангел: А-а! Журналист! За къде пътувате?

Веселин: Отивам в Габрово, на фестивала.

Ангел: На кой фестивал?

Веселин: На фестивала на хумора и сатирата, разбира се.

Ангел: Аха, затова носиш тези апарати! Не са ли тежки?

Веселин: Тежки са, разбира се.

Ангел: Слож ги на пода тогава! А не, не в коридора. Ела да влезем в купето. Хайде да изпием по една ракия.

Веселин: Не мога да вляза. Исквам да намеря свободно място. Това купе е пълно, нали?

Ангел: Да, пълно е, но децата могат да седнат заедно.

// Веселин иска да продължи по коридора, но в този момент забелязва Джули, и си казва -- Коя ли е тази хубавица? //

Веселин: Добре, хайде да влезем!

## LESSON 4

### **DIALOGUE**

Затворете прозореца, моля!

Милена: Моля ви се, господине, затворете прозореца!

Дейвид: Защо? Задушно е. Имаме нужда от въздух! Не затваряйте прозореца, моля.

Милена: Не знаете ли? Течението е много опасно за малките. Нали виждате? Децата седят на течение! Мигко, веднага затвори прозореца!

Димитър: Добре, мило. Затварям.

Ангел: Седнете, господине. Аз съм до прозореца, сега затварям.

Таня: Надке, вземй моливите от пода.

Надка: Защо, мамо?

Таня: Не питай, само слушай. Сложи моливите в чантата. Къде е чантата? Камене, знаеш ли къде е чантата?

Камен: Да, знай. Сега слagam всичко в чантата.

Таня: Благодаря, Камене, добро момче.

Ангел: Пушите ли? Имате ли една цигара?

Дейвид: Не, ние не пушим. Нали знаете, димът е много опасен за малките.

Джули: И за големите. Вие, ако пушите, излезте в коридора, моля.

Ангел: Добре, госпожице. Сега излизам.

**BASIC GRAMMAR****4.1. Aspect**

Nearly every verbal idea in Bulgarian is expressed by two different verbs, each of which conveys a different point of view, or “aspect”. One of these views the action as general, basic and unbounded, and is called “imperfective”. The other views the action as bounded in some way or another, and is called “perfective”.

The combination of the two verbs is called an “aspect pair”. Dictionaries usually list the two together, with the imperfective form first. When one knows only the perfective, one must predict (or guess) the imperfective form in order to look up the meaning of the verb in the dictionary. For this reason, it is best to learn both members of an aspect pair at the same time.

All glossary listings from now on will be in this format; the glossary to this lesson repeats all verbs learned up to this point, now in the form of aspect pairs. Following are examples, always listed with imperfective preceding perfective.

<i>Imperfective / Perfective</i>	<i>meaning</i>
вли́зам / вля́за	enter, go in
ви́ждам / ви́дя	see
затва́рям / затво́ря	close
ка́звам / ка́жа	say
оста́вам / оста́на	stay, remain
отва́рям / отво́ря	open
пра́щам / пра́тя	send
сла́гам / сло́жа	put
тръ́гвам / тръ́гна	leave, set out

Perfective verbs most frequently refer to a single instance of completed action. Imperfective verbs usually describe an action in progress, refer to the general idea of an action, or suggest multiple, repeated instances of a single action. Because of the nature of their meaning, verbs such as **съм** “be” and **има́м** “have” exist only in the imperfective aspect.

**4.2. Imperative**

There are two sets of imperative endings in Bulgarian. These are:

	<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>
Type 1	-й	-йте
Type 2	-и́	-е́те

Singular forms are used when addressing a person one speaks to as **ти**, and plural forms are used either with a group or when addressing a person one speaks to as **вие**.

To form the imperative, drop the final letter of the 1<sup>st</sup> singular present form. Add Type 1 endings to verbs of the a-conjugation or verbs whose 1<sup>st</sup> singular ends in -я preceded by a vowel. Add Type 2 endings to all other verbs, and shift the accent to the ending.

	<i>1st sg. present</i>	<i>sg. imperative</i>	<i>pl. imperative</i>
Type 1	затв́ар-ям пи́-я бро́-я зна́-я	затв́ар-яй! пи́-й! бро́-й! зна́-й!	затв́ар-яйте! пи́-йте! бро́-йте! зна́-йте!
Type 2	пи́ш-а върв́-я затво́р-я чет-а́	пиш-и́! върв-и́! затвор-и́! чет-и́!	пиш-е́те! върв-е́те! затвор-е́те! чет-е́те!

Some verbs have irregular imperatives. Among the most common of these are:

	<i>1st sg. present</i>	<i>sg. imperative</i>	<i>pl. imperative</i>
(irregular)	ви́дя вля́за изля́за	ви́ж! влéз! излéз!	ви́жте! влéзте! излéзте!

Positive commands are usually formed from perfective verbs. This is because the focus is on the speaker's desire that an action be performed once and completed. Negative commands are normally formed from imperfective verbs. This is because the focus is on the speaker's desire that the process of an action not be undertaken. Below are two examples:

*perfective*

Затвори́ вратáта!

Close the door!

*imperfective*

Не затвáraй вратáта!

Don't close the door!

#### 4.3. Masculine definite objects

When masculine definite nouns are used as the object of a verb or preposition, the final -т of the article is lost, and the article is written -а. Nouns whose article is written -ят simply drop the -т. Here are examples:

*subject*

Прозорецът е голям.  
Как се казва лекаря?

The window is big.  
What is the doctor's name?

*object*

Той седи до прозореца.  
Това шише е на лекаря.

He is sitting by the window.  
This bottle belongs to the doctor.

#### 4.4. Verbs of body position

Bulgarian has two different verbs each for the concepts "sit", "stand" or "lie". One means to assume the position (as in "sit down, stand up, lie down") while the other means to be in the position (as in "be seated, be standing, be lying down"). By the nature of their meaning, verbs of the second group exist only in the imperfective aspect.

ASSUME a position		BE in a position	
<i>imperfective</i>	<i>perfective</i>	<i>imperfective</i>	
сядам	седна	седя	SIT
ставам	стана	стоя	STAND
лягам	легна	лежа	LIE

#### 4.5. Embedded questions

When a question is integrated into another sentence, usually as the object of a verb, it is said to be "embedded". In English, such questions shift the word order of the original question. In Bulgarian, however, the word order remains unchanged. Note that in all three of the examples below, the Bulgarian question **къде е чантата** ("where is the bag") maintains the same word order, while the English question does not. Note too that the sentence in which a question is embedded does not have to be a question itself.

	Къде е чантата?	Where is the bag?
Знаеш ли	къде е чантата?	Do you know where the bag is?
Не, не зная	къде е чантата.	No, I don't know where the bag is.

#### 4.6. Prepositions

The preposition **в** means either "in" or "into" depending on the context.

Моливите са в чантата.	The pencils are in the bag.
Сега слагам всичко в чантата.	Now I'm putting everything into the bag.



#### 4.7. Subjectless sentences

Bulgarian sentences which describe general conditions do not have a subject. English, by contrast, must use the subject “it”. For example:

Тúка е задúшно. Задúшно е тúk.	It’s stuffy in here.
Днéc е тóпло. Тóпло е днéc.	It is warm today.

In order to translate correctly from English to Bulgarian, this “it” (which linguists call the “dummy it”) must be distinguished from the “it” that refers to something in particular, as in “It’s a house.” Do not use **това** in Bulgarian unless the “it” is of this second sort.



Synagogue, downtown Sofia

## EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the article.

1. Детé\_\_\_\_ е много голямо. Виждаш ли детé\_\_\_\_?
2. Коридóр\_\_\_\_ на влак\_\_\_\_ е тесен. Тё защó стоят в коридóр\_\_\_\_?
3. Къдé са мо́ливи\_\_\_\_? В ча́нта\_\_\_\_ или в ку́фар\_\_\_\_?
4. Къдé е трамва́\_\_\_\_? Има ли място в трамва́\_\_\_\_?
5. Обúвки\_\_\_\_ са под пéйка\_\_\_\_. Виждаш ли обúвки\_\_\_\_?
6. Дим\_\_\_\_ е много опáсен. Седя далéче от дим\_\_\_\_.
7. Влéзте в кабинéт\_\_\_\_ на лéкар\_\_\_\_. Лéкар\_\_\_\_ е ту́ка.

II. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of one of the following verbs:  
затвáрям / затво́ря; вли́зам / вля́за; оста́вам / оста́на; трéгвам / трéгна;  
ка́звам / ка́жа; ся́дам / се́дна.

1. Не \_\_\_\_\_ в купéто, нýма място.
2. Мо́ля ви се, \_\_\_\_\_ вратáта, ста́ва течéние.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ ту́ка о́ще ма́лко, не \_\_\_\_\_!
4. \_\_\_\_\_ и́стината.
5. Не \_\_\_\_\_ това́, ако не é и́стина.
6. Защó стои́ш до вратáта? \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ на пéйката!
7. Не \_\_\_\_\_ на та́зи пéйка, не é чи́ста.

III. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate verb of body position.

1. Ка́мен и На́дка пъту́ват за Со́фия. Тё \_\_\_\_\_ до прозо́реца.
2. Ка́мене, \_\_\_\_\_ на сто́ла!
3. Ка́мене, \_\_\_\_\_ от сто́ла!
4. В коридóра на вла́ка има́ много хо́ра. Тё \_\_\_\_\_ пра́ви.
5. Ку́чето спи́. То́ \_\_\_\_\_ под пéйката.
6. \_\_\_\_\_, Ка́мене. Много́ е кýсно.
7. За момчéто нýма място. То́ \_\_\_\_\_ на по́да. А́нгел ка́зва:  
“\_\_\_\_\_! По́дът не é чи́ст.”

**ADDITIONAL GRAMMAR NOTES****4.1a. Aspect**

Perfective verbs imply a meaning of boundedness and imperfective verbs imply the absence of such a meaning. The most frequent sort of boundedness is that of a single instance of an action, usually with a view to its completion. Present tense verb forms are normally used in the perfective only after various conjunctions or particles which signify boundedness. Examples will be seen in the next lesson.

Because of the non-bounded meaning of the imperfective aspect, present tense verb forms are used very frequently in the imperfective. Here are examples of the three primary meanings of the present imperfective:

*action in progress*

Какво рисуваш? Къща ли?  
Таня отваря вратата.

What are you drawing? A house?  
Tanya opens the door.

*generic idea of action*

Пушите ли?  
Надка рисува много добре.

Do you smoke?  
Nadka draws very well.

*habitual, repeated action*

Обикновено почиваме в  
Копревщица.  
Четя усилено други книги.

Usually we go to Koprivshtitsa  
for our vacation.  
I've been reading other books  
in a concentrated fashion.

The perfective aspect can also be used to describe habitual actions in a more vivid, immediate manner. Students are advised to avoid this usage for the present. It takes time, and exposure to the language, to learn the proper emotional contexts for such usage. For example:

Седнем в колата и сме там.

[All we have to do is] get into the car and  
there we are!

Bulgarian dictionaries list many verbs only in the imperfective aspect. Sometimes this is because the meaning of the verb is not compatible with the idea of boundedness (e.g. **имам**, **съм**). More frequently, it is because Bulgarians often consider the basic idea of a verb to be imperfective. Examples of such verbs, which are called “simplex verbs”, are **пиша** “write”, **четя** “read”, **пия** “drink”.

The perfective forms of these verbs are created by adding a prefix to them. Several types of prefixes can be added to these verbs; in each case, the prefix adds a particular sort of bounded meaning to the verb. Bulgarians consider that the addition of a prefix *always* changes the meaning of the verb -- sometimes slightly, sometimes radically. For this reason, every prefixed verb has a separate imperfective verb associated with it, and correspondingly, a separate listing in the dictionary. Here is an example of a “basic” verb, and of an aspect pair related to it by prefixation:

Simplex (imperfective only)		Aspect pair (perfective / imperfective)	
Verb	meaning	Verb pair	meaning
гледам	look	разглеждам / разгледам	study, examine

The perfective forms of these basic verbs, and this general type of aspect relationship, will be discussed in Lessons 7, 18 and 26. At this point, the student should focus on learning aspect pairs of the sort **казвам** / **кажа**.

#### 4.2a. Imperative

Affirmative commands are usually given in the perfective aspect and negative commands in the imperfective aspect. The imperfective imperative can be also used to convey repeated commands, or greater abruptness and a more insistent (and consequently less polite) command. These usages will be studied in later lessons.

Type 1 endings are also added to the irregular verb **дам** “give”, whose present tense conjugation will be learned in Lesson 9. Its imperative is:

<i>present</i>	<i>singular imperative</i>	<i>plural imperative</i>
дам	дай!	дайте!

#### 4.3a. Masculine definite objects

Although the object form of definite masculine nouns is written **-a**, its *sound* remains [-ъ-]. That is, although it has lost the final **-т** of the subject article, both in writing and in pronunciation, it retains the same vowel *sound*. The object form of the article in **-я** keeps the same vowel letter in the written form, **-я**, although the vowel in all four of these article forms is pronounced as if written [-ъ]. This pronunciation is especially clear when the article is accented. For example (the apostrophe denotes softening of the preceding consonant):

Димът е много опасен за малките.	[димът]	Smoke is very dangerous for children.
Те седят далече от димá.	[димъ]	They are sitting away from the smoke.
Денят е хубав.	[ден'ът]	It's a nice day.
Работи през деня.	[ден'ъ]	He works during the day.

Most Bulgarians do not distinguish definite subjects from objects when speaking, and will often pronounce the subject form without the final -т. The distinction must be made in writing, however.

#### 4.4a. Verbs of body position

The structural similarities between the three different sets of verbs for body position can help the student remember them. These similarities are described below for each of the three types, listed by column number.

(1) <i>imperfective</i>	(2) <i>perfective</i>	(3) <i>imperfective</i>	
сядам	седна	седя	<i>SIT</i>
ставам	стана	стоя	<i>STAND</i>
лягам	легна	лежа	<i>LIE</i>

(1) Paired imperfective verbs indicating a change of position all belong to the *a*-conjugation and all have the sound [a] in the root.

(2) Paired perfective verbs indicating a change of position all belong to the *e*-conjugation, all have the consonant -н- in them, and all are accented on the stem.

(3) Unpaired imperfective verbs denoting a state all belong to the *и*-conjugation, and all are accented on the ending.

Two of these verbs have additional meanings: **ставам** (perfective **стана**) also means "get up [in the morning]", "become" and "happen"; and **лягам** (perfective **легна**) also means "go to bed".

#### 4.6a. Prepositions

(a) The preposition **от** is used to indicate the basic ingredients or material of which something is made. If the ingredient is an added one, the preposition **с** is used. Both these meanings are usually rendered in English by an adjective.

салáта от зéле и мóркови	carrot and cabbage salad
омлét с гъби	mushroom omelet

(b) The basic meaning of the preposition **освѐн** is “except [for]”. The idiomatic expression **освѐн това** means “in addition, besides”.

#### 4.8. Shifting vowels in verb roots

The **е/я** vowel shift, seen earlier in **голям** / **големи**, can also occur in accented verb roots. Two very common such verbs are the perfectives **изля́за** “go out” and **вля́за** “enter, come in”. Here is the conjugation of **изля́за**, with the shifting vowels underlined:

	<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>
<i>1<sup>st</sup> person</i>	изля́за	изле́зем
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> person</i>	изле́зеш	изле́зете
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> person</i>	изле́зе	изля́зат
<i>imperative</i>	изле́з!	изле́зте!

The rule governing the alternation is the same as with adjectives: if **-е-** or **-и-** occurs in the following syllable, the alternant **-е-** is used; otherwise the alternant **-я-** is used. In conjugation, present tense forms with the theme vowel **-е-** have the root vowel **-е-**, while the 1<sup>st</sup> singular and 3<sup>rd</sup> plural have the root vowel **-я-**.

The fact that the alternant **-е-** occurs in the imperative of this verb must be learned separately.

#### 4.9. Generic definiteness

Bulgarian uses definite articles in a number of instances where English does not. One of the commonest of these is in referring to general categories. Consider the following sentence, and the several possible English translations:

**Тече́нието е мно́го опа́сно за ма́лките.**

Drafts are very dangerous for children.

A draft is a very dangerous thing for children.

A draft is a very dangerous thing for any small person.

Here, the noun **тече́ние** refers both to the generic category “draft” and to any one specific instance of this category. Normal English usage is either without an article or with the indefinite article. Bulgarian, however, must use the definite article. Similarly, when the adjectives **ма́лък** and **голя́м** are used in the definite plural, they can refer both to the generic categories “children” and “adults” and to any particular representatives of these categories. (The neutral words for children and adults are **деца́** and **възра́стни**, respectively.)

The Bulgarian generic use of the definite article is similar to that found in French and German. English speakers must pay attention to learn this usage.

#### 4.10. Third-plural passives

As in English, third person plural verb forms often convey the idea of the passive mood. The subject is “they”, but the persons to whom the pronoun “they” refers are unspecified. Examples:

Не зная́ каквó серви́рат.

I don't know what they serve here.  
I don't know what is served here.

Тук вся́чко го́твят до́брé.

They cook everything well here.  
Here everything is cooked well.

#### 4.11. Alternate verb forms

Many people in the capital city of Sofia say both зная́ and зная́ in the 1<sup>st</sup> singular of the verb meaning “know”. Both variants are considered correct.



Mosque, downtown Sofia



## **SAMPLE SENTENCES**

1. Деца́та обича́т сла́дко.
2. Пу́шенето е опа́сно за здра́вето.
3. Бъ́лгарите пи́ят черве́но ви́но.
4. Чове́кът е смър́тен.
5. -- Ви́е ко́й сте?  
-- А́з съ́м Бо́йко Ата́насов.  
-- Ка́къв сте?  
-- Ле́кар съ́м.
6. Ко́й съ́м а́з? Зна́еш ли ко́й съ́м а́з?
7. Ка́къв съ́м а́з? Зна́еш ли ка́къв съ́м а́з?
8. Ка́к се ка́зваш?
9. Кажете́ ка́к се ка́звате!
10. За́къде пъту́вате? То́й пи́та за́къде пъту́вате.
11. Миле́на стои́ пра́ва. Дими́тър ка́зва: “Мо́ля, седни́. Има́ свободо́но мя́сто до прозо́реца.” Миле́на се́да до прозо́реца. В купе́то вли́зат Та́ня и На́дка. Миле́на се́ди до прозо́реца. Тя ста́ва и ка́зва: “Мо́ля седне́те. Ви́е сте с ма́лко дете́.”
12. Ле́каря́т ка́зва: “Легне́те, има́те ну́жда от прегле́д”. То́й изли́за от ка́бинета. Пацие́нтът ля́га. Ле́каря́т вли́за. Пацие́нтът ле́жи на легло́то.

## ***SENTENCES FOR TRANSLATION***

1. "See what there is here?! Beer and rakia! Have [= drink] a beer!"  
"No, this beer seems warm. I don't like warm beer."
2. We're going out for a bit, because we're getting hungry. Are you hungry too?
3. "Wait a minute! Don't shut the door! I'm coming in also."  
"Hurry up! We don't have much time."
4. Don't sit in the draft! Don't you know that drafts are dangerous?
5. "Ask the waiter where the menu is."  
"I don't need a menu. I know what they serve."  
"Are you saying you know the menu by heart?"
6. Please put the salad and the rakia here. But don't put the omelet here now.  
We're not in a hurry.
7. Please put the drawings and the pencil in separate bags. And don't put the book  
in the bag. I'm reading that book.
8. Come into the water, the lake is very warm today. The children are also coming  
in.
9. Children, don't come into the house that way! See, this house has a door!
10. Take the bus! Don't take the tram, it's very slow.



## READING SELECTION

### В ресторанта

Марин: Гладен ли си? Изглеждаш неспокоен.

Пламен: Вече огладнявам. Освен това следобед съм на работа и нямам много време. Виждаш ли сервитьора наблизо?

Марин: Чакай малко. За първи път съм тук. Не знам какво сервира. Още разглеждам листа.

Пламен: Аз знам менюто наизуст. Поръчвам пържола с гарнитура и шопска салата. Ти какво предпочиташ? Какво гледаш толкова в менюто, не знаеш ли български? Поръчай същото.

Марин: Ти бързаш, но аз не бързам. Винаги избирам бавно. Освен това съм вегетарианец. Ако обичате!

Сервитьорът: Моля!

Марин: Имате ли омлет?

Сервитьорът: Да, разбира се.

Марин: А колко струва?

Сервитьорът: Омлетът с шунка струва 150 лева, омлетът с гъби 130 лева, а омлетът с кашкавал 120 лева.

Марин: А какви салати имате?

Сервитьорът: Салата от зеле и моркови и шопска салата.

Марин: Пламене, тук добре ли правят омлета?

Пламен: Тук всичко готвят добре. И напитките са винаги студени.

Марин: Това ме подсеща. И една малка ракия. С хубава салата винаги пия ракия. А ти?

Пламен: Знаеш, че съм на работа. Не мога.

Марин: Пий една бира тогава. Аз плащам.

Пламен: Бира може. Утре черпя аз.

## GLOSSARY

ако	if	кола	car, automobile
ако обичате	if you please	колко	how much, how many
		колко струва?	how much does it cost?
бира	beer	куче	dog
бързам	hurry, be in a hurry	късен	late
веднага	immediately, at once	лѐв	lev (Bulgarian currency)
вземй моливите!	pick up the pencils!	120 лѐва	120 levs / leva
взѝмам (or взѐмам) / взѐма	take	легло	(see L. 6 for ending) bed
виждам / видя	see	лѐгна see лягам	
винаги	always	лежá (-иш)	lie, be lying
влизам / вляза	enter, go in	лист	sheet of paper
водá	water	лягам / лѐгна	lie down, go to bed
въздух	air		
възрастен	adult	мáлките	small ones, children
възрастни	grownups	ме	me (see L. 5)
гарнитѹра	garnish	меню (neuter)	menu
гледáм	look at	мѝл	dear
голѐмите	big ones, adults	мѝло	darling (vocative)
гóтвя	prepare, cook	мóга	can, be able (see L. 5)
гъба	mushroom	мóже	possible, OK
		мóля	please
дай, дайте!	give! (see L. 9 for conjugation)	мóля ви се, госпóдине	if you please, sir
далече	far, far away	мóля!	at your service
дѐн, -ят (pl. дни)	day	мóрков	carrot
дѝм, -ѝт	smoke	на рáбота сѝм	be at work, be on the job
задѹшен	stuffy	наблѝзо	nearby
затвáрям / затвóря	close	наизѹст	by heart, verbatim
зѐле	cabbage	напѝтка	beverage, drink
знáм - знáя	know	неспокоѐн	uneasy, restless
избѝрам / избѐра	choose, select	огладнявам / огладнѐя	get hungry
изглѐждам	look, appear, seem	омлѐт	omelet
излѝзам / излѝза	leave, go out	омлѐт с гѐби	mushroom omelet
изучáвам / изѹча (-иш)	study, make a study of	омлѐт с кашкавáл	cheese omelet
ѝмам нѹжда от	need, have need of	омлѐт с шѹнка	ham omelet
кабинѐт	office (e.g. doctor's)	опáсен	dangerous
кáзвам / кáжа (-еш)	say	освѐн	except [for]
каквó	what for, why	освѐн товá	besides, in addition
каквó глѐдаш	why are you so	остáвам / остáна	remain, stay
тóлкова в	absorbed in	от	[made] of
кашкавáл	kashkaval (yellow cheese)	отвáрям / отвóря	open
		пациѐнт (ка)	patient (medical)

# Четвърти урок / Lesson 4

пѣтам	ask	слѣшам	listen, obey
плѣщам / плѣтя	pay	смѣням / смѣня	change, replace
пѡд	floor	смѣртен	mortal
подсѣщам / подсѣтя	remind, call to mind	спѣя	sleep
порѣчвам / порѣчам	order	ставам / стѣна	get up, stand up,
почѣвам / почѣна	rest, go on holiday		become, happen
прав	straight, upright	стѡл	chair
пращам / прѣтя	send	стоя	stand, be standing
прѣглед	examination (medical)	стоя прав	stand, remain
предпочѣтам /	prefer		standing
предпочѣта		струвам	cost
през	during ( <i>see L. 9</i> )	студѣн	cold
пуша (-иш)	smoke	събѣрам / съберѣ	gather
пушене	smoking	същото	the same thing
първи	first	сядам / сѣдна	sit down, take a seat
пържѡла	chop, steak		
пържѡла с гарнитѣра	steak with the	такѣ	that way, like that
	trimmings	там	there
пѣт	time (instance)	това ме подсѣща	that reminds me
		тогѣва	then, in that case
рабѡта	work, job	тѡлкова	so much, so many,
рабѡтя	work		to such a degree
разбѣрам / разберѣ	understand	трѣгвам / трѣгна	set out, leave
разглѣждам /	examine, study		
разглѣдам		ѣтре	tomorrow
ресторѣнт	restaurant	ѣтре чѣрпя ѣз	it's my treat tomorrow
салѣта	salad	хѡра	people
салѣта от зѣле	cabbage salad		
салѣта от мѡркови	carrot salad	цигѣра	cigarette
сегѣ излѣзам	I'll go out right away		
сѣдна <i>see</i> сѣдам		чѣрпя	treat [someone]
сѣднѣте, господѣне!	have a seat, sir!	чѣст	clean
сѣдѣ	sit, be seated	чѡвѣк	man, person
сѣдѣ на течѣние	sit in a drafty place		
сервѣрам	serve, have available	шѡпска салѣта	"Shope salad"
сервитьѡр (ка)	waiter	шѡпски	pertaining to the "Shope"
слѣгам / слѡжа (-иш)	put		area near Sofia
следѡбѣд	afternoon	шѣнка	ham
следѡбѣд съм на	I have to work this		
рабѡта	afternoon		

## CULTURAL COMMENTARY

### Forms of address: nicknames

Nicknames are very common in Bulgaria, and often end in **-ко** or **-че**. The nickname **Митко** is formed from the second syllable of **Димитър** plus **-ко**.

### Families

Bulgarians are extremely fond of children. They will usually make special efforts to help pregnant women or mothers with small children.

### Food and drink: restaurants; vegetables; Shopska salata; drinks with meals

The range of available options in Bulgarian restaurants is often quite predictable, although in recent years there has been an increase in variety. Meat is normally available. A fried or grilled chop (**пържола**), usually of pork, is a frequent choice. When the menu specifies "garnish" (**гарнитѹра**), the main portion of meat will be served together with various accompaniments, usually fried potatoes and/or rice, and stewed or pickled vegetables.

Vegetarianism is not unknown in Bulgaria, although it is not yet common. In the months when fresh fruits and vegetables are readily available, the cuisine centers around them, and in winter months, cheese and eggs are staples.

Salads are very popular in Bulgaria. An especial favorite is "shopska salata" (**шопска салата**), which is composed of chopped cucumber, tomato, onion, and pepper, and is topped with grated feta cheese. It is a particular Bulgarian custom to eat this salad (or at least some of its components) as an accompaniment to a pre-dinner rakia. Bulgarians find incomprehensible the Western custom of eating nuts, pretzels, or popcorn as an accompaniment to alcoholic drinks.

In many parts of Bulgaria, the drinking of rakia is limited to the appetizer portion of the meal; beer or wine are drunk with the main meal. Some Bulgarians will drink rakia throughout, however. Formerly, all drinks were served at room temperature, but in recent years it has become fashionable to drink beer and soft drinks cold. Hospitality decrees that friends should take turns treating each other to drinks. Most drinks come in standard portions. The request of **една малка** (or **една голяма**) **ракия** will bring a standard sized drink.



Refectory, Troyan Monastery (north-central Bulgaria)

## LESSON 5

### **DIALOGUE**

#### Идва един висок човек

// Ангел стои в коридора и пуши. Идва един висок човек. Носи фотоапарат, касетофон, и видеокамера. Ангел го гледа и мисли. Какъв ли е този човек? Исква да го пита, но не знае как. //

Веселин: Извинете, искам да мина.

Ангел: Заповядайте, минете.

Веселин: Не мога, няма място.

Ангел: Защо носите толкова много? Гледам ви и се чудя. Какво работите?

Веселин: Журналист съм.

Ангел: А-а! Журналист! За къде пътувате?

Веселин: Отивам в Габрово, на фестивала.

Ангел: На кой фестивал?

Веселин: На фестивала на хумора и сатирата, разбира се.

Ангел: Аха, затова носиш тези апарати! Не са ли тежки?

Веселин: Тежки са, разбира се.

Ангел: Сложй ги на пода тогава! А не, не в коридора. Ела да влезем в купето. Хайде да изпием по една ракия.

Веселин: Не мога да вляза. Исквам да намеря свободно място. Това купе е пълно, нали?

Ангел: Да, пълно е, но децата могат да седнат заедно.

// Веселин иска да продължи по коридора, но в този момент забелязва Джюли, и си казва -- Коя ли е тази хубавица? //

Веселин: Добре, хайде да влезем!

## BASIC GRAMMAR

### 5.1. Infinitive replacements

Where other languages use infinitives, Bulgarian uses a phrase composed of **да** + the present tense form of the verb. Such “да-phrases” have a number of uses in Bulgarian, but the most common is in this function of infinitive meaning.

Verbs used in да-phrases must have the proper personal ending. Because subject pronouns are often omitted in Bulgarian, it is especially crucial to have the right verb ending. In many cases, the verb of the да-phrase has the same ending as the verb upon which it depends. In these instances, the English translation uses a simple infinitive. For example:

Искам	да	намеря	свободно място.
I want	to	find	an empty seat.
Искам	да	мина.	
I want	to	pass by.	
Деца́та	искат	да	седнат заедно.
The children	want	to	sit together.

In the above sentences, the one who wants the action performed is the same as the one who would perform it: both verbs have the same subject.

It is often the case, however, that the two verbs do not have the same subject. In these instances, the English translation must name the second subject. Furthermore, the identity of the Bulgarian *subject* is named by an English *object* pronoun. Care must therefore be taken both to get the right ending on the Bulgarian verb in the да-phrase, and not to be confused by the structure of the corresponding English sentence. In the following example, the meaning of the English pronoun “them” must be expressed by the 3<sup>rd</sup> plural ending on the Bulgarian verb **дойдат**.

Искаме	да	дойдат	и този път.
We want	them	to	come this time too.

Not every Bulgarian да-phrase corresponds to an infinitive in English. After the verb “can”, for instance, English adds the verb directly. But Bulgarian treats this sequence of two verbs as any other infinitive replacement. (Thinking of the verb “can” as “be able” may help the student produce the correct construction in Bulgarian.) For example:



## Пети урок / Lesson 5

Не йскам	да	вляза.
I don't want	to	come in.

Не мога	да	вляза.
I can't		come in.
I'm not able	to	come in.

Infinitive replacements are also common after the word **хайде**. This word, which is unchanging in form, usually refers to a group of which the speaker considers himself a member. The verb following it, therefore, is usually 1<sup>st</sup> plural. **Хайде** can also be used without a verb; in these cases a verb must be understood.

Хайде да влезем.	Let's go in.
Хайде да изпием по една ракия!	Let's each drink a rakia!
Хайде по една глътка!	Let's each [have] a drink!

### 5.2. The verb мога

The conjugation of the verb **мога** "can, be able" is slightly irregular, in that the stem-final consonant **-г-** shifts to **-ж-** before the theme vowel **-е-**.

	<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>
<i>1<sup>st</sup> person</i>	МОГ-а	МОЖ-ем
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> person</i>	МОЖ-еш	МОЖ-ете
<i>3<sup>d</sup> person</i>	МОЖ-е	МОГ-ат

### 5.3. Aspect choice in да-phrases

Perfective verbs signify an action which is bounded in some way. Infinitive replacement phrases often suggest this boundedness, and for this reason perfective verbs are very common after **да**.

The boundedness meaning is usually that of completion. When a speaker expresses her desire *to do* something, or exhorts someone else *to do* something, her focus is usually on the successful completion of a particular action. Compare the following, in which all the verbs following **да** are perfective:

Йскам да ми́на.	I want to get by.
Йскам да на́меря сво́бодно място.	I want to find an empty seat.
Хайде да в́лезем!	Let's go in.
Хайде да изпи́ем по една би́ра.	Let's each have a beer.

Likewise, the verb **мóга** "can" is almost always followed by a perfective verb, since the essential focus is on the desired completion of an action. This is the case whether or not the particular action is seen as possible or impossible.

Imperfective verbs can appear after **да** if the specific meaning of boundedness is absent. The first of the two examples below, for instance, describes the speaker's state of wishing he could ask for more information but not being able to do so. Since no boundedness is implied, the imperfective verb **пíтам** is used.

The second describes a speaker's state after the doctor has told him he must stay inside the house for an extended period of time. Since the "going out" is not bounded to any single conceivable instance but rather covers the whole span of many possible instances, the imperfective verb **излíзам** is used.

И́ска да го пíта, но не зна́е кáк.    He wants to ask him, but doesn't know  
how [to go about it].  
Не мóга да излíзам -- бóлен сýм.    I can't go out -- I'm sick.

#### 5.4. Direct object pronouns

Bulgarian distinguishes three cases in personal pronouns: subject, direct object and indirect object. Subject pronouns were learned in Lesson 1. This lesson presents direct object pronouns. Indirect object pronouns will be learned in Lesson 7.

In the following chart, direct object pronouns are given alongside subject pronouns, for ease of comparison:

	<i>subject</i>	<i>direct object</i>
<i>1<sup>st</sup> singular</i>	а́з	ме
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> singular</i>	ти́	те
<i>reflexive</i>		се
<i>3<sup>d</sup> singular</i>		
<i>feminine</i>	тя́	я
<i>masculine</i>	то́й	го
<i>neuter</i>	то́	го
<i>1<sup>st</sup> plural</i>	ни́е	ни
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> plural</i>	ви́е	ви
<i>3<sup>d</sup> plural</i>	те́	ги

## Пети урок / Lesson 5

The particle *се* is included in this chart under the category “reflexive”, which is the traditional name given by Bulgarian grammarians to it. Its range of usage is much wider, however.

Subject pronouns are fully accented words and may stand in any position in the sentence. Object pronouns are clitics, and obey the word order rules given in Lesson 1. That is, they may not occur at the beginning of a sentence or phrase, and they must occur adjacent to the verb on which they depend. In essence, this means that object pronouns precede the verb directly unless the verb stands at the beginning, in which case they follow the verb directly. The following two examples demonstrate this rule. In the first, the object pronoun stands directly in front of the verb it depends on. In the second, however, the verb begins the sentence, and the object pronoun must come directly after it.

А́нгел го гле́да и ми́сли.  
Сложи́ ги на по́да!

Angel is looking at him and thinking.  
Put them on the floor!

### 5.5. Usage of direct objects

The meaning of “direct object” in Bulgarian is the same as in English: the person or object which is most directly affected by the action of the verb. In Bulgarian, as in English, direct objects follow the verb directly, without an intervening preposition. For instance:

Put	the books	on the floor.
Сложи́	кни́гите	на по́да!
<i>verb</i>	<i>direct object</i>	<i>prepositional phrase</i>

You	are carrying	a lot of baggage.
(Ти́)	но́сиш	мно́го бага́ж.
<i>subject</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>direct object</i>

Bulgarian and English usage happen to coincide in the case of the above two verbs. In a number of other instances, however, what is a direct object in Bulgarian will be expressed by a prepositional phrases in English. For instance:

А́нгел	гле́да	чове́ка.
<i>subject</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>direct object</i>

Angel	looks	at the man.
<i>subject</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>prepositional phrase</i>

One must be wary of literal translation in such instances. The usage of a verb is part of its overall meaning, and needs to be learned along with that meaning.

Direct object pronouns are used after the impersonal expression **няма** "there isn't" and the pointing word **это**.

Къде е Ивѧн?  
Не зная. Няма го тук.

Where is Ivan?  
I don't know. There's no sign of him.

Къде е тази книга?  
Не зная. А, это я.

Where is that book?  
I don't know. Oh, here it is.

## 5.6. Interrogative pronouns

Like other pronouns, the interrogative pronoun "who, which" expresses gender and number. Here are the forms:

<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>plural</i>
кой	коя	коѐ	кой

The neutral question word for "who" is **кой**. That is, if nothing is known of the sex of the person queried about, the masculine form **кой** is used.

Кой седи на това място?

Who (*unspecified*) is sitting in this seat?

If the sex is known, however, the appropriate form is used:

Веселин забелязва Джули и  
си казва -- Коя е тази  
хубавица?

Veselin sees Julie and says to himself,  
"Who (*feminine*) is this beauty?"

When the interrogative pronoun modifies a noun, it agrees with its noun and has the meaning "which". For example:

-- На кой фестивал?  
-- На фестивала на хумора  
и сатирата, разбира се.

"To which (*masculine*) festival?"  
"To the festival of humor  
and satire, of course."

## 5.7. Motion verbs

The basic verbs for "come" and "go" in Bulgarian are

	<i>imperfective</i>	<i>perfective</i>
come	идв-ам	дойд-а
go	отив-ам	отид-а

## Пети урок / Lesson 5

Both verbs carry within them the meaning of directedness; that is, of someone coming or going *towards* a particular end-point (even if that end-point is not explicitly specified). The idea of directedness is reinforced by the presence of *от*- and *до*- in certain of these verbs. The similarity to the prepositions meaning "from" and "to" can help remind the student of the "directed" meaning of these verbs.

By contrast, the verb **вървя** (which, with rare exceptions, exists only in the imperfective aspect) implies the absence of any direction. For this reason, it is usually translated "walk". It can also, however, be translated "go", "come", "move", or any of a number of verbs signifying locomotion. The primary difference between **вървя** and the other verbs is the factor of directedness. For example:

### идвам

Ангел стои в коридора.  
Идва един висок човек.

Angel is standing in the corridor.  
A tall man comes [towards him].

### отивам

-- За къде пътувате?  
-- Отивам в Габрово, на фестивала.

"Where are you headed for?"  
"I'm going to Gabrovo,  
to the festival."

### вървя

Веселин върви по коридора.  
Влакът върви много бавно.

Veselin walks down the corridor.  
The train is going very slowly.

In the first two sets of examples, an end-point of the movement is either implied or stated directly. Those in the last set, however, explicitly avoid mention of an end-point.

## 5.8. Double interrogatives

Normally, questions have either a question word or the question particle **ли**. When a question has both of these, the meaning "I wonder..." is added.

Какъв ли е този човек?

I wonder what kind of a man this is?

## 5.9. Prepositions

(a) Both **в** and **на** can mean "to". While many of the specific differences are idiomatic, there is a tendency for **в** to refer to specific physical locations which one can enter, while **на** is more likely to refer to abstract ideas, events, general locales, or

## Пети урок / Lesson 5

places conceived of as surfaces rather than enclosures. Consider the following examples:

Отивам I'm going	в Габрово, to Gabrovo, <i>[a city one can enter]</i>	на фестивала. to the festival. <i>[an event]</i>
Сложй ги Put them down	на пода. on the floor. <i>[onto a surface]</i>	А не, не в коридора. Ah, no, not in the corridor. <i>[within the enclosure of a space]</i>

The student is advised to watch the usage of **в** and **на**, and learn examples idiomatically until s/he gets a feel for it.

The preposition **на** can also mean possession. For example, the first **на** in the following sentence means "to", while the second **на** signifies possession:

Отивам на фестивала на хумора и сатирата, разбира се.	I'm going to the festival of humor and satire, of course.
--	--

(b) The basic meaning of **по** is "along, down". For example:

Веселин иска да продължи по коридора, но в този момент....	Veselin intends to continue down the corridor, but at that instant...
---	--

**По** also has many other meanings, however. One of these is "according to, of, in the manner of". For example:

Искам да ги посрещна по български.	I want to entertain them in the Bulgarian manner. <i>[à la bulgare]</i>
учебник по български	a Bulgarian textbook <i>[textbook of the Bulgarian language]</i>
преподавател по български	Bulgarian teacher <i>[a teacher who teaches Bulgarian]</i>

## EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate personal endings.

1. И́скам да наме́р\_\_\_\_\_ ша́пката на Андре́й.
2. И́скам и Та́ня да ви́д\_\_\_\_\_ ша́пката на Андре́й.
3. Мо́ля, иде́те да посре́щн\_\_\_\_\_ Джу́ли на га́рата.
4. Съве́твам А́нгел да слу́ш\_\_\_\_\_ какво́ ка́звате.
5. Седни́! И́скаш ли а́з да свар\_\_\_\_\_ едно кафе́?
6. Не мо́га да разбер\_\_\_\_\_ какво́ ка́зваш.
7. Джу́ли продо́лжа́ва да у́ч\_\_\_\_\_ бѐлгарски.

II. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the interrogative pronoun (ко́й, ко́я, ко́е, ко́й).

1. \_\_\_\_\_ от те́зи жени́ е конду́кторка?
2. От \_\_\_\_\_ шокола́д и́скаш да ку́пим?
3. А́з гово́ря бѐлгарски и англи́йски. На \_\_\_\_\_ ези́к и́скаш да гово́рим?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ дете́ мо́же да брои́ до сто́?
5. \_\_\_\_\_ е на телефо́на?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ кни́ги връща́ш в библиотéката?
7. \_\_\_\_\_ е та́зи непозна́та жена́?

III. Rewrite the following sentences, replacing the underlined nouns with the correct pronouns.

1. Та́ня позна́ва Ива́н добре́.
2. Дими́тър и́ска да ви́ди те́зи студéнти.
3. Джу́ли и Де́йвид не пи́ят раки́я.
4. Ко́ста не мо́же да наме́ри се́лото на ка́ртата.
5. Весели́н за съжа́ление не позна́ва та́зи хубави́ца.
6. Къде́ отива момче́то? Не ви́ждам това́ момче́.
7. Ко́й знае́ то́зи уро́к? Ко́й мо́же да ве́рне те́зи кни́ги в библиотéката?

## ADDITIONAL GRAMMAR NOTES

### 5.1a. Infinitive replacements

Sentences such as "I want them to come" are notably difficult for English speakers to translate into Bulgarian. This is partly because in such sentences the English *object* pronoun (here, "them") denotes *subject* meaning (in this case, "they" are the ones who "will come"). In a neutral meaning, the Bulgarian translation of this sentence does not use a pronoun at all. If emphasis is intended, however, the subject pronoun (in this case, *те* "they") will be used:

Искам и *те* да дойдат.

I want *them* to come as well.

The problem is further complicated by the fact that in such sentences an English object pronoun can sometimes also correspond to a Bulgarian object pronoun:

Аз	<i>те</i> 2sg object	съветвам	да дойдеш. 2sg verb	I advise you to come.
----	-------------------------	----------	------------------------	-----------------------

Искам	<i>ти</i> 2sg subject		да дойдеш. 2sg verb	I want <i>you</i> to come.
-------	--------------------------	--	------------------------	----------------------------

In both sentences, the subject of the verb *дойдеш* "come" is the second person singular *ти* "you". It is explicitly stated in the second sentence, but only because the meaning is emphatic. It is omitted from the first sentence because its meaning has already been introduced by the object pronoun *те* (which is the object of the verb *съветвам* "advise").

The contrast is seen more clearly when the verbs and pronouns are third person singular, where there is a more marked difference between subject and object pronouns.

Аз	<i>я</i> 3sg object	съветвам	да дойде. 3sg verb	I advise her to come.
----	------------------------	----------	-----------------------	-----------------------

Искам	<i>тя</i> 3sg subject		да дойде. 3sg verb	I want <i>her</i> to come.
-------	--------------------------	--	-----------------------	----------------------------

In order to translate these sentences correctly into Bulgarian, one must determine the relationship between the verb preceding *да* in Bulgarian and the pronoun which always appears as an English object (e.g. "her" in the English sentences above). If the verb takes a pronoun object, then the correct pronoun in Bulgarian is the object one. But if the verb takes an entire phrase as its object, then the correct pronoun in Bulgarian is the subject one. This can be represented schematically as follows:



## Пети урок / Lesson 5

Аз я съветвам да дойде.

(a)	I advise	her
(b)		she

[is] to come

Искам тя да дойде.

(a)	I want	
(b)		she

[is] to come

Each of these sentences can be broken down into two components, which are represented above as (a) and (b). The (a) portion of each sentence is what comes before the *да*, and the (b) portion is what comes after it. In the first example, the "she" of part (b) simply disappears into the "her" of part (a). In the second example, however, the "she" of part (b) must move up into part (a). In English it turns into an object when it moves up, but in Bulgarian it remains a subject.

### 5.4a. Object pronouns and word order

Word order rules involving verbal clitics are quite complex in Bulgarian, and for this reason they will be learned gradually. Since clitics are unaccented, they are spoken quickly and are often hard to hear. Special care must be taken, therefore, to learn the rules governing their placement.

To help the student become aware of these rules, examples will be given using a notation developed for this purpose. All rules learned in this book are given according to this notational format, together with a full list of abbreviations used, in Lesson 15. Within lessons, word order rules are explained and illustrated with examples in which the relevant words are identified notationally. Sentences are given either in complete form, or with sufficient grammar to illustrate the context; only the portion of each sentence relevant to the word order rule being learned, however, is specifically analyzed.

According to this notational analysis, abbreviations identifying clitics are written entirely in capital letters, those identifying fully-accented words (upon which clitics can depend) are written entirely in lower-case letters, and those identifying conjunctions which are unstressed but which may begin a sentence (and therefore are not clitics) are written with a capital letter. The following examples illustrate this notation.

- (1) 

Иска	да	го	пита
<i>verb</i>	<i>Cnj.</i>	<i>DIR</i>	<i>verb</i>

 но...

He wants to ask him but...

- (2) 

Гледам	ви	и	се	чудя.
<i>verb</i>	<i>DIR</i>	<i>Cnj.</i>	<i>DIR</i>	<i>verb</i>

I look at you and am amazed.

### Placement of object pronouns

The basic rule is that a pronoun verbal object must be directly adjacent to the verb it depends on, and that it must follow at least one accented word.

- (3) 

А́нгел	го	гле́да
<i>subj.</i>	<i>DIR</i>	<i>verb</i>

 и ми́сли.

Angel looks at him and thinks.

- (4) 

Сложи́	ги
<i>verb</i>	<i>DIR</i>

 на по́да.

Put them on the floor.

### Conjunctions and negation

The conjunction **да** occupies a special position in this schema: it has no accent of its own, but it is not a clitic. This means that it (like other conjunctions) can function as an accented word for purposes of clitic placement. The word order of **да**-phrases is very rigid: the verb must follow **да** directly unless the verb has a pronoun object. In this case the pronoun object *must* come directly between **да** and the verb. Example (1) above illustrates this rule.

For word order purposes, the negative particle **не** acts like the conjunction **да**, requiring clitics to follow it directly. Remember that a clitic following the negative particle is accented.

- (5) А́нгел 

не	го́	гле́да.
<i>Neg.</i>	<i>DIR</i>	<i>verb</i>

Angel does not look at him.

- (6) 

Не	ги́	сла́гай
<i>Neg.</i>	<i>DIR</i>	<i>verb</i>

 на по́да.

Don't put them on the floor!

### The question particle

In a neutral question, the interrogative particle **ли** always follows the verb, and must come between the verb and any pronoun object. (It follows from this that clitics can never precede the verb in this type of question.) If both negative and interrogative particles are present, the pronoun object comes between them.

- (7) А́нгел 

гле́да	ли	го́?
<i>verb</i>	<i>INT</i>	<i>DIR</i>

Is Angel looking at him?

- (8) 

Сла́гаш	ли	ги
<i>verb</i>	<i>INT</i>	<i>DIR</i>

 на по́да?

Are you putting them on the floor?

- (9) 

Не	ги́	ли	сла́гаш
<i>Neg.</i>	<i>DIR</i>	<i>INT</i>	<i>verb</i>

 на по́да?

Aren't you putting them on the floor?

### 5.4b. Predicates and word order

When present tense forms of the verb **сѣм** are used to connect a subject and a predicate noun or adjective, they function as the copula of the sentence. These copula forms are clitics, and follow rules very similar to those formulated above for object pronouns. They cannot stand in initial position, they always occur adjacent to the predicate noun or adjective, and they must follow the negative or interrogative particle directly.

When both negative and interrogative particles are present, the copula is placed between them. This is the only time when the copula does not occur directly adjacent to the predicate noun or adjective. Here are examples, with numbering consecutive across lessons:

- |      |                  |             |            |                        |
|------|------------------|-------------|------------|------------------------|
| (10) | Тѣжки            | са.         |            |                        |
|      | <i>predicate</i> | <i>COP</i>  |            |                        |
|      |                  |             |            | They're heavy.         |
| (11) | Не,              | не          | са         | тѣжки.                 |
|      |                  | <i>Neg.</i> | <i>COP</i> | <i>predicate</i>       |
|      |                  |             |            | No, they're not heavy. |
| (12) | Тѣжки            | ли          | са?        |                        |
|      | <i>predicate</i> | <i>INT</i>  | <i>COP</i> |                        |
|      |                  |             |            | Are they heavy?        |
| (13) | Не               | са          | ли         | тѣжки?                 |
|      | <i>Neg.</i>      | <i>COP</i>  | <i>INT</i> | <i>predicate</i>       |
|      |                  |             |            | Aren't they heavy?     |

All of the above word order patterns will be drilled in later lessons.

### 5.7a. Motion verbs

The **от-** and the **до-** in the motion verbs **оти́вам**, **оти́да** and **до́йда** are called prefixes. Prefixes are similar to, but not identical with, prepositions; this relationship will be discussed later. All four directional motion verbs contain the same root, **-ид-**, although its form is slightly obscured in **оти́вам** (compare **и́двам**, where the **-д-** has been retained before the suffix **-вам**) and in **до́йда** (where the **-и-** has shifted to **-й-**).

This bare root is found in the verb **и́да**, which can be used in place of **оти́да**. There is no essential difference in meaning. **И́да** is especially frequent in the imperative:

Иди́ в магази́на!      Go to the store!

The imperative form of **до́йда** is a Greek borrowing, completely unrelated to it in form. The imperative of **и́двам** is regular, however.

<i>indicative</i>	<i>imperative</i>	
	<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>
дойда	елá	елáте
идвам	не идвай	не идвайте

Bulgarians use *идвам* and *дойда* as any other aspect pair. Bulgarian dictionaries, however, list them as two separate verbs. Officially, the imperfective of *дойда* is the rarely used *дохóждам*.

### 5.10. Contrastive negation

When it negates a verb, the negative particle *не* is unstressed. When it is used contrastively, to negate another part of speech or when standing alone, it bears accent. For example:

А *не́*, *не́* в коридóра.

-- Дeтéто гoвóри ли?

-- *О́ще не́*.

Oh no, not in the corridor.

"Does the child talk?"

"Not yet."



Professor Stayko Kabasanov with traditional Rhodope bagpipe player and singer

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

1. Той иска да четё книги. Той иска да прочетё тази книга.
2. Обикновёно слáгам книгите в чáнтата. Сегá не íскам да ги слóжа в чáнтата.
3. Лиляна пíше (едно) писмó. Íска да го напише.
4. -- Отíвам с Веселíн на кíно. Елá и тí!  
-- Íскам да дóйда, но не мóга.
5. -- Идí за хляб.  
-- Не зная къдé е магазíнът.  
-- И аз идвам тогáва.
6. Задúшно е, отвáрям вратáта. Тáня я затвáря.
7. Бóб е бóлен. Слáгам го да лéгне.
8. Тí ме пíташ кáк се кáзвам.
9. Аз те виждам оттúка.
10. Той вíнаги кáзва íстината.
11. Бóйко обíча децáта. И Бóб ги обíча.



Ruins of Byzantine basilica, Nesebăr

## SENTENCES FOR TRANSLATION

1. Look, here comes Lilyana! Do you see her? Why is she walking so slowly?
2. Don't you want to come to the movies today? Let's go! Ivan is at the theater already, and he wants us to meet him there.
3. The Bulgarian teacher advises you to go to the library often. She wants you to go there now. She wants us to study these lessons well. Of course, we also want to know them.
4. I need this book. Are you reading it? If you are not reading it, please put it on the table. Then I can read it. Or do you want me to return it to the library?
5. We are going to the station now. Milena is coming from Gabrovo and we want to meet her. Do you want to come too? Come on, let's go!
6. Who is calling? Do you want to speak with Tanya? She can't come to the phone right now. She is with the children. She is putting them to bed.
7. Which book do you advise me to read? I don't want to read a textbook, I want to read a novel. Which Bulgarian novels are good? Can you read them?
8. "Ivo can't open the window, he is [too] small. Can you open it, please?"  
"Which window do you want me to open? But then let's close the door. Can you close it, please?"

## READING SELECTION

### Кореспонденция - (4)

31 август, Сѳия

Драга Патриша,

Имам една радостна новина, бързам да я съобщя. Седя днес в кухнята и четя. Изведнъж звънецът звъни. Ставам, отварям вратата и какво виждам? Едно непознато момиче. Откъде идва? От пощата! Носи съобщение за колет. От Америка! Вземам чантата и тръгвам за пощата.

Много благодаря за учебника, Патриша! Той идва съвсем навреме. Подготовката върви идеално. Изпитът, казват, не е много труден. Пиши от какво имаш нужда? Аз мога ли с нещо да се реванширам?

Целувам те,

Калина

14 септември, Сан Франциско

Драга Калина,

Значи учебникът е вече в Сѳия. Радвам се. Успех на изпита! Ние сме добре. Емили тръгва отново на училище. Боб работи, а Майкъл играе с децата на съседите.

Скоро Боб има рожден ден. Винаги идват на гости приятели. Искаме да дойдат и този път. Имам една страхотна идея. Искам да ги посрещнем екзотично, по български. Имаме българска народна музика. Тука в магазините има българско вино. Мога да сготвя български гозби. Какво ме съветваш да сготвя? Искам нещо типично, ефектно, но не много сложно.

Пиши!

Патриша

## GLOSSARY

август	August	иди за хляб!	go buy some bread
апарат	apparatus, equipment	изведнѣж	suddenly
аха	aha	извинявам / извиня	pardon, excuse
библиотека	library	изпийвам / изпия изпит	drink up exam, test
в този момент	then, at that point in time	искам	want
ви	you ( <i>object pronoun</i> )	какво работите?	what [kind of] work do you do?
видеокамера	video camera	какъв ли е той?	what's he like, I wonder?
висок	tall, high	карта	card, map
връщам / върна	return	касетофон	cassette player
гара	Station (bus, train)	кафе	coffee, cup of coffee
ги	them ( <i>object pronoun</i> )	кино	cinema, movies
го	him, it ( <i>obj. pronoun</i> )	кой, коя, кое, кои	who, which
гюзба	dish	колѣт	parcel, package
гюст	guest	кондуктор (ка)	conductor
да	( <i>subordinating conjunction</i> )	купувам / купя	buy, purchase
искам да дойда	I want to come	кухня	kitchen
не мога да дойда	I can't come	ли	( <i>question particle</i> )
до	[up] to	магазин	store
дохождам / дойда	come, arrive (5.7a)	ме	me ( <i>object pronoun</i> )
екзотичен	exotic	минавам / мина	pass
елѣ	come!	мисля	think
елегантен	elegant	момѣнт	moment
ефектен	effective	музика	music
журналист (ка)	journalist	на телефона съм	be (talking) on the phone
забелязвам / забележа (-иш)	notice, spot	навреме	on time
заедно	together	намирам / намеря	find
заповядай	help yourself!	написвам / напиша (-еш)	write, write down, finish writing
заповядвам / заповядам	command, order	народен	national, folk
затова	therefore, thus	не	( <i>contrastive negation</i> )
звънец	bell	не там	not there [but elsewhere]
звъня	ring	непознат	unknown
играя	play	нещо	something
ида	come, go	ни	us ( <i>object pronoun</i> )
идвам	come	новинѣ	[a piece of] news
идвам на гости	come/go to visit	отивам / отида	go
идеален	ideal	оттук	from here
идея	idea	още не	not yet
		по	along, down
		по	according to, in the manner of



## Пети урок / Lesson 5

подготóвка	preparation	съвсѣм наврѣме	at exactly the right moment
подготóвката върви	the preparation's coming along	съобщавам / съобщя	announce, inform
посрѣщам / посрѣщна	meet, greet, entertain	съобщѣние	announcement
преподаватѣл по бѣлгарски	teacher of Bulgarian	съобщѣние за колѣт	postal notice for a package
продължавам / продължа (-иш)	continue	съсѣд (ка)	neighbor
прочѣтам / прочѣта	read (to completion)	те	you ( <i>object pronoun</i> )
пѣлен	full	телефон	telephone
радвам се	rejoice, be happy	труден	difficult
радостен	happy, joyful	трѣгвам на училище	start school
реванширам се	make up, return a favor	урок	lesson
реванширам се с нѣщо	make [it] up by doing something	успѣх	success
рожден	birth ( <i>adj.</i> )	успѣх на изпита	good luck on the test
рожден ден	birthday	уча (-иш)	learn, teach
		училище	school
сатира	satire	фестивал	festival
сварявам / сваря	cook, boil	фотоапарат	camera
сготвям / сготвя се	cook, make oneself ( <i>object pronoun</i> )	хляб	bread
септѣмври	September	хубавица	beauty
си	to oneself ( <i>see L. 7</i> )	хумор	humor
слагам да лѣгне	put [someone] to bed	целувам / целуна	kiss
сложен	difficult, complex	чудя се	wonder
сто	[a] hundred	шипка	hat
страхóтен	horrible, dreadful, terrifying	шоколад	chocolate
страхóтна идѣя	[a] terrific idea	и	her ( <i>object pronoun</i> )
съветвам	advise		
съвсѣм	completely		



## CULTURAL COMMENTARY

### Geography: Gabrovo

Gabrovo (Габрово) is a town in north central Bulgaria. The residents of this town are known for their sense of humor, and for the jokes they tell about themselves. Most of these jokes turn on their sense of "economy", and are similar to the jokes Scotsmen tell about themselves. These jokes have become so famous that the town of Gabrovo now holds an annual week-long "festival of humor". It is a very popular tourist event, for which tickets are hard to obtain.

### Families

Bulgarians have a highly developed sense of family. Sometimes this sense of "family" extends even into public space. Some Bulgarian parents might feel it an intrusion that an adult they do not know would make decisions about their children (such as deciding the children can share a seat in the train), but others would accept it in the sense of "temporary family".

### Hospitality

Hospitality towards a guest is a central feature of Bulgarian society. Many sacrifices will be made (willingly) in service of the "guest-host" relationship.

### Forms of address: ти vs. вие

Most urban Bulgarians will address a stranger as **вие** out of politeness. Two people making each other's acquaintance will only switch to **ти** upon mutual agreement. A number of Bulgarians, however, especially those from rural environments, will either address anyone they meet in unofficial circumstances as **ти** from the very outset, or will move to **ти** extremely quickly (and without the formality of a mutual agreement).

### Postal system

Traditionally, Bulgarians have had low confidence in the mail service, considering it to be slow at best and generally untrustworthy. This is at least partly due to memories of the Communist regime, when everything that came through the mails was subject to search; in more recent years such fears have been replaced by fears of theft. The distrust of the mails is thus especially great when it comes to packages (or anything that could conceivably contain valuables).



Troyan Monastery (north-central Bulgaria)

## LESSON 6

### **DIALOGUE**

#### Къде беше досега?

Веселин: Добър ден.

Ангел: Деца, я направете място на този човек да седне. Как се казваш бе, приятел?

Веселин: Казвам се Веселин Христов.

Ангел: Аз съм Ангел, от Балчик. А това са Милена и Димитър от Варна, Таня от .... откъде си, Таня?

Таня: От София.

Ангел: А това са Джули и Дейвид от Америка.

Веселин: А вие, деца, как се казвате?

Камен: Камен.

Надка: Надка.

Веселин: На колко сте години?

Камен: Аз съм на седем години, а Надка е на пет.

Веселин: На седем години ли? Ходиш ли на училище? Знаеш ли да броиш?

Камен: Зная, разбира се. Отдавна вече. Като бях на три години питах майка...

Веселин: Преброй колко места има в купето.

Камен: Едно, две, три, четири, пет, шест, седем, осем.

Милена: А колко души сме? Пътуваме от един час само, а имаме още шест часа път. Много дълъг път!

Надка: Чичко, ти къде беше досега?

Беселин: Бах в копиюра. Пътувах прав. Гледах през прозореца.  
Надка: Мамо, кога пристигаме в Шумен? Аз съм гладна. Искам едно кебапче.

Камен: Аз искам две кебапчета.

Таня: Пристигаме в два часа. Значи, след петнайсет минути.

Камен: Значи, всичко три кебапчета.

Надка: Не! Четири!

Беселин: Позволете, госпожо, да почерпя всички в купето с по две кебапчета.  
Госпожичко Джюли, знаете ли какво е кебапче?

Джюли: Зная, но аз за съжаление съм вегетарианка.

Надка: Мамо, какво е вегетарианка?



Traditional Bulgarian pottery

**BASIC GRAMMAR****6.1. Past tense**

The simple past tense in Bulgarian is called the aorist. It corresponds to the English simple past ("I came", "you saw", "he did"). The conjugation is the same for all verbs: there is no ending in the 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> singular, and other endings contain the consonant **-х-**. These endings are:

	<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>
1 <sup>st</sup> person	-х-	-х-ме
2 <sup>nd</sup> person	-	-х-те
3 <sup>rd</sup> person	-	-х-а

Preceding these endings is the aorist tense theme vowel. For **a-conjugation** verbs, this vowel is the same as in the present tense -- either **-а-** or **-я-**.

For comparison, here are both present and aorist tense forms of the verbs **пѣтам** and **отвѣрям**. (Aorist forms of the other conjugations will be learned later.)

	<i>PRESENT</i>	<i>AORIST</i>	<i>PRESENT</i>	<i>AORIST</i>
1 <sup>st</sup> singular	пѣт-ам	пѣт-ах	отвѣр-ям	отвѣр-ях
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	пѣт-аш	пѣт-а	отвѣр-яш	отвѣр-я
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	пѣт-а	пѣт-а	отвѣр-я	отвѣр-я
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	пѣт-аме	пѣт-ахме	отвѣр-яме	отвѣр-яхме
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	пѣт-ате	пѣт-ахте	отвѣр-яте	отвѣр-яхте
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	пѣт-ат	пѣт-аха	отвѣр-ят	отвѣр-яха

The past tense conjugation of the verb **сѣм** is somewhat irregular. It is as follows:

	<i>PRESENT</i>	<i>AORIST</i>
1 <sup>st</sup> singular	сѣм	бѣх
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	си	бѣше
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	е	бѣше
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	сѣме	бѣхѣме
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	сте	бѣхѣте
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	са	бѣхѣа

The meaning corresponds to English "was" or "were" used as a simple past. The form **бе** can be used in place of **беше** with no change in meaning. For example:

Къде беше досега?  
Бях в коридора.

Бяхте ли на морето?  
Не беше много интересно.

Той бе там досега.  
Питах майка....

Where were you before?  
I was in the corridor.

Were you at the seaside?  
It wasn't very interesting.

He was there until now.  
I asked my mother....

## 6.2. Plural of neuter nouns

The plural of neuter nouns is **-a**, which appears in several different forms. If the singular ends in **-o**, then the plural usually ends in **-a**. If the singular ends in **-e**, then the plural usually ends in **-eta**. If the singular ends in **-e** preceded by **-и-**, then the plural ending is written **-я**. Neuter nouns ending in **-e** keep the accent on the same syllable in both singular and plural.

The simple ending **-a** is almost always accented, regardless of the accent in the singular. The **-e-** of the ending **-eta** is accented only if the singular ending **-e** is accented, and the ending **-я** is never accented. The definite article is **-та** (obeying the rule requiring all noun forms ending in **-a** to take a rhyming article). Here are examples:

Type <i>sg / pl</i>	singular	plural	definite plural
<b>-o / -a</b>	място езеро село	места езера села	местата езерата селата
<b>-e / -eta</b>	кебапче купе момиче момче	кебапчета купета момичета момчета	кебапчетата купетата момичетата момчетата
<b>-ие / -ия</b>	течение	течения	теченията

Plurals of all neuter nouns which cannot be predicted from the above rules will be noted in the glossary. Certain common ones are:

singular	plural
време	времена
име	имена
училище	училища
цвете	цветя

The plural ending on all adjectives continues to be -и. Therefore, adjectives modifying plural neuter nouns have the same ending as adjectives modifying all other plural nouns.

### 6.3. Numbers

The number 1 is identical with the indefinite article except that it is always accented. It changes form according to the gender of the noun counted: **едѝн** (masculine), **еднá** (feminine), **еднó** (neuter).

There are two forms for the number 2: **двá** for masculine nouns, and **двé** for feminine and neuter nouns. The remaining numbers do not change form. Here are the numbers from 3-100:

		11	единáйсет			
		12	дванáйсет	20	двáйсет	
3	трѝ	13	тринáйсет	30	трѝйсет	
4	чéтири	14	четиринáйсет	40	четѝридесет	
5	пéт	15	петнáйсет	50	петдесéт	
6	шéст	16	шестнáйсет	60	шестдесéт	
7	сéдем	17	седемнáйсет	70	седемдесéт	
8	óсем	18	осемнáйсет	80	осемдесéт	
9	дéвет	19	деветнáйсет	90	деветдесéт	
10	дéсет					100   стó

Compound numbers are formed by addition. The conjunction **и** must be both written and spoken. For example:

21	(= 20 + 1)	двáйсет и еднó
32	(= 30 + 2)	трѝйсет и двé
89	(= 80 + 9)	осемдесéт и дéвет

### 6.4. Masculine nouns after numbers

Nouns which appear after numbers are said to be "quantified". For feminine and neuter nouns, the quantified forms are exactly the same as the plural forms, but for masculine nouns the quantified form is different from the plural. Its ending is similar to that of the definite object form (-а if the article is -ѝт, and -я if the article is -ят), but with a potential accentual difference. This is because the definite article can sometimes be accented, but the quantified ending can *never* be accented.

The quantified form of masculine nouns is used after *all* numbers, after **кóлѝко** "how many", "how much" and **нѝкóлѝко** "some, several". After **мнóго** "many", however, the *plural* form is used. The chart below summarizes the non-plural forms of masculine nouns:

SINGULAR			QUANTIFIED
<i>indefinite</i>	<i>definite (subject)</i>	<i>definite (object)</i>	
мóлив	мóливът	мóлива	двá мóлива
трамвáй	трамвáят	трамвáя	двá трамвáя
грáд	грáдът	грáдá	двá грáдá
чáс	чáсът	чáсá	двá чáсá

Fleeting vowels lost in the plural are retained before the quantified ending.

<i>singular</i>	<i>quantified</i>	<i>plural</i>
прозóр-ец	прозóр-ец-а	прозóр-ц-и

The word човéк “man, person” exists only in the singular. The form дýши is used for the quantified meaning, and the form хóра for the plural meaning. Note that хóра, like all plurals ending in -а, takes a rhyming article. For example:

-- Кóлко дýши íма в купéто?	“How many people are in the compartment?”
-- Сáмо едín човéк.	“Only one person.”
Мнóго хóра пýтýват с тóзи влáк.	Many people are [traveling] on this train.
Тýка хóрата живéят добрé.	People live well here.

### 6.5. Masculine numbers

The numbers from 2 to 6 have a special form before masculine nouns referring to human beings. The nouns themselves are in the plural. For example:

едín лéкар	one doctor
двáма лéкари	two doctors
три́ма лéкари	three doctors

The masculine quantifier forms for 4, 5 and 6 are чети́рма (or чети́рма), пети́ма, шестíма. For larger quantities, the regular numbers are used. The noun remains in the plural. “Masculine” numbers are always used before the noun дýши, regardless of the sex of the persons counted.



### 6.6. Motion verbs, continued

The verb *хóдя* means “go”. It is like *отíвам* (perfective *отíда*) in that an end-point is implied. Its meaning is broader, however: it can refer to a round-trip movement, a repeated movement, or to the general idea of going somewhere without reference to any one specific trip. Here are examples:

Хóдиш ли на учíлище?  
Аз хóдя чéсто на теáтър.

Do you go to school?  
I go to the theater often.

Хóдим на Вíтоша вся́ка неде́ля.  
Ха́йде да хóдим на цíрк!

We go to Vitosha every Sunday.  
Let's go to the circus!

### 6.7. Telling time

The definite form of the noun *ча́с* “hour” is used to tell time. The subject form refers to time at the moment of speech, and the object form (which occurs only after a preposition) refers to any other time. In this usage, *часá* corresponds to the English “o'clock”, and is often abbreviated *ч*.

The definite form of *ча́с* is always accented on the article (which is always pronounced as if written [-ѣ]). The preposition *в* corresponds to English “at” in time expressions. Here are examples of both subject and object usage:

Кóлко е часѣ́т?  
В кóлко часá?

What time is it?  
At what time?

Часѣ́т е едíн.  
В едíн часá. (в 1 ч.)

It's one o'clock.  
At one o'clock.

Часѣ́т е шéст.  
В шéст часá. (в 6 ч.)

It's six o'clock.  
At six o'clock.

One can also identify the hour without the noun (as in English).

-- В кóлко часá?  
-- В двá.

“When?” [= At what time?]  
“At two.”

The prepositions *от* and *до* refer to the starting point and the ending point, respectively, of a time period, while the prepositions *след* and *преди* refer respectively to periods following or preceding a particular point in time.

То́й рабóти всéки дéн от 9 до 5.    He works daily from 9 to 5.  
Ела́ след двá часá, но педíи пéт!    Come after 2 o'clock, but before 5.

## Шести урок / Lesson 6

От колко часа́ имаш лекции́?

When do your classes start?  
[= From when do you have lectures?]

До колко часа́ имаш лекции́?

When are your classes done?  
[= Until when do you have lectures?]

Time after the hour is expressed by the conjunction **и**. To say "half past" the hour, Bulgarians use the word **половина**. For example:

Сегá е три́ и два́йсет  
Ела́ в ше́ст и полови́на!

It's 3:20.  
Come at 6:30 [at half past six].

Time before the hour is expressed by the preposition **без**:

-- Ко́лко е часа́т?  
-- Еди́найсет без два́йсет.

"What time is it?"  
"It's twenty to eleven [10:40]."

Сегá е без де́сет.  
Ела́ в три́ без петна́йсет!

It's ten of.  
Come at 2:45 [at a quarter of three].

In certain official contexts, the time is expressed using the 24-hour clock:

Вла́кът трѣ́гва в 19 часа́.

The train leaves at 7 p.m.

### 6.8. Time as duration

The indefinite form of the noun **ча́с** refers to a period of 60 minutes' duration. The form after numerals other than 1 is the quantified form. The accentual difference between the definite object form and the quantified form is very important in distinguishing these two meanings. In addition, the two different meanings of the preposition **преди** are distinguished by accent. For example:

Това́ бе́ше преди́ два́ часа́.  
Това́ бе́ше преди́ два́ ча́са.

That was before 2:00.  
That was two hours ago.

Ела́ след три́ часа́.  
Ела́ след три́ ча́са.

Come after 3:00.  
Come in three hours. [= 3 hrs. from now]

А́з ча́кам ту́ка от три́ часа́.  
А́з ча́кам ту́ка [от] три́ ча́са.

I've been waiting here since 3:00.  
I've been waiting here for three hours.

When the English preposition "for" refers to immediately past duration which extends into the present (as in the above example), it can be translated either by **от** or by the absence of a preposition altogether. The student must avoid using the preposition **за**

## Шести урок / Lesson 6

in this meaning. This preposition refers only to a closed sequence of time, as in the following examples:

Оті́вам на морéто за двé  
сéдмици.

Обикновéно прочі́там една  
кні́га за двá дéна.

I'm going to the seacoast for two  
weeks.

I usually read a book in two days.

### 6.9. Prepositions

Following is a recapitulation of the usage of prepositions in time expressions.

<i>Preposition</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>	<i>Example</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>
в	at	в 2 часá	at 2:00
без	to, till, of	в 5 без 10	at 10 to 5 (4:50)
на	...old	на 10 годі́ни	10 years old
от	from	от 9 до 5	from 9 to 5
	since, for	от 7 годі́ни	for 7 years
до	to, until	от 9 до 5	from 9 to 5
	up to, until	до преди 3 годі́ни	until 3 years ago
преди́	before	преди́ 6 часá	before 6:00
преди	ago	преди 3 годі́ни	3 years ago
след	after	след 10 часá	after 10:00
	in	след 10 мину́ти	in 10 minutes
за	in	за 2 дéна	[with]in 2 days
	for	за 2 сéдмици	for 2 weeks

Remember that *преди́* in the meaning "before" carries stress, to differentiate it from *преди* in the meaning "ago", which is unstressed.

## EXERCISES

I. Rewrite the following sentences in the past tense, replacing **всеки ден**, **често** or **днес** with **вчера**.

1. Всеки ден ти гледаш телевизия от 1 до 2.
2. Днес времето не е хубаво.
3. Ние питаме всеки ден за новини от България.
4. Днес вие пътувате с друг влак.
5. Те карат кола всеки ден.
6. Аз често сънувам кошмари.
7. Ние сме вкъщи, а те не са.

II. Write the numerals out in words, and fill in the blanks with the appropriate ending.

1. В чантата има 1 ябълк\_\_\_\_, 2 молив\_\_\_\_, и 5 книг\_\_\_\_.
2. Тяня има 2 съседк\_\_\_\_, а познава само една.
3. Той купува 2 вестник\_\_\_\_ всеки ден.
4. Има 3 празни куп\_\_\_\_ в този вагон, а 2 лекар\_\_\_\_ стоят в коридора и пушат.
5. В няколко сел\_\_\_\_ има само 1 училищ\_\_\_\_ и 1 болниц\_\_\_\_, а в други сел\_\_\_\_ има по 2 училищ\_\_\_\_ и 2 болниц\_\_\_\_.
6. Ангел има 32 зъб\_\_\_\_ а Веселин само 26.
7. Всеки ден 48 трамва\_\_\_\_ минават по моста.

III. Place the proper accent mark on the word **часа** in each of the following.

1. Аз работя до 2 часа. Ела в 3 часа ако искаш да ме видиш.
2. Сега е 4 часа. Ела в 6 часа, значи след 2 часа.
3. Много е късно! Чакам те вече 3 часа!
4. Колко часа работиш днес? В колко часа искаш да дойда?
5. Той кара кола вече 4 часа.
6. Училище започва в 7 часа и свършва в 12 часа.
7. Ресторантите не работят след 11 часа.

## ADDITIONAL GRAMMAR NOTES

### 6.1a. Word order and the past tense of **сѣм**

The verb **сѣм** is a copula, joining a subject and a predicate noun or adjective. In the present tense, **сѣм** is also a clitic, and can therefore never begin a sentence. The past tense copula is not a clitic, however. It is a fully stressed verb, and can occur in any position in the sentence. For example:

Вакáнцията бѣше хубава.  
Бѣше хубаво на морѣто.

[Our] vacation was good.  
It was very nice at the seashore.

### 6.2a. Plural of neuter nouns

Neuter nouns in -o usually shift the stress to the ending in the plural. If the noun in question contains an alternating root vowel, this causes the -я- to shift to -е- (because the -е- *always* appears when the vowel is unstressed, regardless of the vowel in the following syllable). Examples:

<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>
мѣст-о	мѣст-а́
млѣк-о	млѣк-а́

In the capital city of Sofia, one often hears the singular forms **мѣсто́** and **млѣко́**. These are now accepted as alternate pronunciations.

The word **нѣщо** is both a pronoun meaning "something" and a noun meaning "thing". Only the noun has a plural: **нѣща́** means "things".

### 6.3a. Numbers

Students who know Russian should take care to remember that **двѣ** is used *only* with masculine nouns, and **двѣ** with both feminine *and* neuter nouns. When counting or naming something by number, one uses the neuter forms:

едно́, двѣ́, три́...

№ 1 [но́мер едно́], № 2 [но́мер двѣ́], № 3 [но́мер три́]...

Numbers for the teens (11 - 19) are formed with the suffix -на́йсѣт. Numbers for four of the decades (20, 30, 40 and 60) are formed with the suffix -ѣсѣт. The historical source of these suffixes may help the student remember which is which.

## Teens (11 - 19)

The sequence -найсет is historically a contraction of на + десет. The number дванайсет (12) therefore is "two on ten" (2+10). One can also express the teens in uncontracted fashion, e.g. единадесет, тринадесет, четринадесет, etc., but these forms are considered bookish and are encountered rarely in speech.

## Decades (20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90)

The suffix -йсет is historically a contraction of десет. The number два́йсет (20) is therefore "two tens" (2 x 10). Uncontracted forms of 20 and 30 also exist -- два́десет, три́десет, as do contracted forms of the numbers 40 and 60 -- чети́рийсет and ше́йсет. All are used frequently, although the contracted forms are more common in speech, and the uncontracted ones more common in writing. Indeed, for the numbers 50, 70, 80 and 90, only the uncontracted forms are used.

The accent is on the first part of the number in 20, 30, 40, but on the end in the remaining forms. Care must be taken to remember to write the middle -т in петдесет and деведесет, since it is not heard in speech. The pronunciation of these forms is: [пѐдесѐт, дѐведесѐт].

## 6.4a. Masculine nouns, review

A masculine noun has five possible forms, three in the singular (indefinite, definite subject and definite object), one non-singular form used after numerals, and even though in many nouns they look and sound alike. Their meanings are quite different. The definite object is a singular noun, while the quantified noun conveys the meaning of "a specific countable amount of more than one". Plural carries the meaning of "more than one, non-counted". For example:

quantified	plural		
		definite subject	definite object
Колко молива има в чантата?	В чантата има шест молива.	Има много молива в чантата.	There are lots of pencils in the bag.
How many pencils are in the bag?	There are six pencils in the bag.	There are several pencils in the bag.	

Another difference is that certain masculine nouns shift the accent in the ending in the definite form. In these nouns, the definite object forms and the quantified forms are distinguished by accent placement. While other forms may have end stress, the quantified form never shifts stress onto the ending. For example:

indefinite	definite subject	definite object	quantified
(един) ден	денят	деня	два́ дѐна
(един) час	часът	часа	два́ ча́са
(един) град	градът	града	два́ гра́да

**6.5a. Masculine numbers**

The numbers *двама*, *трима*, etc. are used with masculine personal nouns in both the “specifically male” and the “general category” meanings. Thus, *трима студенти* can mean either “three male students” or “three students, at least one of whom is male”. Only in the case of *души* (where no other number is possible) can *двама*, *трима*, etc., refer to nouns denoting specifically non-masculine persons.

**6.6a. Motion verbs, continued**

The following summarizes the Bulgarian motion-verb system:

Category	verbs	meaning
<i>Directional, single one-way trip</i>	отивам / отида идвам / дойда	go come
<i>Directional, unrestricted</i>	ходя	go
<i>Non-directional</i>	вървя	walk, go, move

The first two verbs (*отивам* and *идвам*) refer to a single, one-way movement in space towards a specified end-point (either explicitly mentioned or implied). The third, *ходя*, refers to movement in space towards a specific end-point without restriction as to numbers of trips. When reference is to a single trip, it implies round trip movement. The last verb in the list, *вървя*, refers to the idea of locomotion without a specified end-point.

Only the two unidirectional verbs exist in aspect pairs. The other two, *ходя* and *вървя*, are either imperfective or perfective, depending on the context.

**6.7a. Tense and time expressions**

The fact that Bulgarian uses the present tense with a broader scope of meaning than in English is particularly relevant in time expressions. If a time period which began at some clearly defined point in the past continues into the present, Bulgarians speak of it with the present tense. In such instances, English must use the progressive form of the present perfect tense in order to express this broader scope. Students must take care not to transfer English usage into Bulgarian or vice versa. For example:

Аз те чакам от три часа!  
От колко време живеете в  
Америка?

I have been expecting you for three hours!  
How long have you been living in  
America?

By contrast, both English and Bulgarian can use the present tense to denote a period which also includes the future. In English this occurs primarily with motion verbs, while in Bulgarian it can be used with other verbs as well. For example:

Чакам до три часа, а после  
тръбам.  
I'll wait until 3:00, but then I'm  
leaving.

## 6.9a. Prepositions

(a) The preposition *на* has three very distinct meanings, detailed below. Context is usually sufficient to distinguish among these meanings.

1. *possession* Това е вратата на къщата.  
This is the door of the house.
2. *direction* Отивам на фестивала.  
Чантата е на пода.  
I'm going to the festival.  
The bag is on the floor.
3. *indirect object* Направяте място на този човек!  
Поднасям кафето на гостите.  
Make space for this man.  
I'm offering the guests coffee.

Indirect object constructions will be studied in detail in the next lesson.

(b) Bulgarian, like English, often has more than one preposition in a row. In this case the object of the first preposition is the phrase including the second one.

до [преди 3 години]  
up to [3 years ago]  
почерпи с [по две ябълки]  
treat to [2 apples each]

(c) The preposition *без* means "without".

Не можем без приятели.  
We can't [live] without friends.

## 6.10. "All, every"

The pronominal adjective *всеки, всяка, всяко* means "each, every". Grammatically, it is an adjective: it changes in form to agree with the noun it refers to, and can only be used with a noun following. In form, it is noteworthy for the *я/е* alternation, and because the masculine form ends in *-и*. Its plural form is *всеки*.

The pronoun *всичко* means "all, everything". It is grammatically an adverb: it is used alone (it cannot be used with a noun following), and it has only one form in the singular. Its plural form, which means "everyone", is also *всички*. Here are examples of usage:



## Шести урок/ Lesson 6

Нали всяко дете тук обича  
сладолед?

Да, всички деца обичат  
сладолед.

Всичко хубаво!  
Значи, всичко три кебапчета.  
Искам да почерпя всички в  
купето.

Every child here likes ice cream, yes?

Yes, all children like ice cream.

All the best!  
That means three kebabs in all.  
I want to treat everyone in the  
compartment.

### 6.11. The particles *я* and *бе*

The particle *я* is frequently used before imperative forms, where it functions to soften the force of the order somewhat. In this way, the command is transformed more into an invitation or a prompt. The meaning is hard to translate exactly, and depends upon the context; often the most correct translation is to ignore the particle altogether.

**Я направете място на този човек да седне!**

Why not make a place for this man to sit down?  
How about making a place for this man to sit down?  
Make a place for this man to sit down!

In terms of word order, the particle *я* is classed with the conjunction *да* and the negative marker *не*, and follows the rules outlined in Lesson 5. It must precede the verb form directly, and any pronoun object must be placed directly between *я* and the imperative form. For example (numbering of word order examples is cumulative across lessons):

- (14) 

<i>Я</i> <i>Part.</i>	<i>направи</i> <i>verb</i>
--------------------------	-------------------------------

 място!

How about making a place?

- (15) 

<i>Я</i> <i>Part.</i>	<i>го</i> <i>DIR</i>	<i>сложи</i> <i>verb</i>
--------------------------	-------------------------	-----------------------------

 на пода!

Come on, put it on the floor!

The particle *бе* is used as a vocative of sorts. It adds a tone of familiarity to the conversation, indicating that the speaker feels on colloquially casual terms with the person s/he is speaking to. Formerly (and still, in rural contexts) it was used only to address men. In modern urban contexts, the use of this particle in modern urban contexts is now non-differentiated as to sex.

Как се казваш бе, приятел?

What's your name, friend?

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

1. В трамвая́ има мно́го хо́ра. Ёй, внима́вайте, бу́тате чо́века!
2. Ста́вам в ше́ст ча́са. В о́сем ча́са оти́вам на учи́лище.
3. -- На ко́лко го́дини сте?  
-- На осемна́йсет.  
-- А аз съм на деветна́йсет го́дини.
4. Рабо́тното вре́ме на магази́на е от о́сем до осемна́йсет ча́са.
5. От три́ го́дини не съ́м в Бълга́рия.
6. Мо́ля, не вдига́йте шу́м след де́сет ча́са.
7. Ела́ ту́ка след еди́н ча́с.
8. Вла́кът тръ́гва в двана́йсет без пе́т.
9. -- Ко́лко е ча́сът?  
-- Ча́сът е три́ без петна́йсет.  
-- Ча́сът е три́ и петна́йсет.
10. Не и́скаш ли да хо́дим на ки́но? Ти́ хо́диш са́мо на ле́кции!
11. Не́ вся́ка же́на рабо́ти са́мо вкъ́щи.
12. Всичко́ е гото́во.
13. Поръ́чахме са́мо десе́рт, защо́то не бяхме мно́го гла́дни.
14. То́й бе́ше за първи́ път в града́ и мно́го пъти́ пи́та за посо́ката.
15. -- Къ́де ли са снѝмките?  
-- Не зна́м. Ня́ма ги.  
-- А ту́ка гле́дахте ли?  
-- Да, Ли́ляна ве́че отва́ря то́зи шка́ф.

**SENTENCES FOR TRANSLATION**

1. How many tomatoes do you have? Do you want me to put the tomatoes into the pot?
2. Do you know where we were until now? We were looking out the window for three hours. To tell the truth, it wasn't very interesting.
3. "Did you ask Lilyana why she isn't coming today?"  
"Why do you want to know?"  
"Because she wasn't here yesterday, and I dreamed that she was in the hospital, and that three doctors were looking at her."  
"Do you often dream about doctors and hospitals?"
4. What time does Ivan come home from work? How many hours does he work each day?
5. "When do you want me to come?"  
"Come quickly! Can you come in fifteen minutes? I have many things to say. And all these things are interesting."
6. "Where are those two students?"  
"They were here ten minutes ago but I don't know where they are now."
7. We are going to the circus with three Greeks, five Turks, and six Bulgarians. And you are going to the movies with two children.
8. These children don't go to school yet. They are still very little. Boris is three years old and Marina is four. But Kamen goes to school every day: he is seven.
9. Do all students study every Sunday? Not all -- some of them go to the sea and others watch television.
10. "Did you watch television at home yesterday?"  
"No, I was in the library. I watched a video there."

**READING SELECTION**

Кореспонденция - (5)

29 септември, Сѳфия

Здравей Патриша,

За гостите можеш да сготвиш сарми. Аз ги готвя така.

Взимам листа от лоза, ориз, лук, половин килограм кайма, три лъжици олио, и подправки. Пържа лука, ориза и каймата в олиото. Слагам в средата на всеки лист по една лъжица от това, и го завивам от всички страни.

Нареждам сармите в тенджерата и ги варя половин час. Сервирам ги топли с кисело мляко. Ако не продават листа в Сан Франциско, можеш въпреки да ги консервираш. Аз вече консервирах няколко буркана и съм много доволна.

По този начин правя и сарми с кисело зеле. Мога да пълня също чушки и домати. За вегетарианци, можеш да готвиш тези гозби и без месо.

Мога да те науча да правиш и салати, ако искаш.

Сърдечни поздрави,

Калина

12 октомври, Сан Франциско

Драга Калина,

Българите, изглежда, готвят като гърците и турците. Сигурна съм, че в Сан Франциско мога да намеря консервирани лозови листа.

Боб казва, че тараторът по български е много вкусен и става бързо. Таратора правят от кисело мляко с краставица, копър, чесън, орехи и олио, нали? Питам Боб за рецептата, но той не знае точно.

Предпочитам лесни рецепти, защото работя до 6 часа и нямам много време да готвя.

Пиши как са децата.

Всичко хубаво,

Патриша

## GLOSSARY

бе	(vocative particle)	домат	tomato
без	without	досега	until now
беше	was (2sg., 3sg.)	души	people (counting form)
болница	hospital		
буркан	jar, can	единайсет	eleven
бутам	push, shove		
бърз	fast, quick	и	[with]in, for
бях	was (1sg.)	за две седмици	for two weeks
бяха	were (3pl.)	завивам / завия	turn, bend, wrap
бяхме	were (1pl.)	започвам /	begin
бяхте	were (2pl.)	започна	
		здравей	hi
		зъб	tooth
в колко часа?	at what time?		
в последно време	lately	изглежда	it seems
вагон	wagon, car	име (pl. имена)	name
ваканция	vacation		
вдигам / вдигна	raise, lift	кайма	ground meat
вдигам шум	make noise	карам	drive, ride, push
вестник	newspaper	карам кола	drive a car
вкусен	tasty, delicious	като	like, as; when
вкъщи	home, at home	като бях	when I was
внимавайте, бутате	careful, you're	кафеен, -ейна	coffee (adj.)
човек	pushing someone	кафена лъжичка	coffee spoon
внимавам	pay attention	кебапче	kebab
всеки, всяка, всяко	every	килограм	kilogram
всеки момент	any minute	кисел	sour
всеичко шест	six in all	кисело зеле	sauerkraut
		кисело мляко	yogurt
готин	prepared, ready	кучи	when
град, -ът (pl. in L. 7)	town, city	колко души сме?	how many of us are there?
гърци (sg. in L. 23)	Greeks	колко е часът?	what time is it?
два	two (masculine)	консервирам	preserve, can
двайсет	twenty	консервиран	preserved, canned
двама	two (masculine animate)	копър	dill
дванайсет	twelve	кошмар	nightmare
две	two (feminine, neuter)	краставица	cucumber
девет	nine	лекция	lecture, class
деветдесет	ninety	лесен	easy
деветнайсет	nineteen	лист (pl. листа)	leaf
ден, -ят (pl. дни, 2 дена / дения)	day	лозя	vine
десерт	dessert	лозов	grape, vine (adj.)
десет	ten	лозови листа	grape leaves
до	until (time)	лук (pl. in L. 7)	onion
добър ден	hello, good day	лъжца	spoon, spoonful
доволен	pleased, satisfied	лъжичка	teaspoon, teaspoonful

# Шести урок / Lesson 6

месó	meat	преди	ago
местá	places	през	through
минúта	minute	присти́гам /	arrive
мля́ко (pl. млека́)	milk	присти́гна	
морé	sea	прода́вам / прода́м	sell
мо́ст (pl. in L. 7)	bridge	(conj. in L. 9)	
		пъ́ля	fill
на 10 годи́ни	10 years old	пър́жа (-еш)	fry
на ко́лко сте	how old are you?	пъ́т (pl. in L. 8)	way, road
годи́ни?		пъ́т (pl. пъ́ти)	time, instance
на морéто	at the seaside		
напра́вам / напра́вя	do, make	рабо́тен	work (adj.)
наре́ждам / наредя́	set up, arrange	рабо́тно вре́ме	office hours, hours of operation
науча́вам /	teach		recipe
нау́ча (-иш)		реце́пта	
на́чин	way, manner		
неде́ля	Sunday	сарми́	stuffed cabbage or grape leaves
ня́колко	several		complete, finish
		свър́швам /	
окто́мври	October	свър́ша (-иш)	
о́лио	cooking oil	седемдесéт	seventy
о́рех	walnut	седемна́йсет	seventeen
ори́з	rice	се́дмица	week
о́сем	eight	си́гурен	sure, certain
осемдесéт	eighty	сладолéд	ice cream
осемна́йсет	eighteen	след	after
от	since (time)	след 15 мину́ти	in 15 minutes
от вси́чки страни́	from / on all sides	снíмка	photograph
от еди́н час	for an hour	ста́ва бър́зо	it goes quickly
отда́вна	long ago	странá	side
отда́вна ве́че	for a long time now	съну́вам	dream
		съну́вам кошма́ри	have nightmares
пéт	five		
пéт без де́сет	ten of five (o'clock)	тарато́р	yogurt and cucumber soup
петдесéт	fifty	теа́тър	theater
пети́ма	five (masculine animate)	телеви́зия	television
		тeнджeра	(cooking) pot
петна́йсет	fifteen	то́чен	exact, precise
пита́м за посо́ката	ask directions	то́чно	exactly
по то́зи на́чин	in this way	три́йсет	thirty
подна́сям / поднесá	present, offer, serve	три́ма	three (masculine animate)
подпра́вка	spice		thirteen
позво́лявам /	allow	трина́йсет	Turks
позво́ля		ту́рци (sg. in L. 23)	
полови́н(а)	half		
пóсле	then, next	учи́лище	school
послéден	last	(pl. учи́лища)	
посо́ка	direction		
почeрпвам /	treat someone to	хóдя	go
почeрпя́		хóдя на ки́но	go to the movies
празeн	empty	хóдя на учи́лище	go to school
пребро́явам /	count out		
пребро́я		цвeтe (pl. цвeтя́)	flower
преди́	before		

## Шести урок / Lesson 6

цирк ( <i>pl. in L. 7</i> )	circus	шест	six
час, -ът, 2 часа ( <i>pl. in L. 7</i> )	hour •	шестдесет or шейсет	sixty
чесън	garlic •	шестима	six ( <i>masculine animate</i> )
четири	four	шестнайсет	sixteen
четиринайсет	fourteen	шкаф ( <i>pl. in L. 7</i> )	cupboard
четиридесет or четирийсет	forty	шум	noise
четирима	four ( <i>masculine animate</i> )	я	( <i>imperative particle</i> )
лѣчко	uncle ( <i>affectionate</i> ) •	я направѣте място	come on, make space
чушка	pepper ( <i>vegetable</i> ) •	ябълка	apple •

## CULTURAL COMMENTARY

### Geography: Varna and Balchik

One of the main train lines in Bulgaria runs through northern Bulgaria from Varna to Sofia. Varna, on the Black Sea coast, is a major seaport and tourist center, and is the third largest city in Bulgaria. Balchik (Балчик) is a small town to the north of Varna.

### Traveling: eating in trains

Although there are restaurant cars on certain Bulgarian trains, Bulgarians tend not to patronize them. Instead, travelers either come laden with food, or buy snacks from platform vendors during scheduled stops.

### Food and drink: general; kebaches; yogurt

Bulgaria's cuisine is a generally Balkan one; its cuisine is similar to that found in Greece and Turkey. Grilled meats and stuffed vegetable dishes are favorites. In its cultural function the Bulgarian kebapche (кебапче) is roughly equivalent to the Western hamburger. The formal differences are that the ground meat is generally more spicy, and that it is formed into small sausage-shaped meatballs which are then either grilled on a skewer or fried.

Bulgarian кисело мляко (literally, "sour milk") is yogurt. Yogurt is a mainstay in Bulgarian cuisine. It is eaten alone, served with many dishes, and forms the basis of other dishes, such as the cold yogurt soup called таратор. Bulgarian yogurt is famous for its high quality; in fact the Latin name of the yogurt culture is *bacillus bulgaricus*. Yogurt can be made from cow's milk, sheep's milk, and even from the milk of the water buffalo. The latter is a rarity and therefore considered a delicacy.

### Weights and measures

Bulgarians measure weight in grams and kilograms ("kilo" for short). A pound is roughly half a kilo. Spoons are of three sizes. The largest, called лъжица, is served with meals and is roughly the size of a soup-spoon. In recipes it is equivalent to a tablespoon. The medium-sized one, called лъжичка, is served with tea or Western-style coffee, and is the size of a regular spoon. In recipes, it is equivalent to a teaspoon. The smallest, called кафѣна лъжичка, is served with Turkish or espresso coffee. Cooking heats, both in the oven and atop the stove, are "low", "medium" and "high".

## LESSON 7

### DIALOGUE

На перона в гарата

Надка: Мамо, виж, пристига ме! Ето я гарата! Ето ги кебапчетата на перона! Ето я продавачката!

Беселин: Да, сета слизам да ви купя кебапчета. Осем пътника в купето -- знайчи, шестнайсет кебапчета. А на Джъли, какво да ѝ купя? Джъли, да слезем ли да потърсим нещо? Хайде да слезем!

Миленка: Не забравяйте, че имате само десет минути. Количката с кебапчетата е в края на перона!

Димитър: Аз веднъж така купувах кебапчета, и влакът отпътува. Прекърах 5 часа на една пейка на гарата. Беше един студ...

// На перона, при количката с кебапчетата //

Беселин: Лайте ми шестнайсет кебапчета, моля.

Продавачката: С хляб или без хляб?

Джъли: Без, защото аз имам два хляба във влака.

Беселин: Имате ли нещо безмесо? Господжията е вегетарианка.

Продавачката: Ами-и... няма много. Имам само кашкавал и сирене. И плодове.

Беселин: Какво желаете, Джъли?

Джъли: Предпочитам кашкавал.

Беселин: Добре, на господжията кашкавал.

Продавачката: Ето ви, господжине, една порция кашкавал. А вие, господине, ще почакате малко за кебапчетата.

Пецата (от прозореца): Хайде, бързайте! Влакът ще тръгне!

Беселин: Качете се, Джъли. Аз ще взема кебапчетата.

Джъли: Но ако изпуснете влака...

Беселин: Не се притеснявайте, всичко е наред. Няма да изпусна влака!



**BASIC GRAMMAR****7.1. Future tense**

To form the future tense in Bulgarian, place the particle **ще** (or the phrase **няма да**) before the present tense form. The meaning of the future tense is as in English, "I will/won't + verb". Here are the affirmative and negative future conjugations of the verb **чета́**:

**FUTURE TENSE**

	<i>affirmative</i>	<i>negative</i>
<i>1<sup>st</sup> singular</i>	ще чет-а́	няма да чет-а́
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> singular</i>	ще чет-е́ш	няма да чет-е́ш
<i>3<sup>d</sup> singular</i>	ще чет-е́	няма да чет-е́
<i>1<sup>st</sup> plural</i>	ще чет-е́м	няма да чет-е́м
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> plural</i>	ще чет-е́те	няма да чет-е́те
<i>3<sup>d</sup> plural</i>	ще чет-а́т	няма да чет-а́т

The future marker (**ще** or **няма да**) does not change, but the verb following this form, which is exactly equivalent to the present tense form, must have the correct endings.

There are two different ways to form the future tense of **съм**: one can add the future markers **ще** and **няма да** either to the verb **бъда**, or to **съм** itself. Here are both possible conjugations of "to be" in the affirmative future. To form the negative future, replace **ще** with **няма да**. The variant with **бъда** is somewhat more frequently used.

**FUTURE TENSE: "to be"**

<i>1<sup>st</sup> singular</i>	ще бъд-а	ще съм
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> singular</i>	ще бъд-е́ш	ще си
<i>3<sup>d</sup> singular</i>	ще бъд-е́	ще е
<i>1<sup>st</sup> plural</i>	ще бъд-е́м	ще сме
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> plural</i>	ще бъд-е́те	ще сте
<i>3<sup>d</sup> plural</i>	ще бъд-а́т	ще са

The future tense refers to an action which has not yet occurred. Because speakers often envision such an action as a totality (i.e. as bounded), perfective verbs occur very frequently in the future tense. If the sense of boundedness is absent,

however, the imperfective is used. Note that in the second example the meaning of boundedness is present in the second verb only:

Ще почакам само 5 минути.  
Ще чакам да дойдете.

I'll wait five minutes only.  
I'll wait for you to come.

## 7.2. Indirect object pronouns

Indirect object pronouns in Bulgarian are very similar to direct object pronouns. The following gives subject, direct object, and indirect object pronouns. The grave accent mark on the 3<sup>rd</sup> person feminine form (ѝ) is an obligatory part of Bulgarian spelling; it functions to distinguish this form from the conjunction (и).

	<i>subject</i>	<i>direct object</i>	<i>indirect object</i>
1 <sup>st</sup> singular	ѝз	ме	ми
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular (reflexive)	ти	те	ти
		се	си
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular			
feminine	ѝа	я	ѝ
masculine	тоѝ	го	му
neuter	то	го	му
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	ниѝе	ни	ни
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	виѝе	ви	ви
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	те	ги	им

The reflexive indirect object form **си** is used to indicate that the action is directed back towards the subject of the sentence. For example:

Веселин забелязва Джули и  
си мисли...

Veselin notices Julie and thinks to  
himself...

Indirect object pronouns are clitics, and must obey the same word order rules as direct object pronouns: they cannot occur at the beginning of a sentence or phrase, and they must occur adjacent to the verb (or other word) on which they depend.

Ето ти, Джули.

Here you are, Julie.  
[= Here are these things *for you*.]

### 7.3. Usage of indirect objects

The meaning "indirect object" in Bulgarian is similar to that in English: it denotes a person or object affected by the verb in a way which is considered somehow less direct than that of a direct object. In English this meaning is conveyed either through word order or by the prepositions "to" or "for". When there is no preposition, the indirect object always comes before the direct object, as in

Give	the children	the kebabs.
<i>verb</i>	<i>indirect obj.</i>	<i>direct obj.</i>

The English indirect object in this sentence can also be "to the children".

In Bulgarian, by contrast, indirect objects *must* be preceded by the preposition **на**. The neutral word order is with the direct object first. The indirect object can occur first if the speaker wishes to place somewhat more emphasis on it.

Да́й	кеба́пчетата	на деца́та.	Give the children the kebabs.
<i>verb</i>	<i>direct obj.</i>	<i>indirect obj.</i>	

Да́й	на деца́та	кеба́пчетата.	Give the kebabs <i>to the children.</i>
<i>verb</i>	<i>indirect obj.</i>	<i>direct obj.</i>	

In the above examples, both the Bulgarian and the English sentences express indirect objects with a preposition. There are a number of verbs, however, which take a direct object in English but an indirect object in Bulgarian -- or, as in the example from Lesson 5 which is repeated below, which take a direct object in Bulgarian, but a prepositional phrase in English.

Помáгам	на деца́та.
<i>verb</i>	<i>indirect obj.</i>

I'm helping	the children
<i>subject + verb</i>	<i>direct obj.</i>

А́нгел	гле́да	чове́ка.
<i>subject</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>direct obj.</i>

Angel	looks	at the man.
<i>subject</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>prep.phrase</i>

The lesson of these examples is that one cannot predict the status "direct object"/"indirect object" in Bulgarian directly from the structure of the corresponding English sentence. One must simply learn which verbs in Bulgarian take direct objects and which take indirect objects.

7.4. Plural of masculine monosyllabic nouns

Most masculine nouns consisting of a single syllable (and a few which have a fleeting vowel in the second syllable) add the ending *-obe* in the plural. The accent is unpredictable and must be learned. However, the addition of the definite article in the plural does not affect the place of accent.

Accent types are illustrated below. In the majority of nouns the accent stays on the stem syllable, as in type (1). In a number of nouns, however, the accent is on the final syllable of the plural ending, as in (3), and in a few nouns it is on the first syllable of the ending, as in (2). If a noun has a plural of type (2) or (3), this will be indicated in the glossary; otherwise one should assume its plural is of type (1).

(1) stem stress	(2) initial end stress	(3) final end stress
БКѸС-ОБЕ БЛАК-ОБЕ ДѸМ-ОБЕ ПОД-ОБЕ СѸК-ОБЕ СТОД-ОБЕ ХЛАД-ОБЕ ЦѸПК-ОБЕ ШѸМ-ОБЕ	НОЖ-ОБЕ	БЕП-ОБЕ РПАД-ОБЕ ПЛОД-ОБЕ ЧЕР-ОБЕ СТУД-ОБЕ ЧАС-ОБЕ

(with article: СѸКОВЕТЕ, НОЖѸВЕТЕ, ПЛОДѸВЕТЕ, etc.)

7.5. Verbal prefixation and the aspect system

Prefixation is very frequent in Bulgarian. The addition of a prefix alters the meaning of a verb to a certain extent, but does not normally obscure the semantic relationship between it and other verbs with the same root. The ability to recognize the relationship between prefix and verbal root, therefore, can be a very valuable tool in vocabulary building. To aid in seeing this, the examples below are given with a hyphen separating the prefix from the rest of the verb. The first three examples, which exist only in the prefixed form, all refer to movement. In each instance, the prefix adds the meaning of the direction of the movement.

В	-	ЛѸЗАМ	/	В	-	ЛѸЗА
ИЗ	-	ЛѸЗАМ	/	ИЗ	-	ЛѸЗА
С	-	ЛѸЗАМ	/	С	-	ЛѸЗА

enter, come in  
 leave, go out  
 get off, get down, descend

## Седми урок / Lesson 7

Most prefixes are similar in form to prepositions. They do not always have the same meaning, however. Of the three verbs above, for instance, only in one of them (влизам) does the prefix в- have the same meaning as the preposition в.

Another set of verbs which exists only in the prefixed form expresses the general meaning "carry". Although the three prefixed verbs given below are historically related to the simplex imperfective verb нѳся, they are considered within the Bulgarian aspect system to be separate verbs from it.

до	- нѳсям	/	до	- несѳ	bring
за	- нѳсям	/	за	- несѳ	take
под	- нѳсям	/	под	- несѳ	offer, present

Although the above six verbs are very commonly used, their form is exceptional in that the non-prefixed forms do not exist as separate verbs. It is much more usual for prefixes to be added to already existing verbs. Sometimes a prefix is even added to an existing aspectual pair. For example:

	стѳвам	/	стѳна	get up, stand up
о-	стѳвам	/	о- стѳна	remain

In the majority of cases, however, prefixes are added to simplex imperfectives -- those verbs which exist only in the imperfective aspect, and which designate an activity in basic and general terms. Placing a prefix before such a verb adds the idea of boundedness, and makes it perfective. Each such verb created in this way is considered to designate a new and separate verbal meaning. Sometimes this new meaning is very different from that of the simplex imperfective, and sometimes it is only slightly different from it. Here are some examples:

<i>simplex imperfective</i>	<i>meaning</i>	<i>prefixed perfective</i>	<i>meaning</i>
четѳ	read	про-четѳ	read to the end
знѳя	know	пред-по-четѳ	prefer
белѳжа	mark	по-знѳя	guess
броѳ	count	за-белѳжа	notice
пѳя	drink	пре-броѳ	count up, count out
тѳрся	seek	из-пѳя	drink up, drain a glass
бѳрзам	be in a hurry	по-тѳрся	look specifically for
чѳкам	wait	по-бѳрзам	hurry up
прѳвя	do, make	по-чѳкам	wait for a bit
		на-прѳвя	do, make

Simplex imperfectives signify basic, general actions. They do not have perfective partners. Every perfective verb formed by prefixation, however, has its own imperfective partner. The process by which these new imperfectives are derived will be studied in more detail later.

The chart below gives the above verbs as they are listed in Bulgarian dictionaries. Simplex imperfectives stand alone, while the prefixed perfectives formed from them are listed together with their aspect partners, with the imperfective form given first:

бегежа	бегам
забелязвам / забеляжа	знам
изпивам / изпия	пий
напращам / напраща	познавам / позна
потърсвам / потърся	почакам / почака
предпочитам / предпочета	праща
предпоказвам / предпоя	прочитам / прочита
тъпча	чакам
чета	read
mark	count
	notice
	know
	drink up
	do, make (bounded)
	drink
	guess
	look for, search for
	wait for a bit
	do, make
	prefer
	count [out]
	read through to the end
	seek
	wait

## 7.6. Да-phrases, continued

The most frequent meaning of a да-phrase is as an infinitive replacement. Usually the да will connect two verbs, which may or may not have the same subject.

Искам да силя	да си кълня нещо.
Искам да силя	да ми кълнеш нещо.
Искам да силя	да си кълня нещо.
Искам да силя	да ми кълнеш нещо.

The да-phrase can also be used alone. When it refers to the idea of the action in general (and does not specify an actor), it is the grammatical subject of the sentence, and the verb is in the 2<sup>nd</sup> singular. The verb in such a да-phrase can also take other personal endings if the identity of its subject is specified. In this case, да-phrases can act grammatically either as the subject or the object of the sentence.

## Седми урок / Lesson 7

Here are examples, followed by a schematic outline of the grammar involved:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Но да познаваш кúхнята на<br>един нарóд, не é достáтъчно.      | It's not enough [just] to know the<br>cuisine of a people.    |
| 2. Добрé е да опознаéш и<br>странáта.                             | It's good to get to know the<br>country as well.              |
| 3. Мисля, че ще е хúбаво да<br>прекараме óтпyската в<br>Бългáрия. | I think it will be nice to spend our<br>vacation in Bulgaria. |
| 4. Искaм да сгóтвиш кеба́пчета.                                   | I want you to make kebabs.                                    |

<i>subject</i>	<i>predicate / verb</i>	<i>object</i>
1. да познаваш...	не é достáтъчно	
2. да опознаéш...	é добрé	
3. да прекараме...	ще е хúбаво	
4.	искaм	[ти] да сгóтвиш нéщо

When да-phrases are used in questions, an additional shade of meaning is often added, which is best translated by adding English "should". For instance:

А на Джу́ли, каквó да ѝ кúпя?	And what about Julie? What should I buy for her?
-------------------------------	---

Да слéзем ли да потърсим нéщо?	Should we get off to look for something?
-----------------------------------	---

### 7.7. Pronoun reduplication

Certain definite direct objects receive special emphasis. By a process called "pronoun reduplication", an object pronoun is added to the sentence (reduplicating the noun in question). Because this pronoun also refers to the same object as the noun, it must be of the same gender as the noun in question.

Pronoun reduplication is obligatory after the introductory particle *éto* or after the impersonal negative *няма*, and optional in other instances to be learned later. Here are examples:

Éто я гáрата!	There's the station!
Éто ги кеба́пчетата!	Here's the kebabs!
Няма го човéка.	No trace of him.

<i>noun object</i>	<i>reduplicative pronoun</i>
гáрата	я
кеба́пчета	ги
човéка	го

### 7.8. Prepositions

(a) The basic meaning of the preposition **при** is “by, near, at, in the vicinity of”. It differs from **до**, which also means “by, near”, in two ways. First, **до** can mean movement as well as location, while **при** can only mean location. Second, **до** refers to immediate proximity, while **при** refers to a more general, unspecified location.

Деца́та се́дят до Джу́ли.  
Те́ са при коли́чката с  
кеба́пчетата.

The children are sitting next to Julie.  
They are at the cart with the kebabs.

(b) The basic meaning of the preposition **през** is “through”.

То́й че́сто вли́за през прозо́реца.  
Че́сто ми́навам през града́.

He often gets in through the window.  
I pass through town often.

(c) The preposition **по** can also mean “about”, “approximately”, “around”, especially in contexts of time.

Ела́ по то́ва вре́ме, то́гава.

Come around that time, then.



Café in Shiroka Lăka, near Smolyan



## EXERCISES

I. Rewrite the following sentences replacing the underlined phrases with the appropriate pronouns.

1. Деца́та декламира́т стихотворе́ния на пъ́тниците.
2. Пъ́тниците ще пока́жат на момче́то къде́ да слéзе от вла́ка.
3. Все́ки де́н ма́йката четé на деца́та кни́гата.
4. Позволéте на чове́ка да взéме ве́стника.
5. Ле́лята купу́ва ли на деца́та шокола́д?
6. Ти ка́зваш на Джу́ли и́стината, но Джу́ли не вярва.
7. Кали́на и Бо́йко пи́шат на Бо́б и Патри́ша.

II. Put everything in the following sentences into the plural.

1. Ако си гла́ден, вземи́ кеба́пче и пло́д.
2. На ма́сата има кра́ставица, шокола́д и готва́рска кни́га.
3. Ку́чето обича ли дете́то?
4. Па́да голя́м сня́г, ду́ха си́лен вятър.
5. Мя́стото е свобóдно. Седни́!
6. В града́ живе́ят момче́ и момиче́.
7. Хля́бът е на ма́сата, а шише́то е в хлади́лника.
8. Тя но́си в ча́нтата уче́бник, мо́лив, тетра́дка и ре́чник.

III. Rewrite the sentences in the future, replacing *все́ки де́н* or *сегá* with *у́тре*.

1. Все́ки де́н взима́м трамва́я и не закъ́снявам за университе́та.
2. Сегá избира́м подаръ́к за ма́йка.
3. Ела́ дру́г път! Сегá съ́м зае́т и бързам.
4. Сегá купу́вам на деца́та по еди́н сладолéд.
5. То́й ста́ва в 7 часа́ все́ки де́н.
6. Ча́кам те все́ки де́н след ра́бота.
7. Сегá отива́ме на га́рата да посре́щнем Джу́ли и Де́йвид.
8. Все́ки де́н пребро́явам пти́ците на дърво́то.
9. Деца́та все́ки де́н изпи́ват ча́ша мля́ко, а ма́йките - ча́ша кафе́.
10. Сегá ду́ха си́лен вятър.

**ADDITIONAL GRAMMAR NOTES****7.1a. Future tense**

The verb **бъда** is used both as the future tense, and the imperative, of **съм**.

Бъди добър!  
Бъдете точни!

Be good!  
Be on time!

The future particle **ще** is unaccented. It can also occur accented; in this case it is the 3<sup>rd</sup> singular of the regular verb **ща** "want". Conjugated forms of **ща** occur most frequently after negation, and are restricted to colloquial contexts.

ще не ще

whether one wants to or not

**7.2a. Indirect object pronouns**

Indirect object pronouns follow exactly the same word order rules as those given in Lesson 5 for direct object pronouns. Recall that numbering of word order examples is cumulative across lessons. For example:

- (16) 

Купувам	ви
<i>verb</i>	<i>IND</i>

 кебапча.  
*direct obj.*

I'm buying you kebabs.

- (17) А на Джули, какво да ѝ купя?  
*indirect obj. direct obj. Conj. IND verb*

And Julie, what should I buy for her?

When a verb takes two objects and both are expressed by pronouns, the indirect object pronoun precedes the direct object pronoun. Examples of this usage will be given in Lesson 9.

**7.4a. Plural of masculine monosyllabic nouns**

Masculine monosyllables form their plural with the ending **-ове**. This ending takes the form **-еве** in nouns ending in **-ий** or in a soft consonant (those with the article form **-ят**). The stem final **-ий** drops before this ending. A few nouns with a fleeting vowel take the **-ове** plural ending, losing the fleeting vowel before it. In these nouns, a final soft consonant causes the spelling **-ьове**. Here are examples:

<i>singular indefinite</i>	<i>singular definite</i>	<i>plural</i>
ча́й	ча́ят	ча́еве
це́нтьр	це́нтьр-ът	це́нтр-ове
о́гън	о́гън-ят	о́гнь-ове
вя́тьр	вя́тьр-ът	ветр-ове́

The accent in masculine nouns can shift forward to the definite form in the singular, and to both definite and indefinite forms in the plural. For some nouns this shift happens in all possible forms, for others only in the singular or the plural. Essentially, a noun's accent pattern must be learned; it is predictable, however, that accent shifts in the plural will always occur in both definite and indefinite forms. Here are some common nouns with accentual shifts (the notation (те) means that the accentuation is the same in both indefinite and definite forms).

	<i>sing. indefinite</i>	<i>sing. definite</i>	<i>plural</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>
<i>Shift in both</i>	гра́д пло́д сня́г ча́с	градъ́т плодъ́т снегъ́т часъ́т	градо́ве (те) плодо́ве (те) снего́ве (те) часо́ве (те)	city fruit snow hour
<i>Shift in singular only</i>	вкúс ди́м шу́м	вкусъ́т димъ́т шумъ́т	вкúсове (те) ди́мове (те) шу́мове (те)	taste smoke noise
<i>Shift in plural only</i>	вя́тьр	вя́тьрът	ветро́ве (те)	wind

The plural of де́н (дни́) was learned in Lesson 6. The plurals of пъ́т, кра́й, and certain other masculine monosyllables, will be learned in Lesson 8.

### 7.5.a. Verbal prefixation and the aspect system

Almost all prefixed Bulgarian verbs are perfective, and are formed by adding a prefix to a simplex imperfective. This produces a new verb, with a new meaning. The imperfective partners of these new verbs are called "derived imperfectives", because each is derived from the corresponding perfective by one of several means, the most common of which is suffixation. All derived imperfectives belong to the a-conjugation, and most contain a characteristic suffix, such as -в- (e.g. побърз-в-ам) or -ав-/-яв- (e.g. пребро-яв-ам). The meaning of a derived imperfective is identical to that of its base perfective except for the absence of the idea of boundedness.

Bulgarian differs markedly from other Slavic languages in this respect. The fact that verbs like пра́вя, пи́ша and четá do not have perfective partners, and that the prefixed verbs напра́вя, напи́ша and прочетá are considered to be separate

verbs, each with its own imperfective partner, may mystify the student who is familiar with the aspect system of another Slavic language. The fact that it is difficult to give an English translation for **пра́ва** and **напра́вя** which would convey the difference in meaning that goes beyond that of boundedness (aspect), or to characterize a significant difference in meaning (or any at all) between the two imperfective verbs **пра́ва** and **напра́вям**, no doubt compounds the mystification for such a student.

Yet the system makes sense to Bulgarians. Aspect, after all, is nothing more than a coherent way of defining a point of view. What matters is that the system is internally consistent, and that it makes sense to the speakers whose communication system it functions to organize.

### 7.8a. Prepositions

(a) When the preposition **в** "in, into" occurs in front of a word beginning with **в-** or **ф-**, it is doubled. Although it is written **във**, it is frequently pronounced [въф]. This pronunciation of **в** can also occur before words beginning with a vowel, and before other consonants as well. In writing, however, only **във** occurs, and only when the following word begins with **в-** or **ф-**. For example:

Аз има́м два́ хля́ба **във** вла́ка.  
 Те́ живе́ят **във** Флоре́нция.

Те́ ходят че́сто **в** Ирла́ндия.  
 Ни́е живе́ем **в** Со́фия.

[въф Ирла́ндия] or [ф Ирла́ндия]  
 [въф Со́фия] or [ф Со́фия]

(b) The same is the case with the preposition **с** "with".

Със здра́ве да го но́сиш!  
 Аз ще до́йда със Саби́на.

А ти́ ще до́идеш **с** Ива́н.  
 Оби́чаш ли да пи́еш кафе́ **с** мля́ко?

[със Ива́н]  
 [със мля́ко] or [с мля́ко]

### 7.9. Derivation: adjectives in -ен, nouns in -к and in -ник

The process of forming related words from the same root is called *derivation*. In verbs, the most common instance of derivation is the formation of imperfective partners for prefixed perfectives (themselves formed from simple imperfectives by the process of prefixation). The general outlines of verbal derivation will become clear to the student as s/he learns examples of aspect pairs; the details of this system will be studied in Lessons 18 and 26.

Many different words are related by derivational processes. For instance, the suffix **-ен-** creates adjectives from noun roots, the suffix **-к-** creates feminine nouns

from various roots, and the suffix **-ник** creates masculine nouns from various roots. The stem to which the suffix is added is usually recognizably the same as in a word with a closely related meaning.

Learning to recognize individual suffixes, and the general patterns of word derivation, will help the student learn (and retain) new words much more quickly. Below are examples of each of these three very common suffixes.

### Adjectives in **-ен-**

The adjectival suffix **-ен-** is usually added to a noun stem. Sometimes the stem is identical to the noun itself, and sometimes it has been slightly transformed. The suffix is freely added to foreign words as well (rendering them thereby domestic). In many such words, even the Latin suffix “-ic” has been borrowed into Bulgarian as **-ич**, as in the last three items in the chart below.

The suffix **-ен** almost always contains a fleeting vowel. The few instances where it does not (such as **чаен**, **чаена**, derived from **чай**) will be noted specifically in glossary lists.

<i>noun</i>	<i>stem</i>	<b>+ ен</b>	<i>derived adjective</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>
свобод-а	свобод-	<b>+ ен</b>	свободен, -дна	free
сил-а	сил-	<b>+ ен</b>	силен, -лна	strong
глад	глад-	<b>+ ен</b>	гладен, -дна	hungry
народ	народ-	<b>+ ен</b>	народен, -дна	national
трамвай	трамвай-	<b>+ ен</b>	*трамваен, -йна	tram
интерес	интерес-	<b>+ ен</b>	интересен, -сна	interesting
дом	дом-аш-	<b>+ ен</b>	домашен, -шна	domestic
без мес-о	без-мес-	<b>+ ен</b>	безмésен, -сна	meatless
идил-ия	идил-ич-	<b>+ ен</b>	идиличен, -чна	idyllic
тип	тип-ич-	<b>+ ен</b>	типичен, -чна	typical
екзот-ика	екзот-ич-	<b>+ ен</b>	екзотичен, -чна	exotic

\*Note the spelling rule in **трамва-ен**, **трамвай-на**: the stem-final **-й** drops out before a following front vowel, but is retained elsewhere.

## Nouns in -к-

The suffix -к-, which is always followed by the feminine ending -а, is added to various stems. The use of this suffix to form nouns of profession or origin, such as *учителка* or *българка*, was studied in Lessons 1 and 3. These nouns, by definition, always refer to female human beings.

The suffix is also widely used to form nouns denoting objects or concepts. The stem to which the suffix is added can be provided by either a noun or a verb. In the examples below, imperfective verbs are given because the normal dictionary citation form is the imperfective. The stem from which the derived noun is formed carries no aspectual meaning within itself.

### (1) Derivations from a noun base

<i>noun</i>	<i>stem</i>	+ к >	<i>derived noun</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>
ка́рт-а	ка́рт-ич-	+ к >	ка́ртичка	postcard
къщ-а	къщ-ич-	+ к >	къщичка	little house
плóч-а	плóч-	+ к >	плóчка	tile

### (2) Derivations from a verb base

<i>verb</i>	<i>stem</i>	+ к >	<i>derived noun</i>	<i>meaning</i>
рис-у́вам	рис-ун-	+ к >	рису́нка	drawing
глы́т-вам	глы́т-	+ к >	глы́тка	swallow
почи́в-ам	почи́в-	+ к >	почи́вка	rest
греш-а́	греш-	+ к >	грешка	mistake
беле́ж-а	бележ-	+ к >	беле́жка	note

## Nouns in -ник

This suffix creates nouns denoting either persons or objects. As in the case of the suffix -к-, the stem to which it is added can be provided by either a noun or a verb. All such nouns shift the final -к to -ц before the plural ending -и. For example:

### (1) Derivations from a noun base

<i>noun</i>	<i>stem</i>	+ ник >	<i>derived noun</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>
ча́с	час-ов-	+ ник >	часо́вник, -ци	clock(s)
вой-на́	вой-	+ ник >	войни́к, -ци	soldier(s)
ча́й	чай-	+ ник >	ча́йник, -ци	teapot(s)
пѣ́т	пѣт-	+ ник >	пѣ́тник, -ци	traveler(s)

### (2) Derivations from a verb base

<i>verb</i>	<i>stem</i>	+ ник >	<i>derived noun</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>
у́ч-а *	уч-е-	+ ник >	учени́к, -ци	pupil(s)
у́ч-а *	уч-еб-	+ ник >	уче́бник, -ци	textbook(s)
реч-е́ш **	реч-	+ ник >	ре́чник, -ци	dictionary, -ies
беле́ж-а	бележ-	+ ник >	беле́жник, -ци	notebook(s)

\* The derivational process is not direct; other forms have intervened. In the case of *уче́бник*, the word itself is a borrowing from Russian.

\*\* The verb *пека́* "say" has a consonant shift similar to that of *мо́ра*: the consonant -к appears before the endings -а, -ат; and the consonant -ч appears before the other endings.

## **SAMPLE SENTENCES**

1. Всяка сѣдмица ще тѣрся в библиотѣката интересни кнѣги.
2. Ще потѣрся ўтре в библиотѣката интересни кнѣги.
3. Ще чакам да дойдете.
4. Ще почакам пѣт минути и трѣгвам.
5. Ще купувам мляко и хляб всеки дѣн.
6. Ўтре ще кўпя мляко и хляб.
7. Чѣсто го виждам в Университѣта.
8. Ще го видя в Университѣта.
9. Той чѣсто влиза вкѣщи през прозореца.
10. Днѣс той нѣма ключ и мѣже да влѣзе вкѣщи само през прозореца.
11. -- Слизате ли на другата спѣрка?  
-- Нѣ. Ще ви направя място да слѣзете.
12. Тя четѣ бѣрзо. За два дни прочѣта една кнѣга.
13. -- Зная, че обѣчаш шоколад.  
-- Не обѣчам.  
-- Обѣчаш, обѣчаш, познавам по очѣте!  
-- Познай тогѣва каквѣ ще направя сегѣ!
14. Камен мѣже да броѣ до десет. Камен преброѣва пѣтниците. Надка не мѣже да ги преброѣ.
15. -- Бѣрзам за учѣлище.  
-- Побѣрзай да не закѣснѣеш за учѣлище.



## SENTENCES FOR TRANSLATION

1. "How will we get in? We don't have keys! "  
"You will help the children to get in through the window. They are small, and can get in but you can't."
2. Please tell the waiter to bring us tomatoes, cucumbers, bread and cheese. And knives and spoons, of course.
3. Come over tomorrow and bring the textbook. I want to show Julie several things.
4. How many loaves of bread [= breads] do you have? Everyone is very hungry. They will also want fruits and vegetables.
5. Here is the station, we'll get off here. Then we'll go into the station and buy two bottles of rakia and three pieces of fruit [= fruits].
6. "Do you travel a lot?"  
"Yes, I go to many villages and cities. Next year I will go to three cities and two villages. After that I will go to the seashore on vacation."
7. Please bring me notebooks, dictionaries, textbooks and pencils. I am going to study for hours and hours. I will be very busy, and won't be able to talk on the telephone.
8. Ivan is telling me that unfortunately he will not be able to come to the movies today. He will write poems for several hours. He wants to finish five new poems. Then he will recite them to the children.
9. How many children will begin school tomorrow? Seven girls and eight boys. The teacher will show them many books and pictures and will help them learn to read and write. Will they make many mistakes? Of course, everyone makes mistakes. Will they be able to read this book [through]? They will not be able to read it immediately, but they will continue to work. Then success will come.

## READING SELECTION

### Кореспонденция - (6)

20 октомври, Сян Франциско

Здравей Бойко,

Патриша много харесва таратора, защото тя обича всички плодове и зеленчуци. Ще купим българска готварска книга. Тук има богат избор от готварски книги. Патриша има цяла колекция. Аз често ѝ купувам готварски книги за подарък. Но да познаваш само кухнята на един народ, не е достатъчно. Добре е да опознаеш и страната. Започвам да мисля, че ще е хубаво догодина да прекараме отпуска в България. Ние обикновено прекарваме отпуска в Америка. Догодина обаче очаквам да имам повече време. Патриша и Калина вече са приятелки. И децата ще намерят общ език. Какво ще кажеш? Какъв план ще направим? Искam пътуването да бъде интересно и за децата.

Пиши ми как сте! Ние сме добре.

Чакам отговор.

Сърдечни поздрави,

Роберт

3 ноември, София

Драги Боб,

Чудесен е планът да дойдете в България на почивка. Очакваме да ви видим тук в София. Опиши ми вкусовете на Патриша и децата. Какво обичат те да гледат? Архитектурата на градове и села или природата? България е малка страна, но със стара история и интересна природа. Има места по вкуса на всеки човек. А как обичате да пътувате? Обичате ли да пътувате с влак?

Днес е неделя. Иво е с други ученици от класа на Витоша. Времето не е много хубаво, но те са млади и могат да издържат ветрове и снеговé. Яна рисува. Калина търси нови думи в речниците: изпитът по английски е скоро.

Поздрави на Патриша и децата.

Всичко хубаво,

Бойко

# GLOSSARY

ами	but, well	и	[to] her ( <i>indirect object</i> )
архитектура	architecture	идилия	idyll
безмѣсен	vegetarian ( <i>adj.</i> ) : without meat	избор	selection, choice
белѣжа (-иш)	mark	издържам /	stand, endure
белѣжка	note	издържѣ (-иш)	drop, let go; miss
белѣжник	notebook, notepad	изпускам /	[to] them
богат	rich	изпущна	( <i>indirect object</i> )
бѣда	be	им	interest
веднѣж	once	интерѣс	history
ветровѣ <i>see</i> вѣтр	[to] you ( <i>pl. indirect object</i> )	история	what do you think?
ви	taste	какво ще кажеш?	carry up, take up
вкус, -ѣт	war	качам /	ascend, get on
войнѣ	soldier	кача (-иш)	class, grade in school
войник	in	качам се /	key
във - в	believe	кача се (-иш)	collection
вярвам	wind	клас, -ѣт	pushcart
вѣтр ( <i>pl. ветровѣ</i> )	hunger	( <i>pl. класовѣ</i> )	end
глад	swallow	ключ	cuisine
глѣтвам / глѣтна	cooking, culinary	колѣкция	little house
готварски	cookbook	количка	table
готварска книга	city	край	[to] me ( <i>indirect object</i> )
град, -ѣт ( <i>pl. градовѣ</i> )	sin, err	кухня	young
грешѣ (-иш)	declaim, recite	къщичка	[to] him, it ( <i>ind. object</i> )
декламирам	next year	мѣса	for, to ( <i>indirect object</i> )
догодина	home, house	ми	at the next stop
дом, -ѣт ( <i>pl. домовѣ</i> )	home ( <i>adj.</i> )	млад	in order, O.K.
домашен	bring	му	people, folk
донѣсям / донесѣ	enough	на	[to] us ( <i>indirect object</i> )
достѣтъчен	next	на дръгата спѣрка	new
друг	word	нарѣд	knife
дума	tree	народ	won't ( <i>negative future</i> )
дърво ( <i>pl. дървѣта</i> )	exotica, exoticism	пи	however
екзотика	wish, desire	нов	general, common
желѣя	forget	нож ( <i>pl. ножовѣ</i> )	fire
забравям / забравѣя	busy, occupied	няма да	describe
заѣт	be late	обаѣе	recognize, get to
закъснѣвам /	carry, take to	общ	know
закъснѣя	vegetable	огън ( <i>pl. огньоѣе</i> )	from the same school
занѣсям / занесѣ		опѣсвам /	class
зеленчук		опѣша (-еш)	
		опознѣвам /	
		опознѣя	
		от класѣ	

отговор	answer	си	он	to oneself
отпътувам	set off for, depart	сирене	слизам / слиза	get off, go down,
очаквам	await, expect			snow
падам / падна	fall	чият, черти	(pl. чертове)	juice
пада голям чият	it's snowing heavily	сок		bus or tram stop
перон	[railway] platform	спирка		old
плод (pl. плодове)	fruit	стап		country
по	tile, slab	стыд, -ът	(pl. стыдове)	cold, chill
по това време	about that time			with
погръзвам / погръзва	hurry up	със = с		notebook
поглед	more	тетрадка		[to] you (indirect object)
познаям / познай	know; guess	тип		type
познавам по очите	tell by [someone's]	трамваен		tram (adj.)
показвам / покажи (-еши)	show	тъпса		seek, look for
помогам / помогна	help	университет		university
потърсявам / потърся	portion, serving	ученик		student, pupil
почакавам / почакам	wait	ученичка		student, pupil (female)
прекарвам / прекарам	spend	харесвам		like (see L. 12)
припада	at, by	център		center
припознавам се / припозна	nature	(pl. центрове)		whole, entire
припознавам се / припозна	worry	цял, цели		tea (adj.)
продавач (ка)	salesperson	чаден, чадена		tea
птица	bird	чай (pl. чаеове)		teapot
пътник	traveler	чайник		hour
пътуване	travels, trip	час, -ът		watch, clock
печник	say, utter	часовник		want
печник	dictionary			will (future participle)
свобода	freedom	ше		whether one wants or not
се	oneself, themselves,	ше не ше		
	itself, etc.			

## **CULTURAL COMMENTARY**

### **Food and drink: cheese and bread**

Domestic cheese in Bulgaria is of two types. One is white and soft, and the other is yellow and hard. The white soft cheese, called “sirene” (сирене) is known in the West as “feta”; and the harder yellow cheese has begun to be imported under its own name, “kashkaval” (кашкавал). Both are known throughout the Balkans. “Sirene” can be made from either cow’s milk or sheep’s milk (or a combination of the two). The preferred kind is that made from sheep’s milk. Other cheeses are imported into Bulgaria from Western Europe, and are known under their Western names. They remain a specialty item for most Bulgarians, however, and one too expensive to indulge in often.

Like many other Europeans, Bulgarians eat bread with every meal. “Fast-food” kebabs are served with a thick slice of bread.

### **History**

Bulgaria’s history is extremely old: the first state was founded in 681. Bulgarian culture flourished during the medieval period, up to the time of the Ottoman conquest in the 14th century. The modern Bulgarian state won its freedom in 1878. Bulgarian history will be outlined in greater detail in Lesson 20.

### **Geography: general**

Bulgaria’s landscape is surprisingly varied for its relatively small size. It contains several different ranges of tall mountains, most of the long basin of the Danube (Дунав) river (though not the delta area near its mouth) and a long coastal section along the Black Sea (Чёрно морé).

### **School system: student life**

The terminological difference between pre-university schooling and university education extends to the words for “student”. To a Bulgarian, the word студент means only university level. Any student below that level is referred to as an ученик / ученичка. There is no direct equivalent in English: the slightly archaic “pupil” and the more common “schoolchild” usually refer only to the elementary grades. Those enrolled in Bulgarian schools are called ученик / ученичка through the end of high school.

As in other countries, schoolchildren go with their classmates on recreational field trips. A favorite field trip of Sofia schools is to Vitosha, in all seasons of the year.



## LESSON 8

### **DIALOGUE**

#### Влакът е готов да тръгне

// Влакът ще тръгне всеки момент, а Веселин още стои на перона. Плаща на продавачката и взема кебапчетата. Ще успее ли да се качи навреме? //

Продавачката: Побързайте, господине! Ще изпуснете влака!

Веселин: Няма да го изпусна! Довиждане.

// Веселин тича и се качва в последния вагон. Помогат му двама мъже. //

Веселин: Благодаря! Къде съм? В кой вагон?

Владимир: В двайсет и четвърти. Това е последният вагон на влака. Кой вагон търсите?

Веселин: Осемнайсети.

Георги: Седнете, починете си малко! Поемете си дъх!

Веселин: Не мога. Ще изстинат кебапчетата. Деца́та ча́кат.

Георги: Млад сте за баща! Колко деца́ имате? Виждам, че имате много кебапчета!

Веселин: Амй... деца́та не са мо́и. Но са мно́го сла́дки. И гла́дни! А кебапчетата са и за дру́ги пъ́тници в купе́то.

Георги: Бързайте тогава. Гла́дни деца́ не мо́гат дъ́лго да ча́кат. Мо́ите деца́, напри́мер, изо́бщо не мо́гат да ча́кат. Ха́йде! Вла́до, помо́гни му!

Владимир: Няма ли някой да седне на моето място?

Георги: Не се притеснявай, аз ще го па́зя. Няма да го отстъ́пя на ни́кого. Изпра́ти́ чове́ка!

Владимир: Добре, ще го изпра́тя. Ще му помо́гна да занесе́ кебапчетата на гла́дните деца́. Няма да изсти́нат кебапчетата.

## BASIC GRAMMAR

## 8.1. Long adjective forms

The masculine form of most adjectives ends in a consonant (e.g. голям, хубав, добър, млад). The masculine form of certain adjectives, however, ends in the vowel -и. Among these are ordinal numbers ("first", "second", etc.), all adjectives ending in -ски, and the pronominal adjective всеки "each, every".

Cardinal numbers beyond 2 are unchanging in form. Ordinal numbers are adjectives, and must change to agree with the noun they refer to. Following are the ordinal numbers for 1 through 9:

<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>plural</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>
първ-и	първ-а	първ-о	първ-и	first
втор-и	втор-а	втор-о	втор-и	second
трет-и	трет-а	трет-о	трет-и	third
четвърт-и	четвърт-а	четвърт-о	четвърт-и	fourth
пет-и	пет-а	пет-о	пет-и	fifth
шест-и	шест-а	шест-о	шест-и	sixth
седм-и	седм-а	седм-о	седм-и	seventh
осм-и	осм-а	осм-о	осм-и	eighth
девет-и	девет-а	девет-о	девет-и	ninth

Although the masculine and the plural forms are identical, one can tell either from the noun or from the context which meaning is intended. Ordinals from 5 onwards are formed by adding the above endings to the number itself. For instance, пет [5] + -и gives пет-и [5<sup>th</sup>].

Note that the -e- in седем and осем is treated as a fleeting vowel (седем [7], осем [8], but седми [7<sup>th</sup>], осми [8<sup>th</sup>]).

The spoken form of dates always uses the ordinal form. English speakers can say either "September 15" or "September 15<sup>th</sup>", but Bulgarian speakers can only say петнайсети септémври. When the date is expressed in writing by a number and not a word, the final -и is sometimes added and sometimes not. The date on which something happens is indicated by the preposition на.

В България учениците тръгват  
на училище  
на 15-и септémври  
на 15 септémври.

In Bulgaria children start school  
on September 15th.

Ordinal numbers have both indefinite and definite forms. When these numbers name something, such as a date, an address or a reservation number, they are used in the indefinite. For example:

Днес е втори октомври.  
Ние сме в седми вагон.

Today is October 2<sup>nd</sup>.  
We're in car no. 7.

Живеем в Надежда, блок  
деветдесет и трети, вход  
"Б", пети етаж.

Our address is [= we live in] residential  
district Nadezhda, building no. 93,  
2nd entrance, 5th floor.

When ordinal numbers refer to a counted place in a series, however, they are used in the definite. For example:

Ще слезете на третата спирка.  
Тя живеят на петия етаж.

You [will] get off at the third stop.  
They live on the fifth floor.

## 8.2. Definite forms of adjectives

When a definite noun is modified by an adjective, the article is added to the adjective instead of the noun. If there is more than one adjective, the article is added to the first of the series. The article is placed after the adjective ending. In the case of masculine adjectives, the ending -и always appears before the article. The sequence и + ът is always written -ият. Fleeting vowels are lost before this ending. In the case of alternating root vowels, the -я- shifts to -е- before this ending.

Here are the definite and indefinite forms of the adjectives добър and голям, and of the ordinal number първи.

	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>plural</i>
<i>indefinite</i>	добър	добр-а	добр-о	добр-и
<i>definite</i>	добр-ият	добр-ата	добр-ото	добр-ите
<i>indefinite</i>	голям	голям-а	голям-о	голём-и
<i>definite</i>	голём-ият	голём-ата	голём-ото	голём-ите
<i>indefinite</i>	първ-и	първ-а	първ-о	първ-и
<i>definite</i>	първ-ият	първ-ата	първ-ото	първ-ите

English and Bulgarian are alike in that when definite nouns occur preceded by adjectives, the entire phrase is considered definite. The only difference between them in this respect is that in Bulgarian the article occurs *after* the first element in this phrase instead of before it, as in English.



Here are examples of definite nouns both with and without adjectives:

<i>feminine</i>	Чанта-та Голяма-та чанта	е на пода е на пода.	The bag is on the floor. The big bag is on the floor.
<i>neuter</i>	Детё-то Малко-то дете	рисува добре. рисува добре.	The child draws well. The small child draws well.
<i>plural</i>	Моливи-те Цветни-те моливи	са в чантата. са в чантата.	The pencils are in the bag. The colored pencils are in the bag.
<i>masculine subject</i>	Молив-ът Червен-ият молив	е тук. е тук.	The pencil is here. The red pencil is here.
<i>masculine object</i>	Виждаш ли Виждаш ли	молив-а? червен-ия молив?	Do you see the pencil? Do you see the red pencil?

As in definite nouns, the masculine object form drops the -т. Remember that in Bulgarian, the category "subject" includes predicate nouns, and that the category "object" includes objects of prepositions. For example:

<i>subject</i>	Това е последният вагон на влака.	It's the last car of the train.
<i>object</i>	Веселин се качва в последния вагон.	Veselin gets into the last car.

### 8.3. Possessive pronominal adjectives

Possessive pronominal adjectives in Bulgarian are similar to other adjectives in that they change form to agree with the noun they refer to. In Bulgarian, the question word **чий** "whose" also belongs to this group. These adjectives, whose forms are given below, are used most frequently in the definite form, although the indefinite form can be used in certain instances.

	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>plural</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>
<i>1sg</i>	МОЙ	МО-Я	МО-Е	МО-И	my/mine
<i>2sg</i>	ТВОЙ	ТВО-Я	ТВО-Е	ТВО-И	your(s)
<i>3sg fem</i>	НЕЙН	НЕЙН-Я	НЕЙН-О	НЕЙН-И	her(s)
<i>3sg masc</i>	НЕГОВ	НЕГОВ-А	НЕГОВ-О	НЕГОВ-И	his
<i>1pl</i>	НАШ	НАШ-А	НАШ-Е	НАШ-И	our(s)
<i>2pl</i>	ВАШ	ВАШ-А	ВАШ-Е	ВАШ-И	your(s)
<i>3pl</i>	ТЕХЕН	ТЕХН-А	ТЕХН-О	ТЕХН-И	their(s)
<i>query</i>	ЧИЙ	ЧИ-Я	ЧИ-Е	ЧИ-И	whose

There are fleeting vowels in both **неин** and **тѣхен**, but their behavior is quite different. The vowel in **неин** is, exceptionally, **-и-**. As do other fleeting vowels in adjectives, it appears only in the masculine singular. However, a trace of it (in the form of the consonant **-й-**) is present in the remaining forms. Note that the masculine form **неин** has two syllables, while the stem seen in other forms (**нейн-**) has only one.

Note that the adjective meaning “their” has not only a vowel-zero alternation (**тѣхен** / **тѣхни**) but also an **е** / **я** alternation in the root (**тѣхен** / **тѣхна**).

#### 8.4. Negative and indefinite pronouns

Question words are those which request information, and with which one forms questions. Practically all such words in Bulgarian begin with **к-** (**кой**, **кога**, **къде**, **какъв**, etc.). Negative and indefinite pronouns are formed by adding the prefixes **ни-** and **ня-**, respectively, to these words. The Bulgarian system is much more symmetrical in this respect than the English one:

	<i>identity</i>	<i>time</i>	<i>place</i>	<i>character</i>	<i>manner</i>
<i>question</i>	кой? who?	кога? when?	къде? where?	какъв? what sort?	как? how?
<i>negative</i>	ни-кой no one	ни-кога never	ни-къде nowhere	ни-какъв	ни-как
<i>indefinite</i>	ня-кой someone	ня-кога sometime	ня-къде somewhere	ня-какъв some sort	ня-как somehow

The English translation “what sort?” for **какъв** in the above chart does not cover all the meanings of the Bulgarian word. No translations are given for **никакъв** or **никак**, since for these words the correct translation depends on the context. The form **понекога** “sometimes” also exists. It differs slightly in meaning from **някога** “sometime” (in the meaning “at some point in the past”).

The words for “nothing” and “something” are formed by adding recognizable prefixes not to the question word **какъв** but to the more colloquial word **що**:

<i>negative</i>	нищо	nothing
<i>indefinite</i>	нещо	something

When the words in the “identity” column refer to human beings, they have both a subject and an object form. The subject form is the one listed above, and the object form ends in **-го**: **кого**, **никого**, **някого**. The object form must be used whenever the pronoun is the object of the verb or of a preposition. For example:

*subject*

Кой живее тук?

Who lives here?

Някой чака на вратата.

Someone is waiting at the door.

*object*

С когото живеете?

Who do you live with?

На когото помагаш?

Whom are you helping?

Виждаш ли някого?

Do you see someone?

### 8.5. Double negatives

In Bulgarian, as in all Slavic languages, multiple negative markers are required. If the verb is negated and the sentence includes pronouns or adverbs for which there exists a negated form, this negated form must be used. This is in contrast to English, where only one negative marker per sentence is permitted. For example:

Никъде никого не виждам.

I don't see anyone anywhere.

Той нищо не знае.

He doesn't know anything.

Няма да го дам на никого.

I won't give it to anyone.

Никой няма да седне тук.

No one will sit down here.

### 8.6. Word order and the future tense

Pronoun objects of a verb in the future tense must be placed after the future markers (ще or няма да) and before the verb.

Ще го пазя, няма да го отстъпя. I'll guard it. I won't give it up.

The question marker *ли* occurs after the main verb when the future marker is *ще*. When the future marker is *няма да*, the question marker occurs after the negative form *няма*. For example:

Ще дойдеш ли утре?

Are you coming tomorrow?

Няма ли да дойдеш утре?

Aren't you coming tomorrow?

### 8.7. The particles *се* / *си* with verbs

Bulgarian grammars usually refer to the particles *се* and *си* as "reflexive". Formally, these particles are object pronouns. They obey the same word order rules as object pronouns, and they are formally similar with the 1sg-2sg object pronouns:

	<i>direct object</i>	<i>indirect object</i>
<i>1<sup>st</sup> singular</i>	<b>ме</b>	<b>ми</b>
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> singular</i>	<b>те</b>	<b>ти</b>
<i>reflexive</i>	<b>се</b>	<b>си</b>

Functionally, however, they have a double life. They can be used either as the object of a verb, or as part of the verb itself. When used as pronoun objects, they are called "true reflexives" -- the objects of a verb whose action "reflects" back onto the subject. That is, the person who is the object of the verb is simultaneously its subject. Here are examples illustrating the difference between non-reflexive and reflexive usage. (Reflexives will be studied in more detail in Lesson 13.)

*non-reflexive*

Майката миё детето.  
Веселин казва нещо на Джули.

The mother washes the child.  
Veselin says something to Julie.

*reflexive*

Детето се миё.  
Веселин си казва нещо.

The child washes [himself].  
Veselin says something to himself.

More commonly, the particles *се* and *си* occur as "verbal additives", becoming part of an individual verb's meaning. In this usage, the two particles function quite differently. When the particle *се* accompanies a verb, it is usually an integral part of that verb. The complex "verb + *се*" then becomes a unique verb all its own. Here are examples of verbs with and without this particle:

<i>+/- particle</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>
<i>without</i>	ка́звам / ка́жа	say [something]
<i>with</i>	ка́звам се	be called
<i>without</i>	приби́рам / прибе́ра	gather, collect
<i>with</i>	приби́рам се / прибе́ра се	come home
<i>without</i>	разби́рам / разбе́ра	understand
<i>with</i>	разби́ра се (3sg)	of course
<i>without</i>	ка́чвам / кача́	lift [something]
<i>with</i>	ка́чвам се / кача́ се	get on [bus, train, etc.], go up
<i>without</i>	притесня́вам / притесня́	cause concern [to someone]
<i>with</i>	притесня́вам се / притесня́ се	worried

There is not always a predictable relationship between the meaning of a verb with *ce* added, and the same verb without *ce*. Sometimes the difference is one of transitivity (the ability to take a direct object), in which case there is no separate dictionary entry. But when the meaning is sufficiently different, as in the above, each of the verbs is a separate dictionary entry. (The usage of *ce* to mark intransitivity will be studied in Lesson 11.)

The particles *ce* and *си* function quite differently. Although *ce* is obligatory, in that it is part of the verb it accompanies (and indeed, makes this verb into a new and different verb), *си* is optional. It can be added to a verb or not as the speaker chooses. When it is present, it adds the meaning of greater intimacy, of greater involvement in the action. For instance, in the expression *поемам дъх*, "catch [one's] breath", a Bulgarian could say either of the following two sentences:

Седнете, поемете дъх!  
Седнете, поемете си дъх!

Sit down and catch your breath!  
[same]

The second version is much more frequently heard, no doubt because it is generally perceived that someone out of breath is (or should be) highly involved in the action of catching his breath.

## 8.8. Prepositions

(a) The preposition *към* means "towards". It indicates movement in the direction of a certain point, both in space and in time. It is also used in a number of idiomatic expressions to indicate relationship.

Детето тича към градината.

The child runs towards the park.

Към пет часа ще сме готови.

We'll be ready towards/around 5:00.

Напоследък тя проявява интерес  
към средновековието.

Lately she has been showing an interest  
in the Middle Ages.

Ще намериш новите думи  
в допълнението към речника.

You'll find [the] new words  
in the supplement to the dictionary.

(b) The primary meaning of the preposition *от* is "from". Although many instances of it are translated with other prepositions in English, most still maintain the general idea of separation. (For more on the use of the preposition *от* in phrases of comparison, see Lesson 10.)

Никой от моите приятели  
не може да повярва това.

None of my friends can believe it.

Никой не обича животните  
повече от Емили.

No one likes animals more than Emily.

(c) The preposition **на** is used to specify intervals in space or time. The English phrases "at a distance of..." or "at intervals of..." may help the student learn this usage.

Рѣлскѣят манастир е на два  
часа път с кола от Сѳѣня.

Rila monastery is about two hours'  
drive from Sofia.

Ще гѣлташ лека̀рствата на 8  
часа.

Take the pills every 8 hours.

(d) The preposition **през** also specifies intervals of space or time, but intervals that are skipped over.

Списанието излиза през  
седмица.

The magazine comes out every other  
week.

Тя посажда по едно дърво  
през три къщи.

She plants a tree every three houses.

Той живее през три улици.

He lives three streets over from here.

### 8.9. Demonstrative pronouns, continued

Corresponding to the pronoun **този** "this" is the pronoun **онзи** "that". The forms are similar to those of **този**. They are:

<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>plural</i>	
ТО-ЗИ	ТА-ЗИ	ТО-ВА	ТЕ-ЗИ	this
ОН-ЗИ	ОНА-ЗИ	ОНО-ВА	ОНЕ-ЗИ	that

English speakers should beware of translating "this" and "that" directly into Bulgarian. As the following example shows, the *neutral* demonstrative pronoun in English is "that", but in Bulgarian it is **този** "this".

Тази къща е много хубава.

That house is very nice.

The difference may be schematized as follows:

	<i>nearby</i>	<i>neutral</i>	<i>distant</i>
English	this	that	that
Bulgarian	този	този	онзи

## EXERCISES

I. Rewrite the sentences changing all underlined nouns to the appropriate pronouns:

1. Пётър и Нádка нýма да глédат фýлма в недéля.
2. Ще прочетéш ли писмóто на бáбата?
3. Нýма ли да покáжеш на Áнгел списáнието?
4. Ще полúчим ли писмáта след трé дни?
5. Бáба нýма ли да оберé тáзи сéдмица лýка?
6. Кáмен нýма да отстýпи мóливите на Нádка.
7. Лéкарят ще преглéда пациéнтите след óбед.

II. Expand each of the following sentences by adding one or more of the following adjectives before each noun: добър, интересен, леден, мáлък, правослáвен, софíйски, íстински, америкáнски, бýл, голя́м, цвётен, млáд, бýлгарски, прéсен, дýлг, тóпъл, нáш, вáш.

1. Ще поднесáт на гóстите плодове и чáй.
2. Децáта търсят мóливи.
3. Църквaта íма истóрия.
4. Днec е студéно. Дýха вятър. Децáта глédат снегá през прозóреца.
5. Туристите ходят на екскýрзии.
6. Адвокáтът очáква Дéйвид и Джúли с нетърпéние.
7. Приятелите пíшат писмá.

III. Rewrite the following sentences as negative.

1. Тóй отíва нýкъде и бърза.
2. Товá ни интересúва, разкажéте ни го.
3. Нýкои дáва на децáта óрехи.
4. Мáйката ги хрáни с лъжичка.
5. Тé нýкак ще наредят нáшата прогрáма.
6. Áнгел вижда нýкого през прозóреца.
7. Нýкой звъни на вратáта.

## ADDITIONAL GRAMMAR NOTES

### 8.1a. Long adjective forms

All adjectives formed with the suffix **-ск-** add **-и** in the masculine form. This suffix is used to create adjectives from a number of stems. It is very frequent with proper nouns (names of places or regions). Additional suffixes are sometimes added when adjectives are formed from proper nouns. Although the proper nouns themselves are capitalized (as in English), the adjectives formed from them are not.

<i>noun</i>	<i>stem</i>	<i>+ - ск- &gt;</i>	<i>adjective (masculine)</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>
мѣж	мѣж-	+ - к- >	* мѣжк-и	masculine
истин-а	истин-	+ -ск- >	истинск-и	true
Рѣл-а	рил-	+ -ск- >	рилск-и	of Rila
Европ-а	европ-ей-	+ -ск- >	европейск-и	European
Куб-а	куб-ин-	+ -ск- >	кубинск-и	Cuban
Византи-я	византий-	+ -ск- >	византийск-и	Byzantine

\* The adjective мѣжки is formed on to this pattern, but is written without the **-с-**.

### 8.2a. Definite forms of adjectives

Adjectives can often refer to nouns which are not stated. Some such adjectives in fact now function as full-fledged nouns, three examples of which are given below. Although they look like singular neuter nouns, their plural endings show that they are essentially adjectives:

<i>singular indefinite</i>	<i>singular definite</i>	<i>plural indefinite</i>	<i>plural definite</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>
животн-о	животн-ото	животн-и	животн-ите	animal
контролн-о	контролн-ото	контролн-и	контролн-ите	quiz, test
домашн-о	домашн-ото	домашн-и	домашн-ите	homework

The longer forms **контролна работа** and **домашна работа** also exist, and also mean "quiz" and "homework", respectively. The fact that the shorter forms end in **-о** is proof that they now function as nouns on their own -- if the noun **работа** were there but simply remained unspoken, the shorter forms would end in **-а**.



## Осми урок / Lesson 8

Indeed, adjectives used alone are usually understood to refer to a particular noun which does not happen to be stated. Since that noun almost always refers to something that has already been mentioned, the adjective appears in its definite form. For instance:

-- Коя чанта търсите?  
-- Голямата.

"Which bag are you looking for?"  
"The big one."

Димът е опасен за малките.

Smoke is dangerous for the small ones.  
(Here "small ones" = "children"  
in the generic usage.)

### 8.2b. Soft adjectives

One commonly used adjective, *син* "blue", ends in a soft consonant. To signify this, the endings of the feminine and neuter forms must be spelled with *-я* and *-ьо*, respectively. The forms of this adjective are as follows:

	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>plural</i>
<i>indefinite</i>	син	син-я	син-ьо	син-и
<i>definite</i>	син-ият	син-ята	син-ьото	син-ите

### 8.3a. Possessive pronominal adjectives

Like other forms with adjectival endings, the possessive pronominal adjectives can occur in both definite and indefinite variants. The definite form is used when the topic has been mentioned before, or is known in some way. Since that which is possessed is usually a known quantity to the possessor, these adjectives tend to occur most frequently in the definite form. If the information is new, however, or if the identity of that which is possessed is unspecified, then the indefinite form will be used. Here are examples, with the presumed meaning given below in italics.

#### Indefinite form

Деца́та не са мои́.

The children are not mine.

*It is not known whether or not the speaker has children; all he says here is that the children in question are not his.*

Мо́и прия́тели, напри́мер,  
не и́скат да хо́дят на аеро́бика.

[Some of] my friends, for example,  
don't [like to] go to aerobics classes.

*The identity of the friends who don't do aerobics is not specified beyond the fact that they are among the group "friends of the speaker".*

**Definite form**

Тези деца не са моите.

These children aren't mine.  
[= aren't the ones that are mine.]

*The participants in the conversation are aware that the speaker has children; what he says here is that the children in question are not the ones we know to be his.*

Моите деца, например,  
изобщо не могат да чакат.My children, for example,  
can't wait at all.

*For the speaker, the fact that the children are his is a given and therefore known; the new information is about their inability to wait.*

**8.5a. Negative expressions, continued**

The negative form of the conjunction и "and" is **ни́то**, which also exists in a more colloquial variant, **ни**. Its most frequent use is as an intensifier. The examples below illustrate the affirmative intensifier use of **и**, and the parallel negative usage of **ни́то** / **ни**. Note that in the affirmative sentence, the English translation specifies this intensification by means of the adverb "even". The negative sentence, however, has no way to express the parallel intensification, since only one negative is allowed in English.

Тя знае много езици.  
Знае **и** български.  
Той не знае **ни** една дума  
български.  
Не разбира **ни́то** дума.

She knows many languages.  
She even knows Bulgarian.  
He doesn't know a word of Bulgarian.  
He doesn't understand a single word.

**8.6a. Word order rules and the future tense**

Word order rules involving the future particle **ще** (*Fut.*) are similar in many ways to those involving the negative particle **не** (*Neg.*) and the conjunction **да** (*Cnj.*). These otherwise unrelated words share three important characteristics:

- they are unaccented
- they may begin a sentence or a clause
- they must be followed directly by the sequence "clitic(s) plus verb" (or the verb itself if no clitics are present)

Therefore, these particles are designated by a capitalized abbreviation. This designation opposes them both to fully accented words (such as *verb*, designated all in lower case) and to true clitics (such as the short form direct object pronoun *DIR*, designated all in upper case). Examples of word order in the future tense, with

numbering cumulative across lessons, are given below. Note the similarity to word order in negative constructions and да-phrases. Note also that the negative future marker **няма да** also follows the same rules by virtue of its second member, **да**.

### Simple future tense

Regardless of the place of **ще** in the sentence, a pronoun object of a verb in the future tense must be placed between the particle **ще** and the verb form.

- (18) 

Аз	ще	го	пазя.
	<i>Fut.</i>	<i>DIR</i>	<i>verb</i>

 I will guard it.
- (19) 

Ще	му	помогна
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>IND</i>	<i>verb</i>

да	ги	занесё.
<i>Cnj.</i>	<i>DIR</i>	<i>verb</i>

 I'll help him carry them.

### Similarity of future tense and negated present tense

When pronoun objects are present, the word order of future tense and negated present tense sentences is identical. The only difference is that the clitic pronoun is accented after the negative particle but not after the future particle.

- (20) 

Ще	го	изпратя.
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>DIR</i>	<i>verb</i>

 I'll accompany him.
- vs.
- (21) 

Не	го	изпращам.
<i>Neg.</i>	<i>DIR</i>	<i>verb</i>

 I'm not accompanying him.
- (22) 

Ще	му	помогна.
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>IND</i>	<i>verb</i>

 I'll help him.
- vs.
- (23) 

Не	му	помагам.
<i>Neg.</i>	<i>IND</i>	<i>verb</i>

 I'm not helping him.

### Negated future tense

Pronoun objects after negated future verbs are treated exactly as pronoun objects after **да**. The notation reflects this by separating the negative future marker **няма да** into the stressed word **няма** (*neg.*) and the conjunction **да** (*Cnj.*). Compare the similarity with the да-phrase in example (19) above.

- (24) 

Няма	да	го	отстъпя
<i>neg.</i>	<i>Cnj.</i>	<i>DIR</i>	<i>verb</i>

 на никого. I won't give it up to anyone.

- (25) Няма да му каже.  
neg. Conj. IND verb

She won't tell him.

### Simple questions in the future tense

To form a question in the future tense, add the interrogative particle **ли** immediately after the verb, as in other questions. The placement of object pronouns is not changed. These rules also apply to embedded questions.

- (26) Ще успее ли да го купи?  
Fut. verb INT Conj. DIR verb Will he manage to buy it?

- (27) Ще ми помогнеш ли?  
Fut. IND verb INT Will you help me?

- (28) Питай го ще дойде ли.  
verb DIR Fut. verb INT Ask him if he is coming.

- (29) Не знаем ще можем ли да дойдем.  
Neg. verb Fut. verb INT Conj. verb We don't know whether or not we'll be able to come.

### Negated questions in the future tense

Questions formed from negative futures are more complex. The particle **ли** comes between the two components of the negative future marker **няма да**. In word order terms, the accented word **няма** functions as a verb; therefore it is normal that it should be followed directly by the interrogative particle.

Pronoun objects continue to follow the conjunction **да**, which is also the norm for them. Note that this rule does not allow anything to come between **да** and the verb except a pronoun object. Thus, if the subject of the verb is expressed, it is placed *after* **няма ли** but *before* **да**.

- (30) Няма ли да дойдеш утре?  
neg. INT Conj. verb Aren't you going to come tomorrow?

- (31) Няма ли да ѝ помогнеш?  
neg. INT Conj. IND verb Won't you help her?

- (32) Няма ли някой да седне тук?  
neg. INT subject Conj. verb Won't someone sit down here?

- (33) Няма ли да го питаш ще дойде ли?  
neg. INT Conj. DIR verb Fut. verb INT Aren't you going to ask him whether or not he is coming?

8.7a. The particles **се** / **си** with verbs

The particles **се** and **си** can function either as reflexive objects of the verb, or as integral components of a verb's meaning. In either case, they obey the word order rules for direct and indirect object pronouns, respectively.

The addition of **се** to a verb always creates a new verb, one in which the change of meaning is not directly predictable. The addition of **си** to a verb is optional (but frequent), and the change in meaning is usually the same: the often untranslatable overtone of greater involvement and intimacy.

There are a few instances, however, where the particle **си** does change the meaning sufficiently to create a new verb. One of these is the perfective form of the verb **почивам** (perfective **почина**). This verb means "rest", and in the imperfective can be used either with or without **си**. For example:

Вие как **почивате**?

What do you do on vacation?  
[= How do you rest?]

Сегá **си** **почивам** хубаво -- чета́  
един ромáн.

I'm having a nice rest -- I'm reading  
a novel.

In the perfective, however, the verb has two different meanings. **Почина си** continues to mean "rest", but **почина** alone is a euphemism for "die", or "go to one's eternal resting place." The particle **си** in this instance functions to distinguish these two meanings.

Other verbs where the **си** can change the meaning are **лягам** (perfective **лégна**). Without **си**, the verb means "lie down", but with **си**, it usually means "go to bed." The verb **спомням си** "remember, keep a memory of" occurs only with the particle **си** attached. In this sense, exceptionally for the system, it is like a **се**-verb.

Лека́рят ка́зва на па́циéнта  
-- Лeгнeтe, щe ви прeглeдам.

The doctor says to the patient:  
"Lie down, and I'll examine you."

Ма́йката ка́зва на де́тeто  
-- Лeгнi си, мнóго си умoрeн.

The mother says to the child:  
"Go to bed, you are very tired."

Ниe си спoмнямe дoбрóтo стáро  
врeмe.

We remember the good old days.

### 8.10. Plural of masculine monosyllabic nouns, continued

Most masculine monosyllabic nouns add the ending **-ове** in the plural. A few, however, simply add **-е**. This plural ending is always accented. Except for **мъж** and **княз**, the nouns which form their plurals in this way also all take the article in **-ят**. The accent in the definite form is not predictable.

Three relatively common nouns have the irregular plural ending **-ища**. They also take the article in **-ят**.

<i>singular indefinite</i>	<i>singular definite</i>	<i>plural</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>
мъж	мъж-ът	мъж-е	man, husband
княз	княз-ът	княз-е	prince
крал	крал-ят	крал-е	king
цар	цар-ят	цар-е	emperor
кон	кон-ят	кон-е	horse
път	път-ят	път-ища	way, road
сън	сън-ят	сън-ища	dream, sleep
край	край-ят	край-ища	end

There are also several common nouns which, although they are monosyllabic, take the plural ending **-и**. Two have a fleeting vowel and the article in **-ят**, and three are unremarkable (at least in the singular).

Finally, several masculine nouns form the plural with **-а**, and one forms its plural with **-я**. The first of these endings is always accented.

<i>singular indefinite</i>	<i>singular definite</i>	<i>plural</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>
лакът	лакът-ят	лакт-и	elbow
нокт	нокт-ят	нокт-и	nail [finger/toe]
зъб	зъб-ът	зъб-и	tooth
филм	филм-ът	филм-и	film
гост	гост-ът	гост-и	guest
крак	крак-ът	крак-а	leg, foot
лист	лист-ът	лист-а	leaf [on a tree]
номер	номер-ът	номер-а	number, No.
господин	господин-ът	господ-а	Mr., gentleman
брат	брат-ът	брат-я	brother

Note that the noun **господин** loses its "singular" ending **-ин** in the plural. The noun **лист** in the meaning "sheet of paper" has the plural which is more regular for a monosyllabic noun: **листовете**.

**8.11. Conjoined phrases**

Often speakers wish to emphasize the connection (or lack thereof) between words or phrases. To do this, Bulgarian simply repeats the conjunctions. Note the difference from English, where a paired set of conjunctions must be used:

и ... и
или ... или
ни ... ни

both...and  
either...or  
neither...nor

For example:

Тя знае и английски, и  
български.

She knows both English and Bulgarian.

Той не знае нито английски,  
нито български.

He knows neither English nor  
Bulgarian.

Или ще дойда, или няма да  
дойда.

Either I'll come or I won't.

Finally, there is a striking difference between English and Bulgarian in the construction of phrases such as "John and I" or "he and Emily". To refer to a pair of persons one of whom is being mentioned for the first time, speakers of English simply join the proper name and the singular pronoun by the conjunction "and".

Bulgarians, however, refer to the *pair* with a pronoun, and add the proper name as part of a prepositional phrase. The literal translation of such phrases, therefore, would be (in highly awkward English) "We with John", "They with Emily". This usage occurs in both subject and object positions. For example:

Ние с Патриша често ходим  
на екскурзии.

Patricia and I often go on excursions.

Те с Йво ще ходят на цирк.

S/he and Ivo are going to go to the  
circus.

Това наистина е важно за нас  
с Дейвид.

It's really important for David and me.

(The object pronoun form нас "us" will be learned in Lesson 10.)

### 8.12. Conjoined adjectives

When two nouns of different gender are modified by the same adjective, the form of the adjective depends on whether or not the nouns refer to something that can be counted. If so, then the adjective is in the plural. If not, then the adjective agrees with the first of the two nouns. For example:

Моите баба и дядо живеят  
на село.

My grandmother and grandfather live  
in the village.

Слага топъл чай и мляко  
на масата.

She puts hot tea and milk on the  
table.

When the same noun is modified by two different adjectives, it retains the singular form, even though it is clearly plural in meaning. For example:

Той знае и български и  
английски език.

He knows both Bulgarian and English  
[languages].

Червената и зелената топка са  
по-хубави от жълтата.

The red and green balls are nicer than  
the yellow one.

(The comparison of adjectives, as in по-хубав "nicer", will be learned in Lesson 10.)



Downtown Smolyan, central Rhodopes



## **SAMPLE SENTENCES**

1. Първи януари е първият ден на годината. Той е почивен ден.
2. Иво е ученик от осми клас. Емили е ученичка от седми клас. Единайсети е последният клас.
3. Нашата първа кола е волга. Втората ще е рено.
4. Човек трудно научава първия чужд език. Вторият и третият са лесни.
5. Тана и Петър живеят в десети блок, на третия етаж, в апартамент петдесет и седем.
6. Топлото прясно мляко е полезно за здравето.
7. Ти сънуваш ли цветни сънища?
8. Всички пътища водят към Рим.
9. От младите листа на лозата в България правят сарми.
10. Учителката раздава на учениците листове хартия.
11. Учениците правят номера на младата учителка.
12. Нищо не го интересува. Никъде не иска да ходи.
13. Нямам никакви познати в България.
14. Тук никой на никого не пречи.

### **SENTENCES FOR TRANSLATION**

1. Will you help them? You won't help them? Why not?
2. Where do your friends live? Mine live in Nadezhda 181, entrance B, 7th floor.  
They don't like living on the seventh floor; they prefer the top [= last] floor.
3. Which month of the year is December? Is it the first or the last? The twenty-first day of December is the first day of winter.
4. Will you tell me where your colored pencils are? I want the blue one. Does Ivo have it? Will he put it on the table now, or will he keep it in the red bag?
5. No one knows who is coming today. No one ever knows who is coming, or when.
6. Where are the blue books and the red dictionaries? I don't see anything at all here. I know that they are somewhere but I don't know where. Who can know?
7. Will you ask them when they are leaving? I won't forget them. No one can forget them.
8. Either she knows Bulgarian or she doesn't. If she knows it now, will she forget it tomorrow?
9. Everyone remembers the good old times. Will we remember them? Won't we forget them?
10. Don't put either elbows or feet on the table! Nobody anywhere does that.

## READING SELECTION

### Аз обичам да пътувам

Том: Последните почивни дни прекарах в Сѳия. Искам да видя и други интересни места. Не можеш ли да предложиш нещо интересно за следващата събота?

Васил: Можем да отидем на Витоша. Това е любимото място на много хора в Сѳия.

Том: Вече бях там. Предпочитам да е далече от Сѳия. Аз обичам да пътувам. Казват, че в Родопите е много интересно. Можем да отидем там.

Васил: Това е добра идея. Освен това имам приятели в Смолян. Те ще ни покажат града.

Том: Ако искам да гледам градове, ще остана в Сѳия. Интересува ме природата.

Васил: Не се бой, никой няма да те заключи в апартамент. Ще можеш много да се разхождаш в природата. Можеш да видиш и истински елен или сърна. Не ти пожелавам да видиш истински гладен вълк. Вълците не разпознават любителите на природата и ги третират като обикновени хора.

Том: Значи в събота взимаме влака и отиваме в Смолян, нали?

Васил: Не го взимаме, защото до там няма влак. Можем да отидем с директен автобус до Смолян или с влак до Пловдив, а след това с автобус. Няма да е хубаво да пристигнем в Смолян много късно.

Том: Няма ли да пътуваме много дълго?

Васил: Няма. Няма да прочетеш и един вестник и ще бъдем там.

Том: Знам как ти четеш вестници. Ти четеш до последната буква.

Васил: Нищо подобно. Дори няма да реша кръстословицата. А от Пловдив до Смолян автобусите са почти през един час.

Том: А има ли интересни неща в Пловдив?

Васил: Разбира се, особено в стария град.

Том: Вече започвам да съжалявам, че няма да имаме време да го видим.

Васил: Ще го оставим за друг път.

## GLOSSARY

аеробика	aerobics	и ... и	both...and
американски	American ( <i>adj.</i> )	изобщо	in general, at all
апартамент	apartment	изпращам /	send off, see off,
баба	grandmother	изпратя	accompany
баща	father ( <i>see L. 10</i> )	изстивам /	grow/become cold
блók	apartment building	истиня	
боя се	fear	или ... или	either...or
брат ( <i>pl. братя</i> )	brother	интересувам	interest
буква	letter (of alphabet)	истински	real, true
важен	important	княз ( <i>pl. князе</i> )	prince
ваш	your, yours	когó	whom
византийски	Byzantine	комплекс	complex
вoдя	lead, take	кóн, -ят ( <i>pl. конé</i> )	horse
втори	second	контролен	control ( <i>adj.</i> )
вхóд	entrance	контролна работа	exam, quiz
вълк ( <i>pl. вълци</i> )	wolf	контролно	exam, quiz
гост ( <i>pl. гости</i> )	guest	край ( <i>pl. краища</i> )	district
гълтам	swallow	крак, -ът	leg
гълтам лекарство	take medicine	( <i>pl. крака</i> )	
девети	ninth	крал, -ят	king
директен	direct	( <i>pl. кралé</i> )	
довийждане	goodbye	кръстослoвица	crossword puzzle
домашно	homework	кубински	Cuban
допълнение	addition, supplement	към	toward
дoри	even	лакът, лакътят	elbow
дълго	a long time	( <i>pl. лакти</i> )	
дъх	breath, wind	лeден, -ена	ice ( <i>adj.</i> ), frozen
дядо ( <i>pl. in L. 10</i> )	grandfather	лекарство	medicine
европейски	European	любим	favorite
екскурзия	excursion	любител	lover, fan
елeн	deer, stag	лягам си /	go to bed
eтаж	floor [of a multi-story building]	лeгна си	
живóтно	animal	манастир	monastery
жилищен	residential	матyра	matriculation [exam]
жилищен комплекс	block of apartments, residential district	мия	wash
жълт	yellow	мoй	my, mine
заклúчвам /	lock	моравски	Moravian
заклúча (-иш)		мъж, -ът	man, husband
зелeн	green	( <i>pl. мъжé</i> )	
зъб, -ът ( <i>pl. зъби</i> )	tooth	мъжки	male, masculine
		надежда	hope
		напоследък	lately
		напримeр	for example
		нас	us ( <i>see L. 10</i> )

# Осми урок / Lesson 8

наш	our, ours	познат	acquaintance
негов	his	полъзен	useful
нейна	her, hers	полъзно за	good for one's health
нетърпение	impatience	здравето	
ни	not, neither	получавам /	receive, get
ни ... ни	neither... nor	получа (-иш)	
никак	not at all	понякога	sometimes
никакъв	none, no kind of	посаждам / посадя	seat, plant
никога	never	почивам си /	rest
никого	no one ( <i>object</i> )	почина си	
никой	no one ( <i>subject</i> )	почивен	rest ( <i>adj.</i> )
никъде	nowhere	почивен ден	day off, holiday
нищо	not, neither	почина	die
нищо (една) дума	not a single word	почти	almost
нищо	nothing	православен	Orthodox [religion] ( <i>adj.</i> )
нищо подобно	nothing of the sort	правя номера на	play dirty tricks on
нокт, нокътят	nail (on hand or foot)	преглеждам /	examine
( <i>pl.</i> нокти)		прегледам	
номер ( <i>pl.</i> номера)	number, size	предлагам /	proffer, propose
някак	somehow	предложа (-иш)	
някакъв	some sort	през	( <i>distributive</i> ) see p. 151
някога	sometime	през седмица	every other week
някой	someone	пресен, прясна	fresh
някъде	somewhere	реча (-иш)	bother
		прибирам /	gather, collect
		прибера	
обед ( <i>or</i> обяд)	lunch	прибирам се /	arrive home
обикновен	usual	прибера се	
обирам / обера	plunder, pick	притеснявам /	worry, cause concern to,
онази	that ( <i>feminine</i> )	притесня	embarrass
онези	those	програма	program
онзи	that ( <i>masculine</i> )	проявявам /	appear, show
онова	that ( <i>neuter</i> )	проявя	
осемнайсет	eighteenth	проявявам интерес	take an interest in
осми	eighth	към	
особено	especially	път, -ят	way, path
оставям / остава	leave	( <i>pl.</i> пътища)	
от	than		
отстъпвам / отстъпя	step back, yield, give up	раздавам / раздам	give out, distribute
			( <i>conj. in L. 9</i> )
пая	guard, protect	разказвам /	relate, tell
пети	fifth	разказа (-иш)	
писмо	letter	разпознавам /	distinguish, discern
по пътя	along the way	разпозна	
по-хубав	nicer, prettier	разхождам се /	walk around, take a walk
	( <i>see L. 10</i> )	разходя се	
повярвам	believe, give credence	решавам /	solve
подобен	similar	реша (-иш)	
поемам / поема	take, take up	решавам	do a crossword
поемам [си] дъх	catch one's breath	кръстословица	puzzle
пожелавам /	wish	рилски	Rila ( <i>adj.</i> )
пожелан			

седми	seventh	успявам / успея	succeed
син (синя, синьо)	blue	филм (pl. филми)	film, movie
следващ	next	хартія	paper
софийски	of Sofia (adj.)	храня	feed, nourish
списание	magazine	цар, -ят (pl. царé)	tsar, emperor
спомням (си) / спомня (си)	recall	чакам с нетърпение	await eagerly
средновековие	Middle Ages	чета до последната	read every last word
съжалявам / съжаля	regret, be sorry	буква	
сън (pl. сънища)	dream	четвърти	fourth
сън, -ят	sleep	чий, чия, чие, чии	whose
сърна	deer, doe	чужд	foreign, alien
твoй	your, yours (singular)	шести	sixth
тѣхен, тѣхна	their, theirs	що	what
тичам	run	януари	January
топка	ball		
трети	third		
третирам	treat		
турист	tourist		
уморен	tired		



Courtyard of Rila Monastery

## CULTURAL COMMENTARY

### Housing

Most people in larger cities live not in self-standing houses, but in apartment buildings. This is especially the case in the capital city, Sofia, which is surrounded by large complexes of apartment buildings. Each of these large units is called a **жилищен комплекс**, and has an overall name, such as "Nadezhda" (Надежда). Although there are streets among the buildings, addresses refer not to the streets but to the numbers of the buildings (which can be in the hundreds). Each building usually has several entrances which are labeled in alphabetical order (А, Б, В, Г, etc.), and many floors. The numbers of the apartments do not necessarily correspond to the floors, but since there are only two to three apartments on each floor (accessible from that entrance, that is), people usually give just the floor as part of the address. It is crucial, however, especially in the case of very large apartment buildings, to know the correct entrance.

### School system: exams

Written quizzes and exams taken by students in school are called **контролни работи**. The term **изпит** "examination" refers only to qualifying examinations of the sort that determine one's future. One of these is the "matura" (**матура**), taken at the end of secondary schooling. Most Bulgarians, when they hear the word **изпит**, however, think of University entrance examinations. These examinations are extremely difficult and competitive; it is often said, only partly in jest, that the hardest part of university education is being admitted.

### Food and drink: milk

Yogurt (**кисело мляко**) is such a staple of the Bulgarian diet that Bulgarians often add the adjective **прясно** "fresh" to describe what in western countries is simply "milk". Bulgarians always heat fresh milk before drinking it. Sometimes they let it cool first but more often they drink it hot; the general belief is that hot milk is very healthful.

### Geography: Rila

One of the many picturesque mountain areas in Bulgaria is that called Rila (**Рила**), located to the south of Sofia. It is a favorite excursion spot for both locals and foreigners, not only for the mountain sports of hiking and fishing, but because of the Rila monastery (**Рилският манастир**) nestled among the mountains. The monastery was founded in the 11th century and has been destroyed and rebuilt many times since. One tower now remains from the 12th century, but the interest is the present structure, built in the 19th century on older models. This includes a large Byzantine-style church in the center of a courtyard, with monastery cells surrounding it on all sides. The whole monastery is colorfully painted and decorated. A hotel has been built outside the monastery walls, but it is sometimes possible to sleep in the monastery itself.

### Geography: the Rhodopes

The Rhodope mountains are very rugged, and wild animals roam freely; hunting is a popular sport. Settlements in the Rhodopes are small; the central city, Smolyan (**Смолян**), is a recent creation. It consists of three large villages, each of which has retained its original character to a considerable extent. Two of these, Ustovo (**Ўстово**) and Raykovo (**Райково**), are now equivalent to suburbs. The central village, formerly called Pashmakli (**Пашмакли**), is now "city center". There are no direct train lines to Smolyan; one can only travel there by bus.

### Geography: Plovdiv

Plovdiv (**Пловдив**, ancient Philipopolis) is the second largest city in Bulgaria. A number of fine Roman ruins are to be seen there, and the old city has been restored in 19th-century style. It is situated on the main road between Sofia and Istanbul, Turkey.

### Travel: trains and buses

Long-distance travel in Bulgaria is accomplished by train and bus. The train lines are run by the state, but long-distance bus travel is now carried out by a number of private companies. Most towns are serviced by one or more bus lines.

## LESSON 9

### **DIALOGUE**

#### Слава Бóгу, вие сте тóка!

// Владимир и Веселин вървят бързо по коридора. Като минават вагоните, Веселин ги брои: два́сет и трéти, два́сет и вто́ри, два́сет и пéрви, два́сети, деветна́йсети... //

Веселин: На́й-пóсле дойдóхме! Осемна́йсети! Влéз, Владимiре, в на́шето купé, и седни́ ма́лко. Понé да изядéш еднó кеба́пче и да изпиéш еднá раки́я.

Камен: Ура́! Кеба́пчетата пристiгат! Ко́й са мо́ите?

Веселин: Ёто ги тво́ите, ёто и за дру́гите.

Таня: Вéче запóчвам да се притесня́вам. Сля́зохте и ни́какъв ви нýма.

Джули: Сла́ва Бóгу, вие сте тóка. Не са ва́жни кеба́пчетата, ва́жното е, че не стé оста́нали та́м в Шу́мен.

Камен: Ка́к да не са ва́жни кеба́пчетата!?

Милена: Кеба́пчетата не са достáтъчно солéни! Няко́й има ли со́л?

Таня: А́з имах со́л тóка някúде... Не я ви́ждам.

Надка: Ма́мо, Ка́мен пи́па солни́цата сутринта́.

Камен: А́з са́мо посолíх пу́канките и я оста́вих на мя́сто.

Таня: Ёто я солта́. Намéрих я. В ча́нтата е. Заповяда́йте, госпо́жо.

Камен: М-м-м. Мнóго хубави кеба́пчета! Ная́дох се. Няма да я́м до у́тре сутринта́.

Таня: Няма ли да вече́ряш до́вечера?

Камен: Мо́же би. Ще ви́дим.

Та́ня (на Веселин): Кеба́пчетата са на́йстина мнóго вку́сни. Благодаря́ ви!  
(на Владимир): И на на́шия гóст, за не́говата по́мощ.

Веселин: Да́, мнóго ти благодаря́, Вла́до. Ёто, вземí мо́ите кеба́пчета. Да́вам ти ги в зна́к на благодарно́ст!

Владимир: Ти́ не си́ ли гла́ден?

Веселин: Няма значéние. Ва́жното е, ка́кто ка́зва Джу́ли, че не сýм оста́нал та́м в Шу́мен.



## BASIC GRAMMAR

### 9.1. The verbs *да́м* and *я́м*

The verbs *да́м* “give”, *я́м* “eat” (and all perfective verbs formed from them), are slightly irregular in the present tense. All forms but the 1<sup>st</sup> singular follow the *e*-conjugation. The stem is *дад-* and the accent is on the theme vowel. The 1<sup>st</sup> singular, by contrast, contains only the initial consonant plus [-ам] (*д + ам > да́м*, *й + ам > я́м*). The imperative forms are also irregular. Here are the full conjugations of these verbs:

	<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>	<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>
<i>1<sup>st</sup> person</i>	я́м	яд-éм	да́м	дад-éм
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> person</i>	яд-éш	яд-éте	дад-éш	дад-éте
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> person</i>	яд-é	яд-áт	дад-é	дад-áт
<i>imperative</i>	я́ж	я́ж-те	да́й	да́й-те

### 9.2. Aorist tense, continued

The aorist tense is formed by adding the aorist endings (learned in Lesson 6) to the aorist theme vowel. The aorist theme vowel for most *и*-conjugation verbs is *-и-*. For comparison, here are the present and aorist tense forms of the verbs *хóдя* and *бро́я*:

	<i>PRESENT</i>	<i>AORIST</i>	<i>PRESENT</i>	<i>AORIST</i>
<i>1<sup>st</sup> singular</i>	хóд-я	хóд-их	бро-я	бро-их
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> singular</i>	хóд-иш	хóд-и	бро-иш	бро-и
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> singular</i>	хóд-и	хóд-и	бро-и	бро-и
<i>1<sup>st</sup> plural</i>	хóд-им	хóд-ихме	бро-им	бро-ихме
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> plural</i>	хóд-ите	хóд-ихте	бро-ите	бро-ихте
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> plural</i>	хóд-ят	хóд-иха	бро-ят	бро-иха

For most *и*-conjugation verbs, therefore, and for all *а*-conjugation verbs, the present and aorist theme vowels are the same. This means that the 3<sup>rd</sup> singular forms are identical. However, context is usually sufficient to indicate which meaning is intended.

An important group of verbs forms the aorist with two different theme vowels: these verbs have -e- in the 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> singular, and -o- in other persons. Most of these verbs also have a different accent in the aorist from that of the present. As examples of this type, here are the present and aorist conjugations of **четá** and **да́м**.

	PRESENT	AORIST	PRESENT	AORIST
1 <sup>st</sup> singular	чет-á	чѐт-ох	да́м	да́д-ох
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	чет-ѐш	чѐт-е	дад-ѐш	да́д-е
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	чет-ѐ	чѐт-е	дад-ѐ	да́д-е
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	чет-ѐм	чѐт-охме	дад-ѐм	да́д-охме
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	чет-ѐте	чѐт-охте	дад-ѐте	да́д-охте
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	чет-áт	чѐт-оха	дад-áт	да́д-оха

All prefixed forms of these verbs form the aorist tense in exactly the same manner. The aorist forms of the verb **я́м** are parallel to those of the verb **да́м**.

Two very important members of this group are the motion verbs **до́йда** and **оти́да**. They are noteworthy because they have different accentual patterns. The accentuation of **до́йда** is the reverse of other verbs in this class: it has stem stress in the present and end stress in the aorist. The accent of **оти́да** does not change from present to aorist. Here are the present and aorist conjugations of these two verbs:

	PRESENT	AORIST	PRESENT	AORIST
1 <sup>st</sup> singular	до́йд-а	дойд-о́х	оти́д-а	оти́д-ох
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	до́йд-еш	дойд-ѐ	оти́д-еш	оти́д-е
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	до́йд-е	дойд-ѐ	оти́д-е	оти́д-е
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	до́йд-ем	дойд-о́хме	оти́д-ем	оти́д-охме
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	до́йд-ете	дойд-о́хте	оти́д-ете	оти́д-охте
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	до́йд-ат	дойд-о́ха	оти́д-ат	оти́д-оха

### 9.3. Feminine nouns in a consonant

Most nouns ending in a consonant are masculine (**вля́к**, **трамва́й**, etc.), and most nouns ending in -a are feminine (**кни́га**, **библиотéка**, etc.). However, a certain number of nouns ending in a consonant are also feminine (**со́л**, **но́щ**, **помо́щ**, **ѐсен**, **про́лет**, etc.). For these nouns, the "rhyming principle" does not work. The student must learn the fact of feminine gender when learning each of these nouns, and must remember that all adjectives, demonstrative pronouns, and articles which occur with them must be marked as feminine. For example:

Да́й ми солта́, мо́ля.	Give me the salt, please
Благодаря́ за ва́шата по́мощ.	Thank you for your help.
Есента́ е златна.	Autumn is golden.
През пролетта́ цветя́та цъфтя́т.	Flowers bloom in the spring.
Чета́ "Хиля́да и една́ но́щ".	I'm reading "1001 Nights". *

(\* The noun **но́щ** appears in the singular here because the title is a fixed expression; normally the plural would occur after a complex number ending in 1.)

All feminine nouns take the definite article **-та**. Note that when added to a feminine noun ending in a consonant, this article is *always* accented, and that when added to a feminine noun ending in **-а** it is *never* accented.

#### 9.4. Past active participles as adjectives

Past active participles are adjectives formed from verbs. They describe the state that results after the verbal action they refer to has taken place. For instance, the adjective **минал** "last, past" is the past active participle of the verb **мина** "pass".

All Bulgarian verbs can form a participle indicating that an action has been carried out. This participle is used to form several compound verb tenses, which will be learned in later lessons. The focus in this lesson is on the use of the participle as a predicate adjective.

The endings of this participle are given below. It is often called the "L-participle" because its characteristic mark is the consonant **-л-**, which occurs immediately before the gender-marking endings.

<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>plural</i>
-л	-ла	-ло	-ли

When these participles modify nouns, they function exactly as adjectives (only certain of these participles can occur in this position). In this usage, they are usually definite. For example:

Миналата седмица беше много трудна.	Last week [= the past week] was a very difficult one.
Остаталото ядене ще сложа в хладилника.	I'll put the leftover food in the refrigerator.

A much more frequent use of these participles is as predicate adjectives. In this usage, they retain more of their verbal meaning. Examples:

Ядене не е остáнало.

There isn't any food left.

Вáжното е,  
че не стé остáнали в Шúмен.

The important thing is  
that you didn't remain in Shumen.

Вáжното е,  
че не сýм остáнал в Шúмен.

What's important is  
that I didn't remain in Shumen.

The last two translations of the predicative participle *остáнал* render it as a verbal tense. This is partly because of the meaning of the verb *остáна*, and partly because the most common usage of the L-participle is indeed within the compound tense called the "past indefinite". Even within a verbal tense, however, the participle formally continues to function as an adjective: it takes the same endings all adjectives take, and follows the same agreement rules. In meaning, it is both adjectival and verbal. It is a verb because it describes a state which is the result of a verbal action; and it is an adjective because it applies that state to the description of a person or thing.

In the case of the above example, the state is that of "remaining in Shumen". Both speakers are describing a person by noting that the present state of "remaining in Shumen" does not apply to him. The participle form must agree with the subject of the sentence. When the speaker, a male, is referring to himself, the participle must have the masculine ending. When someone else refers to him with the polite form *вие*, however, the participle must have the plural ending.

The complete rules for forming the L-participle will be learned in Lesson 16, and the past indefinite tense will be studied in more detail in Lessons 16 and 21.

### 9.5. Word order of object pronouns

When a single verb occurs with two objects, one is a direct object and one is an indirect object. If both objects are expressed by pronouns, the indirect object pronoun must precede the direct object one. These two object pronouns must occur together, in this sequence, adjacent to the verb. Here are two examples:

Сегá ти го дáвам.  
Ще им ги дáвам.

Now I'm giving it to you.  
I'll give them to them.

### 9.6. Time expressions: time of the day

Following are the names of the portions of the day, the adverbs locating an action within that time frame, and the greeting appropriate to that time of day. Upon taking leave of someone, one says *довíждане* during the day but *лéка нóщ* at night.

## Девети урок / Lesson 9

<i>time period</i>	<i>adverb of time</i>	<i>greeting</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>
сúтрин	сúтрин, сутринта́	добро́ у́тро!	morning
обя́д	на обя́д	до́бър де́н!	noon
следо́бед	следо́бед, след обя́д	до́бър де́н!	afternoon
вече́р	вече́р, вече́рта́	* до́бър вече́р!	evening
но́щ	през но́щта́	* до́бър вече́р!	night
полуно́щ	в полуно́щ		midnight

\* Although the word **вече́р** is usually feminine, it is masculine in the fixed expression **до́бър вече́р**. Note the accent of **до́бър** in these fixed expressions.

Usually, the definite forms of **сúтрин** and **вече́р** refer to a particular morning or evening, and the indefinite forms refer to the general idea of morning or evening. But the definite forms can also be used with the general meaning. For example:

### *specific*

Сутринта́ ймам срéща в 9 ч.      I have an appointment at 9 this morning.

Вечерта́ ще оти́да да го ви́дя.      I'll go see him this evening.

### *general*

Сúтрин ста́вам ра́но, а вече́р ля́гам къ́сно.      I get up early and go to bed late.

Сутринта́ оти́вам ра́но на ра́бота, а вече́рта́ се приби́рам уморе́н като ку́че.      I go to work early in the morning and come home at night tired as a dog.

The chart below gives the relative terms for the time of day, looking both forward and back from the vantage point of "today":

<i>- 2 days</i>	<i>- 1 day</i>	<i>NOW</i>	<i>+ 1 day</i>	<i>+ 2 days</i>
о́нзи де́н	вче́ра	дне́с	у́тре	дру́ги де́н
	вче́ра сутринта́	сутринта́	у́тре сутринта́	
	вче́ра следóбед	(дне́с) следóбед	у́тре следóбед	
	сно́щи	та́зи вече́р / * до́вече́ра	у́тре вече́р	
	ми́налата но́щ	та́зи но́щ	дру́гата но́щ	

\* Be careful to distinguish the adverb **до́вече́ра** "this evening", which refers to the forthcoming evening of the same day, from the prepositional phrase **до вече́ря** "until/before supper". Note also that **до́вече́ра** can be used only in an anticipatory sense. Once one is speaking in the present, one must use **та́зи вече́р** in the meaning "this evening".

### 9.7. Time expressions: days and months

Names for the days of the week are formed from several roots, although the "counting" principle is evident in several of them. Names of the months of the year are, as in English, derived from Latin.

#### *Days of the week:*

понеделник	Monday	четвъртък	Thursday
вторник	Tuesday	петък	Friday
сряда	Wednesday	събота	Saturday
		неделя	Sunday

The word for "week" is *седмица*.

#### *Months of the year:*

януари	January	юли	July
февруари	February	август	August
март	March	септември	September
април	April	октомври	October
май	May	ноември	November
юни	June	декември	December

The word for "month" is *месец*.

Days of the week are preceded either by the preposition **в** or by a modifier; and months of the year are preceded by the preposition **през**. When the date is given, the preposition **на** is used. For example:

Хайде да ходим на Витоша в неделя.	Let's go to Vitosha on Sunday.
Ходим на Витоша всяка неделя.	We go to Vitosha every Sunday.
Обикновено ходим на морето през [месец] август.	We usually go to the seashore in [the month of] August.
Ще тръгнем на 15-и август.	We'll leave on August 15.

**N.B.: Neither the days of the week nor the months of the year are capitalized in Bulgarian!**

### 9.8. Time expressions: seasons of the year

The four seasons (годишните времена) are as follows:

пролет	spring	есен	fall
лято	summer	зима	winter

All four names of the seasons can be preceded by the preposition **през**, in which case they are used with the definite article. **Пролет** and **есен** are feminine nouns, with definite forms **пролетта**, **есента**. With these two, the preposition **на** can also be used, in which case they are used in the indefinite form, and are written together with the preposition as one word. All four names can also appear without the preposition. In this case, **есен** and **пролет** can be used either with or without the article, but **лято** and **зима** must always be used with the article.

In theory, the definite forms refer to the season just ahead (or just past) and the indefinite forms refer to general time. In practice, however, they are used more or less interchangeably. For example:

(През) пролетта цветята цъфтят.	In spring, the flowers bloom.
Напролет съм някак по-весел.	For some reason, I'm happier in the spring.
(През) лятото ще ходим на морето.	This summer, we'll go to the seaside.
Лятото ще бъдем там, а не тук.	In the summer we'll be there, not here.
Гроздето зрее (през) есента.	Grapes ripen in the autumn.
Наесен децата ще започнат училище.	This autumn, the children will start school.
През зимата времето ще е студено.	It will be cold this winter.
Зимата е студена.	It's cold in the winter.

### 9.9. Time expressions: years, and numbers beyond 100

To speak of the years in Bulgarian, one needs to form numbers in the hundreds and thousands. These numerals are:

100	сто
200	двеста
300	триста
400	четирисотин
500	петстотин

600	шестстотин
700	седемстотин
800	осемстотин
900	деветстотин
1000	хиляда

Years are referred to by ordinal numbers. The year 1975, for example, is reckoned as the one thousand nine hundred and seventy-*fifth* year. Note that only the final number takes the ordinal form. Thus:

хиляда деветстотин седемдесет и пет-а годин-а      1975

Years are preceded by the preposition през. When years are written with numerals, the abbreviation г. (for година) follows. Sometimes the -a of the ordinal is added after the numeral, and sometimes it is omitted.

през 1975 г.	in 1975
през 1975-а г.	(same)

### 9.10. Time expressions: "next" and "last"

To refer to time periods just past or just ahead, Bulgarians use the words слéдващ "next" or минал "last". Both are participial forms functioning as adjectives; they must therefore agree with the nouns they modify. If the time period they refer to functions as the subject of the sentence, masculine forms will have the subject ending. Usually, however, they are used in adverbial phrases, and masculine forms will therefore have the object ending. The definite form is almost always used.

*subject usage, subject case*

Миналият мéсец бéше мнóго студén, а предишният не тóлкова.	Last month was very cold, but the month before not so much.
--	--

*adverbial usage, object case*

Слédващата сéдмица щe хóдим тáм.	We'll go there next week.
Тóй бéше във Вáрна миналия мéсец.	He was in Varna last month.

If the preceding or coming time periods are not the ones that are immediately past or ahead, respectively, the modifiers предишен "previous" or предстоящ "forthcoming" are used.

### 9.11. Conjunctions: като vs. както

The conjunctions като and кáкто are both translated roughly "as". The difference in meaning is that като refers to simultaneous actions, while кáкто expresses a relationship of similarity. The conjunction като also means "when".



## Девети урок / Lesson 9

Като минава вагоните, Веселин ги брой.	As he passes through the cars, Veselin counts them.
Важното е, както Джули казва, че не съм останал в Шумен.	The important thing is that, as Julie says, I didn't remain in Shumen.
Той закъснява както винаги. Паък ще изпусне влака!	He's late, as always. He's going to miss the train again!

Another difference between them is that **като** can also function as a preposition with a noun object following, whereas **както** can only be followed by a full phrase containing a verb.

### 9.12. Prepositions

A number of prepositions have idiomatic meanings when they function as a part of time expressions. Here is a review of the commonest of these:

в	неделя	on Sunday
на	15(-и) август	on August 15 <sup>th</sup>
през	август	in August
през	лятото	during the summer
през	1975 г.	in 1975
през	деня	during the day
през	нощта	at night
по	обяд	around noon

## EXERCISES

I. Rewrite the following sentences in the past tense, changing any adverbs of time to *вчера*, and changing the aspect as necessary.

1. Следобед научаваме новите думи.
2. Нádка раздава на пътниците по една рисúнка.
3. Кúчето скáча на леглóто.
4. Вие днес получавате óтговор на писмóто.
5. Децáта са глáдни и затová проявяват нетърпéние.
6. Пътниците слízат едiн след друг от влáка.
7. Сутринтá съм свободна и отiвам на кiно.

II. Rewrite the following sentences, changing plural to singular.

1. Прекáрахме приятни вéчери с мóите приятели.
2. В хотéлите iма свободни стáи.
3. Тóпло е. Отвори вратите и прозóрците!
4. Приятелките на Тánя знаят и други хúбави пéсни.
5. Днес ученичките и учениците ще полúчат колéти.
6. Тэнджерите, чайниците и лъжиците са на масите.
7. В тéзи квартали iма бóлници.
8. През юни нощите са кратки, а дните са дълги.

III. Rewrite the following sentences, changing all underlined nouns to the appropriate pronouns.

1. Нали си добрó момчé, Кáмене, отстъпи папагáла на Нádка.
2. На Нóва годiна родителите раздават на децáта подаръци.
3. Димiтър и Милéна нóсят на свекървата снимки.
4. Дéйвид предлага вестника на Джúли.
5. Бóйко поднася кафéто на гóстите.
6. Няма ли да покажете на Бóб къщата?
7. Ангел съобщáва на Дéйвид новините.

## ADDITIONAL GRAMMAR NOTES

### 9.2a. Aorist tense, continued

#### Optional stress shifts in the aorist

All verbs whose aorist theme vowel is the same as the present theme vowel have identical forms in the 3<sup>rd</sup> singular present and 3<sup>rd</sup> singular aorist. Some speakers of Bulgarian will shift the stress to the theme vowel in the aorist form to emphasize the fact that the form means "past" and not "present". This stress shift is acceptable only in non-prefixed forms. The possible forms, therefore, are:

	<i>present</i>		<i>simple aorist</i>		<i>prefixed aorist</i>
<i>1<sup>st</sup> singular</i>	хóд-я		хóд-их    от ход-íх		разхóд-их се
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> singular</i>	хóд-и		хóд-и    от ход-íи		разхóд-и се

Many speakers do not shift stress at all, and those who do will usually vacillate between stem stress and end stress in the aorist forms.

This stress shift is possible with all non-prefixed verbs which have the aorist theme vowel -и- or -а- (thus it applies also to certain of the aorist forms to be learned in subsequent lessons). However, none of the sentences, dialogues and reading selections in this textbook will exemplify this optional accentuation.

#### Aorist in -ox, continued

Verbs which form the aorist in -ox all belong to the e-conjugation. Their 1<sup>st</sup> singular present forms (the dictionary form) end in a consonant preceded by -а-. With a very few exceptions (which will be noted below), they all have end stress in the present. This fact can obscure the presence of an alternating stem vowel. since the -я- alternant appears only when the vowel is accented. Certain verbs of this group, therefore, have the stem vowel -е- throughout the present tense, but an alternating vowel in the aorist. The verbs **секá** and **облекá** are given as examples; the verb **съблекá** is conjugated according to the same format.

	<i>PRESENT</i>	<i>AORIST</i>	<i>PRESENT</i>	<i>AORIST</i>
<i>1<sup>st</sup> singular</i>	сек-á	сяк-ох	облек-á	обляк-ох
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> singular</i>	сеч-эш	сеч-е	облеч-эш	облеч-е
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> singular</i>	сеч-е	сеч-е	облеч-е	облеч-е
<i>1<sup>st</sup> plural</i>	сеч-ем	сяк-охме	облеч-ем	обляк-охме
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> plural</i>	сеч-ете	сяк-охте	облеч-ете	обляк-охте
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> plural</i>	сек-ат	сяк-оха	облек-ат	обляк-оха

Note the shift of the stem-final -к in these verbs to -ч whenever the theme vowel (either present or aorist) is -е. Note also that not every verb of this class with stem-final -к has an alternating vowel. The aorist tense of текá, for instance, is тéкох.

The motion verb отíда is one of the few verbs within this class with no shifting stress. The other three are also motion verbs: вля́за, сля́за, and изля́за. Thus, the aorist of вля́за is вля́зох. The 3<sup>rd</sup> singular forms of these verbs are alike in present and aorist: both are влéзе. There is no optional stress shift to the end in the aorist forms of this group.

### 9.3a. Feminine nouns in a consonant

Because these nouns end in a consonant, there is always a sequence of [consonant + т] in the definite form. If this sequence contains [т + т], *both* consonants are pronounced. This is done by lengthening the “t” sound.

It is not always possible to know which nouns ending in a consonant will be feminine; most must be learned. Because all nouns ending in the suffix -ост are feminine, their gender is predictable and they have no need of special marking. Other feminine nouns ending in a consonant will be marked as feminine in glossary listings, in the following manner:

вечер, -та́

### 9.5a. Word order of object pronouns

If a verb takes two objects and both are pronouns, the indirect object must precede the direct one. This sequence (*IND-DIR*) obeys all the word order rules learned earlier:

- it *cannot* begin a sentence
- it *must* occur directly adjacent to the verb
- if ли is present, it must *follow* this particle
- if ще, да or не is present, it must be placed *between* this particle and the verb

Examples are given on the next page, with the numbering cumulative across lessons. The rules are straightforward, but it will take a great deal of practice before their implementation feels natural. Because unaccented words are pronounced together with the following (or preceding) word, they are harder to decipher when heard, and harder to produce quickly if one must plan one's sentence consciously. The more unaccented words there are strung together, the more concerted attention it is necessary to pay.

- (34) 

Давам	ти	ги.
<i>verb</i>	<i>IND</i>	<i>DIR</i>

 I give them to you.
- (35) 

Сегá	ти	ги	давам.
	<i>IND</i>	<i>DIR</i>	<i>verb</i>

 Now I'm giving them to you.
- (36) 

Даваш	ли	ми	ги?
<i>verb</i>	<i>INT</i>	<i>IND</i>	<i>DIR</i>

 Are you giving them to me?
- (37) 

Не	ти	ги	давам.
<i>Neg.</i>	<i>IND</i>	<i>DIR</i>	<i>verb</i>

 I'm not giving them to you.
- (38) 

Ще	ти	ги	даде	ли?
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>IND</i>	<i>DIR</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>INT</i>

 Will he give them to you?
- (39) 

Няма	да	ти	ги	даде.
<i>neg</i>	<i>Conj.</i>	<i>IND</i>	<i>DIR</i>	<i>verb</i>

 He won't give them to you.

#### 9.6a. Time expressions: periods of the day

There is a relatively close fit between English and Bulgarian as concerns words for the periods of the day. Several non-correspondences should be noted, however. First, Bulgarians use **сутрин** to refer to the earlier part of the morning, usually until about 9:00 or (at the latest) 10:00. The period between that and 12:00 noon is usually called **преди обяд**.

The corresponding expression, **след обяд**, can mean either the early afternoon, or the entire afternoon. For the idea "noon", Bulgarians invariably say **обяд**, but for the idea "midnight" they can say either **полунощ** or **12 часа през нощта**. Finally, the early hours of the morning when one is still usually asleep can also be referred to as part of the night.

в чéтири часá през нощта	at 4 in the morning
в чéтири часá сутринта	[same]

Second, the words for "noon" and "evening" are similar to the words for the meals eaten at those times:

time of day	обяд	noon	вечер	evening
meal	обед	lunch	вечеря	supper

The word **обяд** is used with both meanings, but the word **обед** means only "lunch".

Adjectives referring to times of the day are in general derived directly from the word for that time by addition of the suffix **-ен**. In a few cases, the stem contains the suffix **-ш-**, and, in one instance, the stem is different.

<i>time of day</i>	<i>stem</i>	<b>+ ен &gt;</b>	<i>adjective</i>
с-утрин	утрин-	<b>+ ен-</b>	утринен, утринна
обяд	обед-	<b>+ ен-</b>	обеден, обедна
следобед	следобед-	<b>+ ен-</b>	следобеден, следобедна
вечер	вечер-	<b>+ ен-</b>	вечерен, вечерна
нощ	нощ-	<b>+ ен-</b>	нощен, нощна
днес	днеш-	<b>+ ен-</b>	днешен, днешна
вчера	вчера-ш	<b>+ ен-</b>	вчерашен, вчерашна
утре	утре-ш-	<b>+ ен-</b>	утренен, утрешна
снощи	снощ-	<b>+ ен-</b>	снощен, снощна

These adjectives are used frequently in phrases such as **днешен ден** “today”, **обедно време** “noontime”, **нощно време** “nighttime”, and the like.

Similar adjectives are formed from the adverb **сега** and the future form **бъде**: these mean “present” and “future”, respectively. They are used to refer to time periods in general and to two of the verbal tenses already learned (the names of other verbal tenses will be learned later):

<b>сегашно време</b>	present tense
<b>бъдеще време</b>	future tense

### 9.7a. Time expressions: days of the week

Calendars in Bulgaria begin the week with Monday (as opposed to most countries in the West, where they begin with Sunday). The fact that Monday is the first day of the week can be seen from the names for Tuesday (**вторник**), Thursday (**четвъртък**) and Friday (**петък**), which contain the stems of the words 2<sup>nd</sup>, 4<sup>th</sup> and 5<sup>th</sup>, respectively. The fact that Wednesday (**сряда**) is considered the middle day of the week can be seen from its name, which is a variant form the word **сряда** “middle”.

The names for the other three days have a different origin. The word for Saturday (**събота**) comes from the word “sabbath”; and the word for Sunday (**неделя**) comes from an old Slavic word meaning “no-work”. The name for Monday (**понеделник**) means simply “that which comes after Sunday”. Finally, the word for “week” (**седмица**) contains the number 7, corresponding to the seven days of the week.

### 9.10a. Adverbs with time expressions

The conventions "B.C." and "A.D." are expressed in two different ways. The cutoff point (the birth of Christ) is expressed either as *новата ера* "the new era" or *Рождество Христово* "the birth of Christ". The phrases are:

преди н.е.	or	преди Р.Хр.	B.C.
от н.е.	or	след Р.Хр.	A.D.

Although the phrase *следващата година* "next year" exists, the adverb *догодина* is used much more frequently in this meaning.

To focus on the length and duration of a period of time, the modifier *цял/цели* "entire, all" is used. It is sometimes used with the preposition *през*, but more frequently it occurs without a preposition. Like all adjectives, this modifier has both definite and indefinite forms. In theory, definite forms refer to a particular time period and indefinite ones to generalized situations.

In the case of *цял*, however (as in the case of the seasons), this distinction is being lost. Today Bulgarians use both forms in both meanings (to refer to a particular time period, or to state a general observation). Context is usually sufficient to tell which is meant.

Днес цял / целия ден ще четá, а вечерта ще изведá кучето на разходка.	I'll read all day long, and in the evening walk the dog.
Цяла / цялата сутрин го няма.	He hasn't showed up the entire morning.
Цяла / цялата вечер ще слушаме музика.	We'll listen to music the whole evening.

If the preposition *по* is present, only the indefinite form of *цял* can be used. Conversely, if duration is expressed with the preposition *през*, only the definite form (either of *цял* or of a noun) can be used. For example:

По цял ден приказва по телефона.	She talks on the phone all day. [= a whole day at a time]
Някои чакат по цели седмици.	Some people [have to] wait for weeks [at a time].
През целия ден ще съм заёт.	I'll be busy the whole day.
Следи го през цялото време какво прави.	She watches what he's doing the whole time.
Ще бъдем там през целия месец.	We'll be there the whole month.
Работя през деня, а спя през нощта.	I work in the daytime and sleep at night.

### 9.13. Subject inversion

The normal word order in Bulgarian, as in English, is "subject - predicate":

The kebabs	aren't important.
Кебапчетата	не са важни.
<i>subject</i>	<i>(negated) predicate</i>

English, in fact, must obey this word order rule. Only with certain sentences can one reverse the order of subject and predicate. Furthermore, in order to do so, one must usually reformulate the sentence considerably, often changing its meaning somewhat. Consider the sentences above, in which "the kebabs" is the subject, and "aren't important" is the predicate. Here are two ways one can invert the order of subject and predicate in this sentence in English. Note that each makes fairly complex changes in word order, and that the second sentence even splits the old predicate into two different clauses:

What's	important is	not	the kebabs.
	<i>(old predicate,</i>	<i>negated)</i>	<i>old subject</i>
It's	not	the kebabs	that are important.
	<i>(negation)</i>	<i>old subject</i>	<i>subordinating old predicate</i>
			<i>conjunction</i>

Bulgarian, however, can reverse the order of subject and predicate of any sentence, and can do so without making any other changes in the sentence. This process is called "subject inversion" because the placement of the subject is inverted with respect to the normal word order. The effect of this shift is to focus more attention on the subject. The first of the sentences given below is neutral. The second suggests that while the kebabs themselves aren't important, perhaps something else is.

Кебапчетата	не са важни.	The kebabs aren't important.
<i>subject</i>	<i>predicate</i>	
Не са важни	кебапчетата.	The kebabs aren't important...
<i>predicate</i>	<i>subject</i>	



## **SAMPLE SENTENCES**

1. -- Моля, дай ми ръкавиците.  
-- Няма да ти ги дам. Те са мръсни.
2. -- Водата в чайника ври. Искаш ли чай?  
-- Да, донеси ми го в стаята.
3. Търговецът купува стоката на едро. Продавам му я евтино.
4. Късно е. Филмът по телевизията вече е минал.
5. Ангел не е тук. Заминал е за Варна.
6. Легнал е да спи. Изпитът е свършил.
7. Слънцето грее през деня, а луната през нощта.
8. Ще те видя през другата седмица.
9. През следващата година той ще учи български.
10. Цял ден спя, защото работя цяла нощ.
11. Вечер не е много работоспособен. Вечер гледаме телевизия.
12. По обед магазините са затворени. Ще позвъним по телефона на обед.  
Бабага спи следобед.
13. През зимата слънцето залязва рано следобед, а през лятото -- късно вечер.
14. Довечера ще слушаме музика. Утре сутринта заминаваме.
15. Вече е обедно време, а моят обед още не е готов.
16. Много трудно намерихме добра учителка по английски за детето.
17. Кой ви даде адреса на този лекар?
18. Камен сутринта изяде две ябълки, три сандвича с кашкавал и един сладолед. И сега пак е гладен. Страшен апетит има това дете.

## SENTENCES FOR TRANSLATION

1. All the knives, forks and spoons are in the cupboard. Will you give them to me?  
And where is the salt? Please give it to me also.
2. Marina has classes in the morning from 9 to 12. At noon she goes home for lunch. In the afternoon she works in the library from 2 to 4, and then she listens to music until dinnertime. In the evening after dinner she studies several more hours. Then she says "Good night" to everyone and goes to bed.
3. Has Ivo left? There's no sign of him anywhere. Last Friday he was here, but apparently this week he is traveling.
4. My birthday is next Tuesday. When is your birthday? I prefer to have a birthday in the fall. And you?
5. We came at 2:00 and went into the library. The girl there gave us each a book, and we read the books for two hours. We waited one more hour, and finally we left the library and went to the movies.
6. Julie got off the train, walked around the station a bit, and then got on again. She counted all the cars of the train, and then she counted them again.
7. She received his letter on July 5<sup>th</sup>, 1983, and read it during the night. The next day everyone asked her what was in the letter. "Nothing," she answered. His second letter came on August 31<sup>st</sup> of the following year. She also read it during the night, but on the next day, September 1<sup>st</sup>, 1984, no one asked her what was in the letter. Apparently everyone had forgotten. "I can give it to them," she thought. "Then they will remember." But she didn't give it to anyone.
8. 1968 was a very important year. Many people remember it very well.
9. Yesterday Marin bought 235 pencils and 547 notebooks. Apparently he wants to become a wholesale merchant. Will he sell them to us cheap?
10. "Don't eat all the fruits at once, please. Oh, did you eat them already?"  
"Yes, we certainly ate our fill."

## READING SELECTION

### Кореспонденция - (7)

14 ноември, Сан Франциско

Здравей Бойко,

Питах какво ни интересува. С една дума отговорът е лесен: всичко. Това ще е първото пътуване на децата в Европа. Готовим се за него с всички сили. Патриша прочете вече много книги за Европа. Искаме децата да запомнят това пътуване.

Патриша много обича и стара, и нова архитектура. Може да стои с часове в някоя барокова църква. В последно време архитектурата интересува и Емили, но засега я привлича предимно европейското средновековие. Подарихме ѝ няколко албума, но тя предпочита да пътува, а не да четё. Главно я интересуват обаче животните. Никой не ги обича повече от Емили. Тя има костенурка и хамстер. Не зная кой ще ги гледа, докато сме в България.

Нашите синове имат общи спортни интереси. Майкъл, както и Йво, плува, лови риба. Миналата неделя ходихме двамата за риба. Аз обичам да ходя пеша, за да си почивам от работата в болницата. Често излизаме на разходка.

Чакам с нетърпение твоите предложения. Поздрави всички,

Роберт

25 ноември, София

Драги Боб,

Радвам се да получа толкова бързо отговор. Това е твоето четвърто писмо. Виждам голям напредък в твоя български език. Дадох писмото на моите приятели да го видят. Никой не може да повярва, че учиш български без учител.

В България идете да видите Рилския манастир, средище на българската средновековна култура. Той е високо в Рила, на два часа път с кола от София. Това е мъжки манастир. Аз имам приятели там и мога да уредя да спим в манастира, а не в хотела. Сигурно ще е интересно да видите отвътре живота на истински православен манастир. От манастира можете да правите излети наоколо. Водата в рилските реки е чиста и много студена. Пъстървата такава вода обича. На Рила Майк ще може да хване истинска пъстърва. Рилският манастир има интересна византийска архитектура.

Йво праща специални поздрави на Емили. Той се радва, че тя обича животните, и много иска да ѝ покаже нашия таралéж. Таралéжът живее под леглото на Йво и плаши Яна.

Всичко хубаво,

Бойко

# GLOSSARY

адрес	address	други ден	the day after tomorrow
албум	album, picture-book	евтин	cheap, inexpensive
апетит	appetite	едър	large
април	April	ера	era
бароков	baroque ( <i>adj.</i> )	есен, -та	fall, autumn
благодарност	thanks, thankfulness	живот	life
бог	god, God	заязвам / заяза	set [of the sun]
Боже	Oh God, Oh my God	заминавам /	leave, depart
бъдещ	future ( <i>adj.</i> )	замина	
бъдеще време	future tense	запояням /	remember
весел	happy, gay, lively	запояням	
вечер, -та	evening	запояням	
вечер, вечерта	in the evening	засега	at present, for now
вечерен	evening ( <i>adj.</i> )	зима	winter
вечерям	eat dinner	златен	golden
време ( <i>pl.</i> времена)	verbal tense	знак	sign
вря	boil ( <i>intransitive</i> )	значение	meaning
вторник	Tuesday	зря	ripen
вчера	yesterday	извеждам / изведя	take out, lead away
вчера следобед	yesterday afternoon	извеждам кучето	walk the dog
вчера сутринта	yesterday morning	на разходка	
вчерашен	yesterday's	изяждам /	eat up
главен	main, chief	изям (-ядеш)	
главно	mainly	както	as
гледам	look after	квартал	district, living area
годишен	yearly, annual	костенурка	turtle
годишните времена	seasons [of the year]	кратък	short
готвя се	prepare, get ready	култура	culture
грея	warm, heat [up]	лек	light, easy
грозде	grapes ( <i>collective</i> )	лека нощ	good night
давам / дам (дадеш)	give	ловя	catch
двеста	two hundred	ловя риба	fish, catch fish
деветстотин	nine hundred	луна	moon
декември	December	лято ( <i>pl.</i> лета)	summer
Ден на благодарността	Thanksgiving Day	май	May
днешен	today's	месец	month
днешен ден	this very day	минал	past
добро утро	good morning	може би	maybe
добър вечер	good evening	мръсен	dirty
	( <i>fixed accent</i> )		
довечера	this evening	н.е. = новата ера	(see p. 184)
докато	while, until		

# Девети урок / Lesson 9

на ёдро	wholesale	през ноцта	at night
навесен	in the fall	през 1975 г.	during 1975
наоколо	around, round about	привличам /	attract, draw
напредък	progress, gain	привлекá (-чеш)	
напролет	in the spring	приказвам	talk, converse
научавам /	learn	приятен	pleasant
науча (-иш)		пролет, -та	spring
наяждам се /	eat one's fill,	пуканка (sg. rare)	[piece of] popcorn
наям се (-ядеш се)	gorge on	пъстърва	trout
ноември	November		
нощ, -та	night	работоспособен	efficient, productive
нощен	night (adj.)	Р.Хр. = Рождество Христово	
нощно време	nighttime	разходка	walk, stroll
няма значение	it doesn't matter	рано	early
		река	river
обеден	lunch, noon (adj.)	риба	fish
обедно време	lunchtime	родител	parent
обяд	lunch, noon	рождество	Christmas
онзи ден	day before yesterday	ръкавица	glove
осемстотин	eight hundred		
останало	remaining, left, left-over	с всички сили	with all one's strength, full tilt
от н.е.	A.D.	с една дума	in a word
от Р.Хр.	A.D.	с часовé	for hours [on end]
отвътре	from within	сандвич	sandwich
		свежърва	mother-in-law (of wife)
пак	again	сегашен	present-day, current
папгагал	parrot	сегашно време	present tense
песен, -та	song	седемстотин	seven hundred
(pl. песни)		сека (-чеш)	cut
петстотин	five hundred	сигурно	surely, certainly
петък	Friday	син, -ът	son
пеша	on foot	(pl. синове)	
пипам	touch, handle	скачам /	jump
плаша (-иш)	frighten	скоча (-иш)	
плувам	swim	слава	glory
подарявам / подаря	give (away), give a present	слава Бóгу	thank God
	call	след обяд	afternoon, after lunch
позвънявам /		след Р.Хр.	A.D.
позвъня		следобеден	afternoon (adj.)
полунощ	midnight	слънце	sun
помощ, -та	help	слънцето грее	the sun is shining
поне	at least	снощен	last night's
понеделник	Monday	снощи	yesterday evening, last night
посолявам / посоля	salt		
преди н.е.	B.C.	сол, -та	salt
преди Р.Хр.	B.C.	солén	salted
предимно	primarily	солница	salt shaker
предишен	previous	специáлен	special
предложение	proposition, suggestion	спортен	sports (adj.)
		средище	center
предстоящ	forthcoming, impending	средновековен	medieval
		среща	meeting, appointment
през деня	in the daytime	сряда	Wednesday

## Девети урок / Lesson 9

ста́я	room	ха́мстер	hamster
сто́ка	goods, commodity	хва́щам / хва́на	grasp, seize, catch
стра́шен	terrible, fearful	хиля́да (pl. хиля́ди)	thousand
су́трин, -та́	morning	хо́дя за ри́ба	go fishing
су́трин, сутринта́	in the morning	хо́дя пеша́	go for a walk, walk [not ride]
та́зи ве́чер	this evening	хоте́л	hotel
та́зи но́щ	tonight	Христо́в	Christ's
тарале́ж	hedgehog		
тека́ (-чеш)	flow	цъфтя́	bloom
три́ста	three hundred	четвъртък	Thursday
търго́вец	merchant	че́тиристотин	four hundred
уре́ждам / уредя́	arrange, settle	ше́стстотин	six hundred
у́тре ве́чер	tomorrow evening		
у́тре сутринта́	tomorrow morning	ю́ни	June
у́трешен	tomorrow's		
у́тринен	morning (adj.)	я́дене	food, meal
у́тро	morning	ям, яде́ш	eat
февруа́ри	February		

## CULTURAL COMMENTARY

### School systems: first day of school

School in Bulgaria always begins on September 15th. Children who begin first grade on that date are honored with small gifts.

### Religion

Bulgarians belong to the Eastern Orthodox church, called in Bulgarian **правосла́вна църква**. During the Ottoman occupation, the church was administered from Constantinople by the Greek bishopric. The independent Bulgarian exarchate was established in 1870-71. Many Bulgarians today are practicing Orthodox Christians, and the cultural heritage of Orthodoxy has been very important in Bulgarian history.

Although it was technically possible to practice religion openly during the socialist regime, it was extremely difficult to do so without surrendering the possibility of social or professional advancement. Christmas was not celebrated, and the main winter holiday was New Year's. Christmas is now celebrated once more, but it has become a habit for many to think of the general holiday period as "New Year's."



## LESSON 10

### **DIALOGUE**

#### А ви́с же́нен ли сте?

Ангел: Аз съвсѣм забравих, че има́м дома́ти в ча́нтата. От на́шата гради́на. Мно́го върва́т с кеба́пчетата. Заповяда́йте!

// Всі́чки взі́мат по еди́н дома́т и благода́рят. //

Ангел: Вземе́те о́ще. Страхо́тни дома́ти, а Де́йвид?

Де́йвид: Да́, арома́тни са.

Ангел: Вземе́те, де! Вземе́те о́ще по еди́н. Аз има́м мно́го.

Джули: Взѣ́х еди́н, сти́га то́лькова. Благода́ря!

Надка: Ма́мо, Ка́мен взе́ вто́ри дома́т!

Ангел: Бра́во, мо́ето момче́, ра́двам се, че ти е по вкуса́.

Владимир: Мно́го вку́сно. Благода́ря ви мно́го за всі́чко! А сега́ да си върва́. Бра́т ми си́гурно се чу́ди къде́ изче́знах.

Веселин: А, зна́чи, Гео́рги ти е бра́т. Вижда́м, че прилі́ча на те́бе. То́й по-голя́м ли е от те́бе, или по-ма́лтък?

Владимир: По́-голя́м е. С пе́т годи́ни. То́й е же́нен, има́ ве́че две́ деца́.

Камен: Като ме́не и На́дка, нали́? Едно́ момче́ и едно́ момі́че?

Владимир: Да́, то́чно. Са́мо че те́хните са по́-ма́лки от ва́с.

Камен: Ко́е е по́-голя́мо? Момче́то ли?

Владимир: Да́. Синѣ́т им ста́на на че́тири годи́ни, а дъще́ря им е на две́.

Камен: Чи́чо, ти́ че́сто ли хо́диш у тях? Кажі́ ни за тях! Момче́то има́ ли си ста́я?

Таня: Ка́мене, мълчи́. Пусні́ чове́ка да си трѣ́гне. Ня́ма ну́жда всі́чко да зна́еш.

Владимир (на Таня): Оставёте го да пита, не сё притеснявайте. Аз не бързам.

(на Камен): Плэменниците ми живёят в една стая с родителите си. Но тяхната стая е голяма и светла. Децата нямат своя стая.

Камен: Татко не ни дава да имаме отделни стаи. Той има кабинет, но никога не си е вкъщи. Не разбирам защо не мога да спя в неговия кабинет. Кабинетът му е голям и светъл.

Таня(на Камен): Камене, нали чу какво ти казаха? Стига толкова!

(на Владимир): Мъжът ми работи извън София, и често пътува. Вярно е, че рядко го виждаме.

Веселин: И аз постоянно пътувам. Миналия месец пропуснах световното първенство по футбол покрай тези пусти командировки. Все ме няма вкъщи.

Дейвид: А вие женен ли сте?



Theater, downtown Varna



## BASIC GRAMMAR

## 10.1. Aorist tense, continued

Verbs of the *e*-conjugation form the aorist tense according to several different types. Those verbs whose stem ends in the consonant *-н-*, such as *ста́н-а*, *сре́щн-а* or *вѣ́рн-а*, all take the aorist theme vowel *-а-*. Verbs whose stems end in *-ш* or *-ж* also take the aorist theme vowel *-а-*. Before this theme vowel, these stem-final consonants appear as *-с* and *-з*, respectively. Here are the present and aorist conjugations of these two types. Representing the first is the aorist of *ста́на*, and representing the second is the aorist of *пи́ша*.

	PRESENT	AORIST	PRESENT	AORIST
1 <sup>st</sup> singular	ста́н-а	ста́н-ах	пи́ш-а	пи́с-ах
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	ста́н-еши	ста́н-а	пи́ш-еши	пи́с-а
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	ста́н-е	ста́н-а	пи́ш-е	пи́с-а
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	ста́н-ем	ста́н-ахме	пи́ш-ем	пи́с-ахме
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	ста́н-ете	ста́н-ахте	пи́ш-ете	пи́с-ахте
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	ста́н-ат	ста́н-аха	пи́ш-ат	пи́с-аха

The second type (*пи́ша*, aorist *пи́сах*) also includes *ка́жа* (aorist *ка́зах*). These are the verbs which have been identified in glossary lists according to the format

пи́ша (-еши)

in order to differentiate them from verbs whose stems also end in *-ш* or *-ж* but which belong to the *и*-conjugation, and are identified in glossary lists according to the format

пу́ша (-иши).

Note that *only* in the former group, the *e*-conjugation verbs, is the *-ш* (or *-ж*) shifted to *-с* (or *-з*) in the aorist. Since this group of verbs is much smaller than the other, the student should learn the few verbs which belong to it. S/he can then predict that all other verbs whose stems end in *-ш* or *-ж* will belong to the *и*-conjugation.

A third type includes verbs whose 1<sup>st</sup> singular ends in *-я* preceded by *-и* or *-у*. These verbs have *no* theme vowel: the aorist endings are added directly to the verb root. In the verbs *взе́ма*, *по́ема* and *прие́ма*, which also belong to this group, the stem-final consonant *-м-* is dropped in the aorist. Representing this type are the aorist conjugations of *пи́я* and *взе́ма*, with the present given alongside for comparison:

	PRESENT	AORIST	PRESENT	AORIST
1 <sup>st</sup> singular	пѣ-я	пѣ-х	взѣм-а	взѣ-х
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	пѣ-еш	пѣ	взѣм-еш	взѣ
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	пѣ-е	пѣ	взѣм-е	взѣ
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	пѣ-ем	пѣ-хме	взѣм-ем	взѣ-хме
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	пѣ-ете	пѣ-хте	взѣм-ете	взѣ-хте
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	пѣ-ят	пѣ-ха	взѣм-ат	взѣ-ха

### 10.2. Long form pronoun objects

Bulgarian has two types of pronoun objects, "long" and "short". The short forms were learned in Lessons 5 and 7. The long forms are given below, together with the short forms for comparison. The primary usage of the long form pronoun objects is after prepositions.

	Direct object		Indirect object	
	short	long	short	long
1 <sup>st</sup> singular	ме	мѣне	ми	на мѣне
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	те	тѣбе	ти	на тѣбе
3 <sup>rd</sup> sing. feminine	я	нѣя	ѣ	на нѣя
3 <sup>rd</sup> sing. masculine	го	нѣго	му	на нѣго
3 <sup>rd</sup> sing. neuter	(= masc. form)		(= masc. form)	
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	ни	наѣ	ни	на наѣ
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	ви	ваѣ	ви	на ваѣ
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	ги	тѣх	им	на тѣх

Here are examples of the use of these forms after prepositions. For the use of the comparative degree of adjectives, see below.

Тоѣ по-голяѣ ли е от тѣбе?  
 Като мѣне и Надка, налѣ?  
 Техните са по-малки от ваѣ.  
 Кажѣ ни за тѣх!

Is he older than you?  
 Like me and Nadka, right?  
 Theirs are younger than you.  
 Tell us about them!

### 10.3. Short form possessive constructions

Bulgarian also has long and short ways of expressing possession. The long forms are моѣ, твоѣ, etc. (similar in usage to English "my", "your", etc.). The short form possessives are identical to the short form indirect object pronouns.

## Десети урок / Lesson 10

The short form possessives are more frequently used, especially if the relationship between possessor and possessed is a close one. In this usage, the noun which is possessed *must* be in the definite form, and the short form possessive pronoun follows *immediately* after the definite article. The possessive forms express the identity of the possessor (in 3<sup>rd</sup> singular, this also includes the gender).

The rule requiring short form possessives to follow immediately after the definite article also applies when the possessed noun is modified by an adjective.

Синът им е на четири години. Познаваш ли сина им?	Their son is four years old. Do you know their son?
Кабинетът му е голям и светъл. Мъжът ми работи много.	His office is big and light. My husband works a lot.
Плѐменниците ми живеят в една стая.	My nieces/nephews live in the same room.
Голямата ми чанта е там.	My big bag is over there.

Only nouns of family relationship are exempt from this rule. When these nouns occur in the singular before a short form possessive, they must be in the indefinite form, except for *мъж* "husband" and *син* "son", which *do* take the definite article before the possessive short form. For example:

Дъщеря им е на две години. Брат ми идва сега. Женá ви къде работи? Сестра ѝ рисува много добре.	Their daughter is two years old. My brother is coming along now. Where does your wife work? Her sister draws very well.
--	--

but:

На колко години е синът им? Мъжът ви къде работи?	How old is their son? Where does your husband work?
--	--

All plural forms with short-form possessives are definite, however. Compare the difference between singular and plural in the following:

Сестра ми заминава за Варна. Сестрите ми са много заети.	My sister is leaving for Varna. My sisters are very busy.
---	--

### 10.4. The usage of *свой* and *си*

Bulgarian, like all Slavic languages, has a separate category of reflexive possessive forms whose function is to indicate that the possessor of the object noun and the subject of the sentence are the same. These forms are translated variously -- "his", "his own", "my", "my own", etc.

## Десети урок / Lesson 10

If the subject and the possessor are the same, then these possessive forms -- **свѳѳ** (long) or **си** (short) -- *must* be used. Although it may seem evident from the context who the possessor is (as is the case in most English sentences), if a form other than **свѳѳ**/**си** is used, a Bulgarian will necessarily conclude that the possessor is someone other than the subject. For example:

### Possessor of the diary:

Тѳѳ пѳѳе в днѳѳвника си.	She is writing in her diary.	the writer another female
Тѳѳ пѳѳе в днѳѳвника ѳѳ.	(same)	

If the possessed noun is the subject of the sentence, the modifier **свѳѳ**/**си** cannot be used. Here are examples in which the English "their"/"their own" is rendered by different Bulgarian possessive forms. In the first and third sentences, the reflexive forms **свѳѳ** and **си** mark the noun possessed by the subject of the sentence. In the second sentence, however, the possessed noun is the subject; therefore the modifier **тѳѳен** must be used in place of **свѳѳ**.

Плѳѳенниците ми живѳѳят в еднѳѳ стѳѳя с родѳѳтелите си.	My niece and nephew live in the same room as their parents.
Но тѳѳхната стѳѳя ѳѳ голяма и хѳѳбава.	But their room is nice and big.
Децаѳѳта нѳѳмат свѳѳя стѳѳя.	The children do not have their own room.

Note also that the English translation uses "their" in the first two instances above, and "their own" in the third. This is because in the first two cases the identity of the possessor is obvious and the idea of possession is not central to the meaning of the sentence. In the third, however, the identity of the possessor is what the sentence is about. Therefore, the emphatic "own" is added.

The contrast between Bulgarian and English lies in the fact that English speakers may choose whether or not (through the addition of the word "own") to introduce the extra idea of reflexivity. But Bulgarian speakers do not have a choice -- they are obliged to mark every possessed object for the identity of the possessor. When translating into Bulgarian, therefore, always verify whether the possessor and the subject are identical or different, and choose the appropriate possessive form accordingly.

### 10.5. The particle **си** with verbs, continued

Speakers of Bulgarian frequently add the particle **си** to a verb, thereby giving the verb a meaning of greater involvement and intimacy. It is difficult to translate this added meaning precisely, since in most cases it depends on the verb itself; sometimes it is not even possible to express this added distinction in English.

## Десети урок / Lesson 10

When added to motion verbs, for instance, the particle **си** suggests that the speaker is moving towards "his/her own space". This can mean "go home", "return to where one came from" or simply to "move off in one's own undefined direction". The destination is not necessarily "home", but is rather the very loosely defined idea of "space one is attached to at the moment". Here are several examples (note that none of the several possible translations states explicitly that "home" or "back" is the intended destination):

А сегá да си вървя.

And now I'll be off.  
And now I'll get moving.  
And now I need to move on.

Пуснѝ човéка да си трѝгне!

Let the man get going!  
Let the man leave!  
Let the man get on his way!

When added to verbs of state or possession, the particle **си** increases the sense of connectedness between possessor and possessed:

Момчéто ѝма ли си стáя?

Does the boy have his own room?  
Does the boy have a room to himself?

Тóй ѝма кабинéт, но нѝкога  
не сѝ е вкѝщи.

He has a study, but he's never home.  
He has a study, but he never spends  
any time in it.

### 10.6. Comparative and superlative degree of adjectives

Comparison of adjectives in Bulgarian is straightforward. The comparative degree (equivalent to "more + *adjective*" in English) is formed by prefixing **пó-** to the adjective, and the superlative degree (equivalent to "most + *adjective*" in English) is formed by prefixing **нáй-** to the adjective. The comparative and superlative degree of adverbs is formed in the same manner.

Each of these particles is accented. Comparative and superlative forms, therefore, each have *two* accents. The hyphen joining the particle and the adjective is a required part of Bulgarian spelling.

Тóй пó-голя́м ли е, или  
пó-ма́лък?

Is he older or younger?

Сестра́ ми е нáй-ма́лката.  
Пише́те пó-чéсто!

My sister is the youngest.  
Write more often!

The English “than” and “of” in comparative sentences are both expressed in Bulgarian by the preposition *от*. When the comparison is with a verb, the conjunction *откóлкото* is used.

Тóй е пó-голям от мéне.	He is older than me.
Тя́ е на́й-ма́лката от вси́чки.	She is the youngest of all.

Тóй е пó-у́мен, откóлкото изглéжда.	He's smarter than he looks.
--	-----------------------------

Пишéте ни пó-чéсто, откóлкото пи́шете сегá.	Write us oftener than you do now.
--	--------------------------------------

Superlatives can also be used simply to magnify the meaning of an adjective.

В това́ учи́лище учени́ците у́чат на́й-разли́чни неща́.	Pupils in that school learn all sorts of things.
--	---

### 10.7. Masculine nouns ending in a vowel

Certain masculine nouns denoting human beings end in either *-a* or *-o*. The plural of these nouns is always *-и*. It is added directly to the stem of nouns whose singular is *-a*, but is preceded by the suffix *-овци-* in nouns whose singular ends in *-o*.

All these nouns carry a certain emotional overtone; the most common ones denote family relationships. For instance:

<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>
бащ-á	бащ-и́	father
дяд-о	дяд-овци́	grandfather
чич-о	чич-овци́	uncle (father's side)
вуйч-о	вуйч-овци́	uncle (mother's side)
тáтк-о	тáтк-овци́	Dad

The noun *колéг-а* “colleague” also belongs in this group. It refers either to a male colleague or to the general category; a female colleague is *колéжка*.

Like all nouns ending in *-a* or *-o*, these nouns take a rhyming article. Adjectives, articles or pronouns which agree with (or refer to) them, however, must be in the masculine form. For example:

Дядото седи́ с децáта. Тóй им разкáзва за стáрото врéме.	Grandpa is sitting with the children. He's telling them about the old days.
---	---

## Десети урок / Lesson 10

Бащата на Лиляна не е стар.	Lilyana's father is not old.
Моят баща говори с твоя дядо.	My father is talking with your grandfather.

Nicknames for male persons also frequently end in -o. Plurals of these names are formed with -овци, but they are rarely encountered.

<i>proper name</i>	<i>nickname</i>	<i>proper name</i>	<i>nickname</i>
Владимир	Влад-о	Александър	Саш-о
Димитър	Митк-о	Петър	Петъ-о

### 10.8. Prepositions

(a) The preposition *y* means "at the home of" or "among". Be careful to differentiate this from *при*, which means "at, with, in the presence of" (wherever that person may be at the moment). For example:

Ела у дома!	Come over to the/our house!
Стои при мене!	Stay by me!
Отиват у вас на гости.	They're going over to visit you.
Отивам при него за съвет.	I'm going to him for advice.
Завеждам децата у учителката (на гости).	I'm taking the children over to their teacher's house.
Завеждам децата при учителката.	I'm taking the children to see the teacher.
Певецът предизвиква възторг у публиката.	The singer enraptured [= evoked rapture in] the audience.

(b) The prepositions *от* and *с* are used in phrases of comparison as follows:

Камен е по-голям от Надка.	Kamen is older than Nadka.
Той е по-голям с две години.	He is older by two years.
Тя е най-малка от всичките.	She is the youngest of all.

(c) When used after verbs of communication, the preposition *за* means "about".

Кажете ни за тях!	Tell us about them!
Носи съобщение за колет.	She has got a notice about a package.

## EXERCISES

I. Replace the underlined nouns or phrases by the appropriate pronouns.

1. Слушай баща си, той на лошо няма да те научи.
2. Камене, слушай родителите си като Нádка.
3. У Милéна и Димитър всеки ден има гости.
4. Кажй на Ангел да пише по-често на майка си за Дейвид.
5. А на мама и татко няма ли да дадеш бонбон?
6. Съседът благодарй на бояджията за хубавата му работа.
7. Учителката пита децата за писателите.

II. Fill in the blank with an appropriate possessive pronoun.

1. Знаеш ли, къде е женá \_\_\_\_\_?
2. Сутрин той разговáря с кúчето \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Едното писмó е за мене, а другото за сестра \_\_\_\_\_. Аз прочíтам първо \_\_\_\_\_, а после \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Пётър казва: "Запознайте се, това е женá \_\_\_\_\_." Ивáн казва: "Женá \_\_\_\_\_ сигурно знае за мене. Ние сме старй приятели." Пётър казва: "Аз често разказвам на женá \_\_\_\_\_ за тебе."
5. В неделя Тánя и сестра \_\_\_\_\_ водят \_\_\_\_\_ деца на цирк. Тánя казва на сестра \_\_\_\_\_: "\_\_\_\_\_ деца много се разбират с \_\_\_\_\_."
6. Бóб получава честитки от \_\_\_\_\_ приятели и от приятелите на Патриша. \_\_\_\_\_ приятели живеят в Бóстън, а \_\_\_\_\_ в Чикаго.
7. Две съседки разговáрят. Едната казва: "Моля те, пусни \_\_\_\_\_ котка да поиграе с \_\_\_\_\_ деца в градината."

III. Rewrite each sentence in the past tense, replacing всеки ден or сегá with вчéра.

1. Борýна всеки ден пише писмá на приятелките си.
2. Децата пият всеки ден топло мляко на закуска.
3. Всеки ден след вечеря тй взímаш кúчето да го разхóдиш.
4. Писмóто е готóво. Сегá го пýскам в пóщенската кутия.
5. Камен и Нádка всяка сутрин казват на майка си "добро úтро".
6. Сегá чýваме училищния звънец.
7. Сегá влакът пристíга на гара Сóфия.



## ADDITIONAL GRAMMAR NOTES

### 10.1a. Aorist tense, continued

Verbs like **пи́ша** and **ка́жа** shift the stem-final consonant in the aorist form. This consonant shift is the same one that was seen between certain perfective and derived imperfective aspect forms. (Derived imperfectives will be discussed in more detail in Lesson 18.)

consonant: ш or ж	consonant: с or ж	
<i>perfective</i>	<i>imperfective</i>	<i>aorist</i>
опи́ш-а	опис-вам	опис-ах
разка́ж-а	разказ-вам	разказ-ах

The verbs **къ́пя** “bathe” and **ка́пя** “drip, leak” belong to the *e*-conjugation, and form their aorists with the theme vowel *-а-* (**къ́пах**, etc. and **ка́пах** etc.). Their 1<sup>st</sup> singular present forms, in *-я*, are irregular.

Verbs whose 1<sup>st</sup> singular ends in *-я* preceded by *-у* or *-и* (e.g. **пи́я**, **чу́я**) lack a theme vowel in the aorist. This group also includes verbs in *-ая* if they have at least two syllables preceding the ending. Thus, **копа́я** and **позна́я** belong to this group, as seen below (only 1<sup>st</sup> singular and 1<sup>st</sup> plural forms are given). The verb **зна́я**, whose aorist will be learned in the next lesson, does *not* belong to this group.

	PRESENT	AORIST		PRESENT	AORIST
1 <sup>st</sup> singular	копа́я	копа́х	позна́я	позна́я	позна́х
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	копа́ем	копа́хмe	позна́ем	позна́ем	позна́хмe

### 10.2a. Long form pronoun objects

Short form pronouns have different shapes for indirect and direct objects. Long form pronouns, however, function like nouns. The object form alone has the meaning “direct”, and the object form preceded by **на** has the meaning “indirect”.

	direct	indirect
Noun object	Ка́мен	на Ка́мен
Pronoun object	ме́не	на ме́не

Third-person long form pronoun objects are similar to the possessive adjectives; this similarity can help the student remember them.

<i>pronouns</i>	3sg her не-я	3sg him/it него	3pl them тях
<i>possessive adjective (f.)</i> <i>possessive adjective (m.)</i>	3sg her(s) не-йна не-ин	3sg his/its него-ва него-в	3pl their(s) тях-на тех-ен

The long form reflexive pronoun, себе си, always appears with long and short forms together. This usage will be studied in more detail in Lesson 11. The pronouns мене and тебе are sometimes written and spoken without the final syllable. There is no difference in meaning. For example:

Ще дойдеш ли с мен?

Will you come with me?

### 10.3a. Word order in short form possessive constructions

Short form indirect object pronouns express relationship in two ways. They can be added to a noun, (e.g. брат му "his brother"), or they can depend on a form of the copula съм in predicative sentences. In the latter instance, indirect object pronouns follow the copula directly. This sequence (COP-IND) then follows the word order rules learned in Lesson 5: it must occur adjacent to the predicate (immediately before it if possible), and it must occur immediately after the negative or interrogative particles. Note that IND also applies to си in its meaning "verbal additive signifying greater intimacy", and that the same word order rules apply.

As in the case of all word order examples, numbering of the following examples is cumulative across lessons.

- (40) Ти си ми стар познат.  
subject COP IND pred. noun      You are an old acquaintance of mine.
- (41) Те са му верни приятели.  
subject COP IND pred. noun      They are my faithful friends.
- (42) Вие не сте му приятел.  
subject Neg. COP IND pred. noun      You're not his friend.
- (43) Ние никога не сме си вкъщи.  
subject Neg. COP IND pred. adverb      We're never at home.

### Word order with 3<sup>rd</sup> singular copula

If the copula form is 3<sup>rd</sup> singular, however, the word order is reversed. The sequence, to which the above rules also apply, is *IND-3<sup>rd</sup>COP*. Special care must be taken to learn this difference! Examples are given below.

- (44) А, значи Геóрги 

ти	е	брат.
<i>IND</i>	<i>3<sup>rd</sup>COP</i>	<i>pred. noun</i>

  
subject  
Oh, that means Georgi is your brother.
- (45) Позна́вам я, тя 

ми	е	коле́жка.
<i>IND</i>	<i>3<sup>rd</sup>COP</i>	<i>pred. noun</i>

  
subject  
I know her -- she is my colleague.
- (46) То́й ни́кога 

не	си	е	вкъщи.
<i>Neg.</i>	<i>IND</i>	<i>3<sup>rd</sup>COP</i>	<i>pred. adverb</i>

  
subject  
He's never at home.

The above rule will take on great importance when the student learns the past indefinite tense in Lesson 16, for it will also govern the ordering of pronoun objects with respect to the verbal auxiliary.

### Word order in negative interrogative sentences

When both negative and interrogative particles are present, either the copula OR the indirect object short form pronoun, whichever is first in sequence, is placed between them. It is important to remember that only *one* clitic can occur in this position. Examples are give below; this word order rule will be drilled in greater detail in Lesson 13.

- (47) Ти 

не	си	ли	му	приятел?
<i>Neg.</i>	<i>COP</i>	<i>INT</i>	<i>IND</i>	<i>pred. noun</i>

  
subject  
Aren't you his friend?
- (48) То́й 

не	ти	ли	е	приятел?
<i>Neg.</i>	<i>IND</i>	<i>INT</i>	<i>3<sup>rd</sup>COP</i>	<i>pred. noun</i>

  
subject  
Isn't he your friend?

## 10.4a. The usage of *сво́й* and *си*

When the possessor is other than 1<sup>st</sup> or 2<sup>nd</sup> person, Bulgarians must specify whether it is equivalent to the subject of the sentence or not: in the first case they must use *сво́й* / *си*, and in the second case they must use a non-reflexive possessor. When the possessor is 1<sup>st</sup> or 2<sup>nd</sup> person, Bulgarians theoretically have the option to use either reflexive or non-reflexive possessors.

In practice, however, they almost always use *сво́й* / *си*. If they are using a short form possessive, *си* is chosen almost exclusively. If a speaker uses a long form possessive, s/he will tend to use *сво́й* unless s/he wishes to place special emphasis on the possessive relationship, in which case s/he will use *мо́й*, *тво́й*, etc.

### 10.9. Kinship terms

All societies have terms for family relationships. Much of the Bulgarian terminology is organized in a manner similar to that of English. The following chart gives some of the major kinship terms:

	<i>male</i>	<i>female</i>	<i>generic</i>
<i>parent</i>	баща	майка	родител
<i>parent (affectionate)</i>	татко	мама	
<i>child</i>	син	дъщеря	дете
<i>sibling</i>	брат	сестра	
<i>grandparent</i>	баба	дядо	
<i>grandchild</i>	внук	внучка	*
<i>spouse</i>	мъж	жена	
<i>spouse (generic)</i>	съпруг	съпруга	*
<i>niece/nephew</i>	плéменник	плéменница	*
<i>cousin</i>	братовчед	братовчедка	*
<i>fiancé</i>	годеник	годеница	*
<i>newlywed, groom/bride</i>	младожéнец	младожéнка булка	*
<i>parent-in-law of wife</i>	свекър	свекърва	
<i>parent-in-law of husband</i>	тёст	тёща	
<i>parents of couple</i>	свát	свátя	
<i>step-parent</i>	втóри баща	втóра майка мащеха	

\* The feminine term is used exclusively for females, but the masculine term can refer either to a male person or to the general concept. For instance, the form **внۇци** (plural of the masculine form **внۇк**) can refer either to grandchildren in general, or to a specific group of grandchildren at least one of whom is male. The plural form **внۇчки** refers to a group of grandchildren who are all female.

In the case of nieces, nephews and fiancés, the plural forms are ambiguous. **Плéменници**, for instance, is the plural of both **плéменник** (meaning either "nephew" or the general category "sibling's child") and **плéменница** ("niece"). Note, by the way, that the plural form **съпруги** refers exclusively to females; the corresponding masculine plural is **съпруги**.

The terms **свát** and **свátя** refer to the relationship which obtains between the parents of a young married couple. They continue to bear this relationship to each other (and to use these terms for each other) throughout their lives. Wives and husbands use separate terms to refer to the parents of one's spouse.

The names for "uncle" and "aunt" are complex. Many Bulgarians use only **лéля** for "aunt" and **чичо** "father's brother" or **вۇйчо** "mother's brother" for "uncle". The full set of terms will be presented in Lesson 22.

**10.10. Derivation: nouns in -ица, -джия, -джийка;  
possessive adjectives in -ов, -ев**

**Nouns in -ица**

The suffix **-иц-**, followed by the ending **-а**, forms feminine nouns of various sorts. There is often the overtone of something “smaller” or more delicate in some way. These nouns are usually formed from other nouns, but they can be formed from words of any class. For example:

<i>noun</i>	<i>stem</i>	<b>+ иц-</b>	<i>derived noun</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>
плéмен-ник	плéмен-н-	<b>+ иц-</b>	плéменниц-а	niece
господ-и́н	госпож-	<b>+ иц-</b>	госпóжиц-а	Miss
стран-а́	стран-	<b>+ иц-</b>	стра́ниц-а	page
вил-я	вил-	<b>+ иц-</b>	ви́лиц-а	fork

<i>adjective</i>	<i>stem</i>	<b>+ иц-</b>	<i>derived noun</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>
хубав	хубав-	<b>+ иц-</b>	хубави́ц-а	beauty

<i>numeral</i>	<i>stem</i>	<b>+ иц-</b>	<i>derived noun</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>
сéдем	седм-	<b>+ иц-</b>	сéдмиц-а	week

The suffix **-иц-** is normally used to form neutral words such as the above. In certain cases, however, it is used to form emotionally loaded words, which are of masculine gender. Here is an example of one such noun, which is formed from the stem of the verb **пия** plus the suffix **-ан-**:

То́й е голя́м пия́ница.

He's quite the drinker.

**Nouns in -джия, -джийка**

The suffix **-джий-** is borrowed into Bulgarian from Turkish, where it has numerous meanings. One of these, that denoting profession, has been borrowed into Bulgarian as well. Some of the Bulgarian nouns formed with this suffix have neutral meaning, but others are felt as ironic in varying degrees.

In masculine nouns, the suffix is followed by the ending **-а** (resulting in the spelling **-джия**). Feminine nouns can also be formed by adding the suffix **-к-**, again followed by the ending **-а** (resulting in the spelling **-джийка**). These nouns designate a female practitioner of the profession in question.

# Десети урок / Lesson 10

In the chart below, the first three nouns have neutral meaning, and the second three have what is often called “expressive” (emotionally charged) meaning.

<i>noun</i>	<i>meaning</i>	<i>stem</i>	<i>+ джий(ка) ›</i>	<i>derived nouns</i>	<i>meaning</i>
по́ща	mail	пощ-а-	+ джий(ка) ›	по́щаджи-я по́щаджий-ка	letter-carrier
бо́я	paint	бой-а-	+ джий(ка) ›	бо́яджи-я бо́яджий-ка	painter
сто́п	stop	стоп-а-	+ джий(ка) ›	сто́паджи-я сто́паджий-ка	hitchhiker
дво́йка	failing grade	двойк-а-	+ джий(ка) ›	дво́йкаджи-я дво́йкаджий-ка	high school dropout
кавга́	quarrel	кавг-а-	+ джий(ка) ›	кавгаджи́-я кавгаджий́-ка	brawler
че́йндж	currency exchange office	чейндж-а-	+ джий(ка) ›	че́йнджаджи-я че́йнджаджий-ка	unofficial money-changer

## Possessive adjectives in -ов, -ев

The suffix **-ов-** appears in numerous family names. It is by origin a possessive suffix. The surname Сто́йков, for instance, refers to those who are part of the family of someone named Сто́йко. Similarly, the surname Бояджи́ев refers to those who are part of the family of someone known as a бояджи́я (a painter). This same suffix is also used to derive adjectives from nouns. This suffix is usually **-ов-**, but after certain consonants it is **-ев-**.

<i>noun</i>	<i>stem</i>	<i>+ ов- / ев- ›</i>	<i>derived adj.</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>
слѣ́нц-е	слѣ́нч-	+ <b>ев-</b> ›	слѣ́нчев	sunny
гро́зд-е	гро́зд-	+ <b>ов-</b> ›	гро́здов	grape
портока́л	портокал-	+ <b>ов-</b> ›	портока́лов	orange
баро́к	барок-	+ <b>ов-</b> ›	баро́ков	Baroque
Хри́ст	Христ-	+ <b>ов-</b> ›	Христо́в	Christ's
не́г-о	нег-	+ <b>ов-</b> ›	не́гов	his

### 10.11. Consonant shifts in derivation

Certain stem-final consonants are frequently replaced by other consonants before certain derivational suffixes. These replacement patterns are not random, but occur according to predictable patterns. Here are some examples:

<i>consonant</i>	<i>replacement</i>
- Г -	- Ж -

КОЛЕГ - а	КОЛЕЖ - ка
КНИГ - а	КНИЖ - ка
СНЯГ	СНЕЖ - ѝнка

<i>consonant</i>	<i>replacement</i>
- Ц -	- Ч -

ЛЪЖИЦ - а	ЛЪЖИЧ - ка
-----------	------------

<i>consonant</i>	<i>replacement</i>
- К -	- Ч -

УЧЕНИК	УЧЕНИЧ - ка
ВНУК	ВНУЧ - ка
ЕКЗОТИК - а	ЕКЗОТИЧ - ен
МЛЯК - о	МЛЕЧ - ност
ЗНАК	ЗНАЧ - ёние



Gorge in the Rhodope Mountains  
(southern Bulgaria)

## **SAMPLE SENTENCES**

1. Ма́йка му мно́го го оби́ча. И то́й мно́го оби́ча ма́йка си. Не́говата ма́йка е до́брé.
2. Та́ня ка́зва, че мъжът ѝ че́сто пъту́ва. Та́ня мо́ли мъжа́ си да не пъту́ва че́сто. Не́йният мъж че́сто не си́ е вкѝщи.
3. Кажѝ на тво́ята жена́, че ча́кам у́тре сутринта́ да ми се оба́ди.
4. То́й ка́зва на жена́ си на дру́гия де́н да му позвъни́ по телефо́на.
5. Тя́ жена́ ли му е на не́го? Не́, те́ не са́ же́нени.
6. Това́ жена́ му ли е? Не́, това́ е не́гова братовче́дка.
7. Запозна́йте се, жена́ ми. Мо́ята жена́ е адвокát.
8. Лиля́на си има́ три деца́. Лилля́на и Младе́н си има́т три деца́.
9. Иди́ си, къ́сно е ве́че.
10. Мо́ят свát че́сто бо́ледува́. Синът ми е же́нен за на́й-голя́мата му дъщеря́. То́й има́ три дъщерѝ от пѣрвия си бра́к.
11. Ка́мен и На́дка са бра́т и сестра́.
12. Свекѣ́рва ми и ма́йка ми са до́бри прия́телки. Те́ за́едно во́дят вну́ците си на разхо́дка. Мо́ите деца́ оби́чат сво́ите ба́би.
13. Те́ са бли́зки прия́телки. Купу́ват си дрѣ́хи от едѝн и съ́щ магази́н.
14. Тя́ прика́зва все́ едно́ и съ́що, отка́кто я позна́вам.
15. Ви́ждам, че те́ има́т едни́ и съ́щи грѣ́шки в контрѝлното.
16. Деца́та ста́наха на де́сет годи́ни.
17. Ве́че зна́м. Ка́заха ми за това́ още́ в Бѣлгáрия.
18. Дими́тър чу́ от прия́телите си послѣ́дните новинѝ.
19. Бага́жът не бе́ше мно́го и затова́ Та́ня взе́ ма́лката ча́нта.
20. -- Какво́ пра́ви баща́ ти в момѣ́нта?  
-- Бояди́сва пре́дната врата́.
21. Едѝн и съ́щ бояджи́я им бояди́сва къ́щите.



### **SENTENCES FOR TRANSLATION**

1. Mother called the painter on the phone but he wasn't at home. Tomorrow she will ask him, "When will you come to paint our house?" Our neighbors are painting their own house, but we don't want to paint ours.
2. Come with us to the movies! Or maybe you prefer to go with them? Probably, because they'll go in their car, but we will walk. Ivo and I always walk to the movies. We talk about the film, and we also talk about you and Marina!
3. Last night Lilyana told me about her mother. Her mother went to America last year, and met her American aunts and uncles. She took her youngest daughter with her, but her older children didn't go. They stayed home with their father.
4. Where's Marin? He left [to go home]. His father is ill, and he wants to stay with him.
5. My brother wrote me from Plovdiv -- he's coming tomorrow. But I have no room in my apartment, because all my cousins are staying with me. Can he sleep at your place? You are my closest friend, and you are also a good friend of his.
6. Nadka put her red pencils into her bag but left her blue pencils on the floor. Her mother asked, "Nadka, why did you put only some pencils in your bag?" Nadka said, "My blue pencils are bigger than my red pencils". Her older brother Kamen then said, "No, they are smaller. And I of course know because I am two years older than you."
7. Her uncle drinks a lot. If she goes to see him, he will want her to sit and drink with him. For that reason, she goes to her grandmother's more often than she goes to her uncle's. With her grandmother, she drinks only tea.
8. "Do you know Sabina?"  
"Yes, of course. She is my colleague. I have been working with her for more than three years. Her younger sister Boryana is also our colleague, but she works in a different office and I see her rarely. Yesterday I invited her to come have dinner with us."

## READING SELECTION

### Кореспонденция - (8)

29 декември, Сoфия

Драги Патриша и Бoб,

Тъкмо сегá полóчихме писмóто на Бoб и бързам да отговоря. Децáта го донéсоха веднáга след закúска. Покрай прázниците пóщата обáче рáботи особено бáвно. Данó тáзи честítка за Нoвата годíна пристíгне наврéме понé за слéдвaщата Нoва годíна.

Пожелáваме ви от сърцé мнóго здраве, рáдости и успéх във всíчко!

Ние нýмаме прázник като вáшия Дén на благодарностá, но Бъдни вéчер, навечéрието на Кóледа, е мнóго вáжен прázник за нáс.

Тогáва е послéдният дén от кóледните пóсти и затoвá пригóтвихме сáмо пóстни гóзби: бoб, зéле, туршия, oрехи, сушéни плодoвe. На мáсата слóжихме от всíчко по мáлко, за да родят и дoгoдíна нивите, лoзятa и гpáдините. Ние с Бoйкo изпíхмe по eднá чáша вíно и за вáше здраве. За Бъдни вéчер гóсти не кáнихмe, прázнувахмe, кáкто обикнoвeно, в тeсен семéен крýг.

Тáзи Нoва годíна съвпáдна с крýгла годíшнина от нáшата свáтба с Бoйкo. Затoвá покáнихмe мнóго блízки рoднини на гóсти. Бoйкo посрeщна рoдителите си на гáрата и ги докáра тýк с колáта. Стáнахмe мнóго (сáмо бpатoвчeдите ни са сeдем дýши) и затoвá ние със свекървa ми вéче пóчнахмe да шéтаме. Тя ще нaпpáви бáницата с късмéтите. Бащá ми ще дoйде след рáбота зáедно с Бoйкo: тe рáботят в eднá и същa бoлница и на Нoва годíна имат дежýрство. Дядo Мpáz ще донесé на всíчки децá подáръци. Бáбите и дядoвците, лéлите и чичoвците се гóтвят за сурвaкáрите и събíрат нoви лъскави монéти. Накрáтко Нoва годíна обещáва да бъде вeсeла и шýмна, нíщо чe пáк нýма снýг.

Мнóго се рáдвамe на вáшите писмá. Пишéте ни пó-чeсто.

Вáша

Калина

## GLOSSARY

аромáтен	aromatic	данó пристѣгне наврѣме	let's hope it gets there on time
бáница	banitsa (baked pastry)	двóйка	"2", failing mark in school
бáница с късмѣти	banitsa with small fortunes in it	двóйкаджия, -ийка	high school dropout (intensifying particle)
барóк	Baroque	де	on duty
благодаря	thank, pay gratitude	дежýрен	duty
блѣзък	close (adj.)	дежýрство	diary
блѣзки са	they are close friends	докáрвам /	drive to, bring to
бóб	beans	докáрам	
боледýвам	be ill	дрéха	article of clothing
бонбóн	candy	дрéхи	clothes, clothing
боя	paint	дъщеря	daughter
бояджия, -ийка	house painter; paint or dye merchant	дядо (pl. дядовци)	grandfather
болдѣсвам	paint, dye, color	Дядо Мрáз	Jack Frost
брáво	bravo	Дядо Кóледа	Santa Claus
брáк	marriage		
бýлка	bride	едѣн и същ	[one and] the same
Бѣдни вѣчер	Christmas Eve	жéнен, -ена	married
в една стая с нас	in the same room as you (direct object)	за	about
вѣрен, вѣрна	true, faithful	завѣждам / заведá	take somewhere, lead
вѣрно е, че...	it's true that...	закýска	breakfast
вѣла	pitchfork	запознавам се /	meet, get acquainted
вѣлица	fork	запозная се	
внýк	grandson	звъня по телефóна	telephone
внýчка	granddaughter		
всѣ	always, constantly	изгън	out of, outside
всѣ ме няма	I'm never there	изчѣзвам / изчѣзна	disappear
всѣ още избѣрам	I'm still looking		
всѣ едно и същó	[it's] always the same thing	квѣгá	quarrel, dispute
втóра мáйка	stepmother	кавгаджия, -ийка	quarrelsome person, brawler
втóри бащá	stepfather		
вýйчо (pl. вýйчовци)	uncle (mother's brother)	кíня	invite
възтóрг	delight, rapture	кáпя (-ещ)	drip, leak
вървя с	go well with	кнѣжка	booklet; driver's license
вървя си	get going	кóлѣга	colleague
вѣрно see вѣрен		Кóледа	Christmas
годенѣк	fiancé	кóледен	Christmas (adj.)
годенѣца	fiancée	кóлѣжка	female colleague
годишнина	anniversary	командирóвка	business trip
данó	let's wish, if only	кóпѣя	dig
		кóтка	cat
		крéг, -ѣт	circle
		крéгъл	round, circular
		крéгла годишнина	decade anniversary

## Десети урок / Lesson 10

кутия	box	поканвам / покания	invite
късмет	fortune, luck	покрай	because of
		портокал	orange
лѳзе (pl. лѳзя)	vineyard	портокалов	orange (adj.)
лъскѳв	shining, bright	пѳст	Lent; fast
		пѳстен	Lenten, pertaining to fasting
мѳщеха	stepmother	пѳстоянен	constant
мѳне	me (direct object)	пѳстоянно	constantly
младѳжѳнец	bridegroom, newlywed	пѳчвам / пѳчна	begin, start
		пѳщаджѳня, -нѳка	letter carrier, postman
младѳжѳнка	bride, newlywed	пѳщенска кутѳя	mailbox
млѳчност	milkiness	пѳщенски	postal
монѳта	coin	пѳзник	holiday
мрѳз	frost, chill	пѳзнувам	celebrate
мълчѳ (-ѳш)	be silent, fall silent	пѳрѳден	front, anterior
		пѳредѳзѳвиквам / пѳредѳзѳвикам	provoke, defy
навѳчѳрие	the eve of; vigil	пѳредѳзѳвиквам	enrapture
нѳй-	most... (superlative degree particle)	вѳзтѳрг у	
нѳй-мнѳго	the most	пѳргѳтѳвам / пѳргѳтѳвя	prepare
нѳй-разлѳчни нещѳ	all sorts of things	пѳрѳмам / пѳрѳма	accept
накрѳтко	in short, briefly	пѳрѳлѳчам	look like, resemble
нѳс	us (direct object)	пѳпѳскам / пѳпѳсна	skip, let pass
нѳго	him (direct object)	пѳблика	public
нѳя	her (direct object)	пѳскам / пѳсна	let, allow; drop
нѳва	[corn]field	пѳскам писмѳ	mail a letter
нѳщо, че нѳма	it doesn't matter if there isn't any	пѳст	empty
Нѳва гѳдѳна	New Years	пѳсти	[these] blasted business trips
		командирѳвки	trips
ѳбѳждам се / ѳбѳдя се	call on the phone, get in touch with	пѳрѳвенствѳ	championship
ѳбѳцѳвам / ѳбѳцѳя	promise		
ѳсѳбен	special, particular	рѳдѳст	joy
ѳтгѳварѳм / ѳтгѳѳря	answer	рѳждам / рѳдѳя	bear, give birth to, be fruitful
ѳткѳкто	[ever] since		
ѳткѳлѳто	than	разгѳварѳм	converse
		разлѳчен	different, various
пѳвѳц	singer	разхѳждам / разхѳдя	take for a walk
пѳтѳца	"5" (second-best mark in school)	рѳдки see рѳдѳк	
		рѳднѳна	relative
писѳтел (ка)	writer	рѳдѳ see рѳждам	
пѳяница	drunkard, tippler	рѳдѳк, рѳдки	rarely
плѳменник	nephew	рѳдко	
плѳменница	niece		
пѳ-	more...(comparative degree particle)	сѳѳт (ѳр сѳѳтѳ)	in-law
		сѳѳтѳѳ	wedding
пѳ-гѳлѳм	older	сѳѳкѳр	father-in-law (to wife)
пѳ-мѳлѳк	younger	сѳѳтѳѳѳн	world (adj.)
пѳжелѳвам ѳт сѳрѳѳ	send heartfelt wishes	сѳѳѳл	light (adj.)
пѳигрѳвам / пѳигрѳя	play for a while	сѳѳѳ	own (adj.)

# Десети урок / Lesson 10

семéен	family, domestic	тѣща	mother-in-law (to husband)
сестра́	sister	тѣх	them ( <i>direct object</i> )
слѣнчесв	sunny	у	at the home of
снежинка	snowflake	у дома́	at home, at one's house
сре́щам / сре́щна	meet	у́мен	smart, intelligent
ста́вам / ста́на	become, get to be	учи́лищен	school ( <i>adj.</i> )
ста́ваме мно́го	there gets to be a lot of us	учи́лищен звъне́ц	school bell
(синѣт им)	(their son)	фúтбол	soccer
ста́на на чѣтири	has turned four	чѣйндж	currency exchange office
сти́га то́лкова	that's enough	чѣйнджаджия,	unofficial money
стóп	stop-sign; hitchhiker	-ийка	changer
стóпаджия, -ийка	survakar (New Year's wassailer)	честѣт	happy ( <i>in greeting</i> )
сурвака́р	dried	честѣта Но́ва	Happy New Year
сушен	advice	Годи́на	
съвѣт	coincide, concur	честѣтка	greeting card
съвпа́дам / съвпа́дна	spouse	чѣчо ( <i>pl. чѣчовци</i> )	uncle (father's brother)
съпру́г, съпру́га	heart	чу́вам / чу́я	hear
сърце́		шести́ца	"6" (best mark in school)
та́тко ( <i>pl. та́тковци</i> )	dad	ше́там	do housework; be active
тебе́	you ( <i>direct object</i> )	шу́мен	noisy
те́сен семе́ен крѣг	immediate family		
турши́я	pickles; pickled vegetables		
тѣкмо	just, exactly		
тѣкмо сегá	just this minute		
тѣст	father-in-law (to husband)		



New Year's in downtown Veliko Tarnovo

## **CULTURAL COMMENTARY**

### **Families: kinship terms; living quarters**

Bulgarians maintain contact with extended families, as seen by the complex system of family-relationship names. Young urban Bulgarians no longer distinguish all the different terms for "brother-in-law" or "sister-in-law", and some have also begun to confuse certain of the terms for "uncle" and "aunt". If the particular relationship exists in one's own family, however, it is likely that the correct word will be used (and that the younger generation will learn it). When one marries, the appropriate terms for parents-in-law are always used.

Living quarters in Bulgaria (and especially in Sofia) are crowded. If a family has more than one child, it is almost unheard of that each child would have his or her own room. Often, in fact, the children of a family will share the only bedroom while the parents sleep in the living room.

### **Sports**

As in other European countries, soccer is called "football" (футбол), and is by far the most popular spectator sport.

### **Forms of address: surnames**

Many Bulgarian surnames contain the suffix *-джий-*, which is of Turkish origin and indicates professional affiliation. Today, of course, this means only that someone among one's ancestors once practiced that profession. The parallel with English "Smith" or "Miller" is an obvious one.

### **School system: grading**

Grades in school range from 6 (the equivalent of an A) down to 2, which is a failing grade. A grade of 6 (шестіца) or 5 (петіца) is regarded with pride; other grades are not mentioned unless necessary.

### **Traveling: currency**

Formerly, it was possible to change currency only in banks and officially-sponsored tourists offices. Now, private offices for currency changing abound. The exchange rate varies among them, but usually only slightly. One is advised to change money in one of these offices (and to obtain a receipt). It is not advisable to change money on the street.

### **Food and drink: fasting; banitsa; holiday customs connected with food**

Fasting is part of the Eastern Orthodox religion. Most religious adherents abstain from eating meat every Friday (and some do so on Wednesday as well). The most important fasting periods of the Orthodox calendar, however, are the periods preceding Christmas and Easter. There are three general forms of fasting. According to the mildest type, one abstains from eating the flesh of creatures (meat or fish), but is allowed to eat that which they produce (that is, eggs and milk). According to the intermediate type of fast, one can eat only things that grow from the ground, on trees or on vines. The most rigid type is a total fast.

Постни гóзби are dishes that are allowed during the fasting period. Examples (according to the intermediate type) are vegetables, fruits, nuts, beans and wine; or (according to the mild type) the above plus dishes such as yogurt soup, fried eggs or banitsa. On the final evening of the Christmas fast, Бѣдни вѣчер, it is believed that to focus one's attention on these foods is to encourage the earth to be fertile during the coming year. According to one folk custom, the male and female heads of the household go out to visit each fruit tree at Christmastime. The male carries an ax and threatens to cut each tree down, but the female stops him and encourages the tree to grow and be fruitful.

Banitsa (бáница) is a baked pastry filled with white cheese and eggs. On New Year's, a special banitsa is baked with fortunes (кѣсмѣти) in it, and sliced so that a fortune, foretelling his or her luck for the coming year, is within each family member's portion. Traditionally, the fortunes are small pieces of cornel branch, each with a bud, cut in different shapes. The cook who bakes the banitsa keeps a list of which shape corresponds to which fortune, and reads it out as the fortunes are discovered. Alternatively, one can write fortunes on small slips of paper and bake them in the banitsa.

**Holiday customs: Christmas and New Year's**

It is the accepted norm to send greetings on New Year's. The phrase **честита Нова година** ("Happy New Year") is often abbreviated to **ЧНГ**. New Year's day itself is the day dedicated to Saint Vasil; it is customary to pay visits to friends and relatives on the afternoon of New Year's day.

The popular name for Christmas is **Кóледа**; the word is a survival from pre-Christian times. The religious name is **Рождество**, which is a word from the church ritual meaning "birth". It refers not to any birth, but only to the birth of Christ. The term for Christmas Eve, **Бѣдни вѣчер**, is related to that of the **бѣдник** or Yule log.

**Dyado Mraz** (**Дядо Мраз**), literally "Grandfather Frost", is the Bulgarian functional equivalent of Santa Claus. He brings children presents which they have requested in advance.

Another New Year's custom connected with cornel wood is that of "surva" (**сърва**) or "survakane" (**сурвакане**); it is practiced with great enjoyment on the morning of New Year's day. Using decorated branches of cornelwood called "survachki" (**сурвачки**) that have been purchased in advance, young children strike their elder relatives lightly on the back. As they do so, the "survakari" (**сурвакари**) -- i.e., the children -- chant the following tune:

**Сърва сърва година, вѣсела година  
Живо здраво догодина, догодина, до ами́на.**

These relatives in turn give the children shiny new coins, which they have been collecting in advance. Since Bulgarian children usually do not receive allowances or spending money, this New Year's money is a special treat.



New Year's in Sofia, near the University

## LESSON 11

### **DIALOGUE**

Хайде да се чу́кнем за младоже́нците!

Владимир: Аз да вървя, че ме ча́кат. Па́к заповяда́йте на го́сти в на́шето купе́.

Димитър (на Веселин): Е, каже́те де! Же́нен ли сте?

Веселин: Още не сѝм.

Ангел: А-а! Ергѐн си, зна́чи. Ня́ма ли да се же́ниш?

Веселин: Едѝн де́н мо́же и да се оже́ня. Всѐ о́ще изби́рам.

Ангел: Какво́ то́лкова изби́раш?

Димитър: Ожени́ се! Ня́ма да съжаля́ваш. Ви́ж ме ме́не! Ни́е сме младоже́нци. Же́нени сме съвсѐм отско́ро.

Джули: Честито́! Да сте жи́ви и здра́ви!

Ангел: Хайде да се чу́кнем за младоже́нците. За мно́го годи́ни! Жа́лко, че нямаме шампа́нско, но и раки́ята ще свѣрши ра́бота.

Джули: Когá бе́ше сва́тбата?

Милена: Преди две се́дмици. След това́ ходихме на сва́тбено пътеше́ствие на море́то. Бе́ше мно́го хубаво -- то́пло, слѣнчево, ве́село. Видя́хме и прия́тели. Еднá ве́чер ходихме на ки́но. Гле́дахме някаква комѐдия. Умря́хме от смѣх. Мно́го добре́ си почи́нахме.

Димитър: А сегá отива́ме при ма́йка ми в Со́фия. На Милѐна свекѣ́рвата. Не се позна́ват о́ще. Ще се срѣ́цнат за пѣрви пѣ́т.

Милена: Вче́ра се оба́дихме по телефо́на да ѝ ка́жем кога́ пристига́ме. Си́гурно ще ни ча́ка на га́рата.

Таня: Ама́ как така́ ма́йка ви не дойде́ на сва́тбата? Бо́лна ли бе́ше?



Ангел: Къде ще живеете? В Сѳия или във Върна?

Димитър: Във Върна. Няма да стоим дълго в Сѳия. Ще поразхѳдя женá си из Сѳия. После се връщаме.

Камен: Мамо, Надка не иска да ми върне молива. Кажй й, че е мой. Не е неин!

Надка: Твоите моливи ти ги дадох всичките. Тйя са си мои.

Таня: Не се карайте, деца. Моливи има за всички. Няма да се занимавам само с вас.

Джули: Хайде, деца, елате да ви почетá, а пък вие после ще ми попееите.

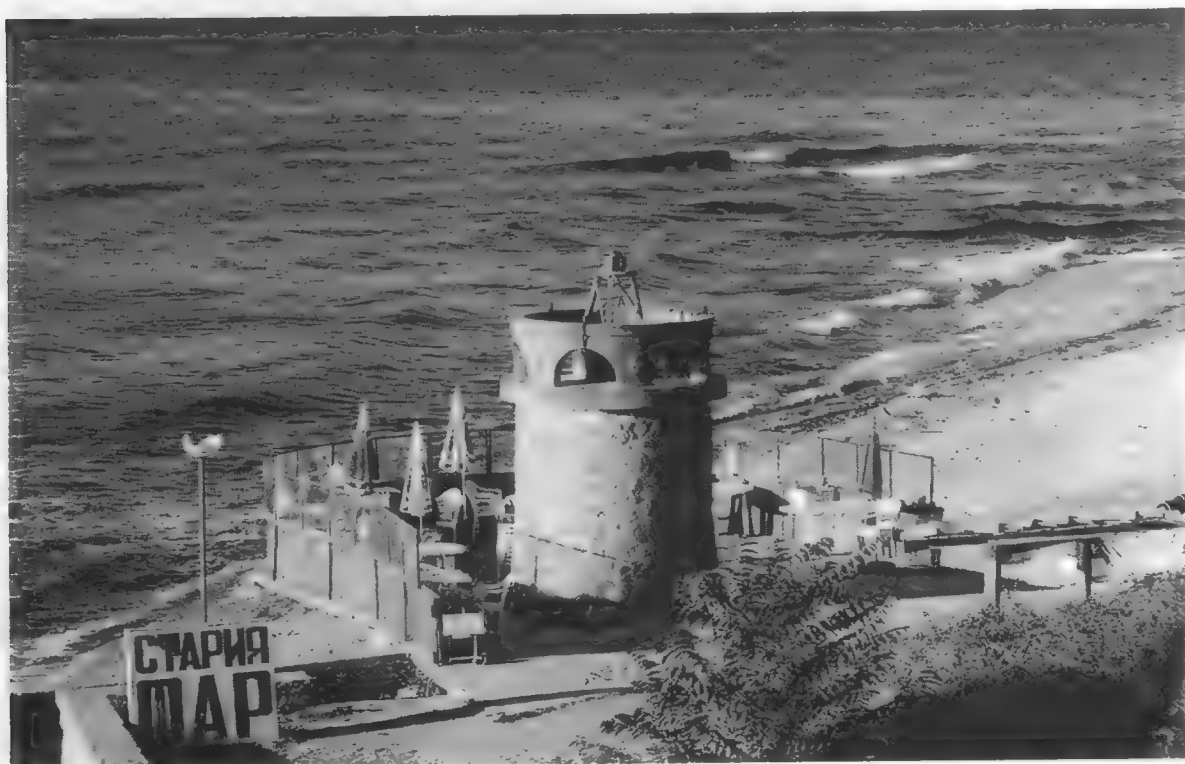
Камен: Аз вчѳра пях, днес Надка да пее.

Джули: Кои са най-любимите ви книги?

Надка: Мѳчо Пух!

Камен: Ян Бибиан на луната!

Джули: Тѳгава ще ви почетá и от двѳте. Седнете до мене.



Seaside café "At the Old Lighthouse", Nesebăr

## BASIC GRAMMAR

### 11.1. Aorist tense, continued

A number of different verb types form the aorist with the theme vowel **-а-** (sometimes spelled **-я-**). Among these are all **и**-conjugation verbs which do not form the aorist with the theme vowel **-и-**. If the final stem consonant is **-ч**, **-ж**, or **-ш**, the theme vowel is spelled **-а** : **мълча́** (1sg. present) **мълча́х** (1sg. aorist). Otherwise it is spelled **-я-**.

In this verb group, the aorist theme vowel is always accented. Note that although the vowel in stressed **-а/-я-** in the present is pronounced as [ѐ/йѐ], stressed **-а/-я-** in the aorist is pronounced as [á] or [я́]. Thus 1sg. present **мълча́** is pronounced [мѐлчѐ] but 3sg. aorist **мълча́** is pronounced [мѐлчя́].

Nearly all **и**-conjugation verbs which form the aorist in **-ах** or **-ях** have end stress in both present and aorist. The one exception in this group is **ви́дя**, which has stem stress in the present and end stress in the aorist.

Below are the present and aorist tense forms of **вървя́** and **ви́дя**.

		PRESENT	AORIST	PRESENT	AORIST
1 <sup>st</sup>	singular	върв-я́ [йѐ]	върв-я́х [я́х]	ви́д-я	ви́д-я́х [я́х]
2 <sup>nd</sup>	singular	върв-и́ш	върв-я́ [я́]	ви́д-иш	ви́д-я́ [я́]
3 <sup>rd</sup>	singular	върв-и́	върв-я́ [я́]	ви́д-и	ви́д-я́ [я́]
1 <sup>st</sup>	plural	върв-и́м	върв-я́хмѐ	ви́д-им	ви́д-я́хмѐ
2 <sup>nd</sup>	plural	върв-и́те	върв-я́хтѐ	ви́д-ите	ви́д-я́хтѐ
3 <sup>rd</sup>	plural	върв-я́т [йѐт]	върв-я́ха	ви́д-ят	ви́д-я́ха

The verb **мо́га** also forms its aorist according to this pattern (even though it is an **е**-conjugation verb). Its stem is that of the 3sg. present, **мож-**. Thus: 1sg. present **мо́га**, 1sg. aorist **можáх**; 2sg. present **мо́жеш**, 2sg. aorist **можá**, etc.

Two other types form the aorist with the theme vowel **-я-**. One includes verbs which end in **-ея** in the present: the aorist stem of these verbs is formed by dropping the stem-final **-е**. The other includes certain common verbs whose stem-final consonant is **-п**, e.g. **у́мра** and **спра́**. The present and aorist conjugations of **живе́я** and **у́мра** are given below.

	PRESENT	AORIST	PRESENT	AORIST
1 <sup>st</sup> singular	живе́-я	жив-я́х	умр-а́ [ъ]	умр-я́х
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	живе́-еш	жив-я́	умр-е́ш	умр-я́ [я́]
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	живе́-е	жив-я́	умр-е́	умр-я́ [я́]
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	живе́-ем	жив-я́хмe	умр-е́м	умр-я́хмe
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	живе́-ете	жив-я́хтe	умр-е́те	умр-я́хтe
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	живе́-ят	жив-я́ха	умр-а́т [ът]	умр-я́ха

## 11.2. Emphatic and doubled pronouns

To place emphasis on a pronoun object, Bulgarians have two options. One is to use the long-form pronoun in either sentence initial or sentence final position. This places extremely high emphasis on the pronoun. For example:

Когó търсиш? Мéне ли  
търсиш?

Who are you looking for? *Me?*

Човéкът не търси мéне, а тéбе.

It's not *me* the man's looking for, but  
*you*.

Да́йте ми, мо́ля, е́дин килогра́м  
кафе́. А на не́я полови́н  
ки́ло.

Please give me a kilo of coffee. And  
give *her* a half kilo.

-- На тéбе ли да го да́м?

"Is it *you* I should give it to?"

-- Не́, не́, да́йте го на не́го.

"No, no, give it to *him*."

The other option is to use both long form and short form objects together, e.g. мéне (long) + ме (short), or на мéне (long) + ми (short). Here are examples:

На мéне ми да́йте чéтвэрт  
сала́м.

Give me a quarter-kilo of salami.

Не́го го ви́ждаме чéсто.

We see him often.

As the translations indicate, the doubled usage of pronoun objects carries considerably less emphasis. The meaning is somewhere in between that of the short form used alone (neutral) and the long form used alone (emphatic).

There are two possible types of word order in such sentences. In one (illustrated above), the doubled pronoun object begins the sentence and is followed immediately by the verb, with nothing intervening. When the verb occurs elsewhere in the sentence, however, the pronoun objects are separated. This is because each of

the two objects has its own word rules to obey. Long form objects usually stand at the beginning of the sentence, while short form objects must be directly adjacent to the verb. The following examples illustrate the joint action of these two rules:

На мене нищо не ми казва.  
На него ще му кажеш ли?

S/he doesn't [ever] tell me anything.  
Will you tell him?

### 11.3. "Experiencer" constructions

In Bulgarian, indirect pronoun objects appear in a number of very frequently used expressions. One is the "experiencer" construction, which conveys the idea that someone feels a particular way or is in a particular state. For instance:

Студено ми е. I'm cold.  
Беше ѝ добре. She felt fine.  
Не му е добре. He's not well.

Ще ти стане топло. You'll be [too] hot.  
Много ми е лошо. I feel terrible!

The general meaning of all the above sentences is that the subject experiences a certain state. In English, the experiencer is the actual subject of the verb "be", "feel", etc. In Bulgarian, however, these sentences have no subject. The state is expressed by an adverb, and the identity of the experiencer is expressed by an indirect object pronoun. The basic verb is *съм*, although the verb *ставам* / *стана* can occur in the past and future tenses when the idea of "become" is present. The verb form is always 3<sup>rd</sup> singular.

When a present-tense state is expressed, the order of words is very rigid. This is because short form pronoun objects must stand directly before the 3<sup>rd</sup> singular copula *е*, and because they cannot begin a sentence. The only possible choice, therefore, is for either the adverb or the negative particle to begin the sentence.

<i>affirmative</i>	Добре ми е.	I'm fine.
<i>interrogative</i>	Добре ли ти е?	Are you OK?
<i>negative</i>	Не ми е добре.	I don't feel [so] good.

In the future or past tenses, when it is possible for the verb form to begin the sentence, two different word orders are possible:

<i>past</i>	Добре ми беше.	<i>or</i>	Беше ми добре.	I was fine.
	Добре ми стана.	<i>or</i>	Стана ми добре	I'm OK now. *
<i>future</i>	Добре ще ми бъде.	<i>or</i>	Ще ми бъде добре.	I'll be fine.
	Добре ще ми стане.	<i>or</i>	Ще ми стане добре.	I'll get better.

\* = I got better.

When these sentences are negated, however, only one word order is possible:

<i>present</i>	Не ми е добré.	I'm not well.
<i>past</i>	Не ми бéше добré.	I didn't feel [so] good.
<i>future</i>	Няма да ми е добré.	I won't be OK.

The doubled indirect object can also be used. When the identity of the experiencer is expressed as a noun, the doubled form *must* be used. For example:

<i>present</i>	На Калина не ѝ е добré.	Kalina's not feeling so well.
<i>future</i>	На студéнтите добré ли ще им стáне?	Will the students be OK?
<i>past</i>	На Стоян не му бéше добré.	Stoyan didn't feel good.

#### 11.4. Transitivity, reciprocity, and the particle *ce*

When the particle *ce* is added to a verb, it changes the meaning of that verb. Sometimes the change of meaning can only be rendered idiomatically, as in *кáзвам* (perfective *кáжа*) "say, tell" vs. *кáзвам ce* (imperfective only) "be named". Usually, however, one of several definable meanings is added. One of the most frequent of these added meanings is *intransitivity*.

A transitive verb is one that takes a direct object: it expresses the idea of an action which has a direct result on someone or something. An intransitive verb, by contrast, does not (and cannot) take a direct object. It simply expresses the fact that an action "happens". Here are examples of the same verbs used both transitively and intransitively. In each case, the particle *ce* makes the verb intransitive.

*transitive*

Вр́щам кни́гите в библиотéката. I'm returning the books to the library.

*intransitive*

Вр́щам ce ведна́га след това́. I'm returning immediately after that.

*transitive*

Ма́йката събу́жда децáта в 7 ч. Mother wakes the children at 7 a.m.

*intransitive*

Децáта ce събу́ждат в 7 ч. The children wake up at 7 a.m.

*transitive*

Ня́ма да ви занима́вам с това́. I won't bother you with this.

*intransitive*

Ня́ма да ce занима́вам са́мо с ва́с. I can't be concerned only with you.

Another meaning the particle *ce* can add is that of reciprocity. Sometimes this is translated as an object of the sort "each other", and sometimes it is just understood from the context. The verbs in such sentences, of course, must be in the plural. Here are examples of the same verbs used transitively and with reciprocal meaning:

*transitive*

Ще го видим ли довечера?

Will we see him this evening?

*reciprocal*

Ще се видим ли довечера?

Will we see each other this evening?

*transitive*

Ние го срещаме често на улицата.

We meet him on the street often.

*reciprocal*

Ще се срещнат за пръв път.

They will meet for the first time.

If the verb is one which takes an indirect object, the reciprocal meaning is expressed with the particle **си**. For instance:

Хайде да си говорим на "ти".

Let's speak to each other as "ti".

### 11.5. Adverbs of direction and location

The adverb **къде** means "where" both as location and direction. For example:

*location*

Къде живееш?

Where do you live?

*direction*

Къде отиваш?

Where are you going?

If a more vivid sense of direction is desired, the directional adverb **накъде** is used.

*vivid direction*

Ти накъде?

Where are you off to?

Накъде отиваш?

(same)

Certain common adverbial compounds used in answer to this question also are formed with **на-**. Here are the base forms, followed by examples of usage.

горе up  
долу down

вън in  
вътре out

ляво left  
дясно right

Отивам нагоре.

I'm going up.

[... надолу / наляво / надясно]

[...down/left/right]

Излизаме навън.

We're going outside.

Хайде да влезем навътре в гората.

Let's go deeper into the woods.

The adverb **откъде** means "from where?". This question is often answered by adverbs formed from **от-** plus the base forms given above. For example:

Откъде идва?

Where is he coming from?

Слиза отгоре.

He's coming down [from above].

Идва отдолу.

Идва отляво / отдясно.

She's coming up [from below].

It's coming from the left/from the right.

Миризмата идва отвън.

Някой излиза отвътре.

The smell is coming from outside.

Someone's coming out [from inside].

Frequently, the на- and the от- adverbs are combined. For example:

Водата тече отгоре надолу.

Water runs downhill [from up to down].

Ние пишем отляво надясно,  
а в арабските страни пишат  
отдясно наляво.

We write from left to right, but in  
Arabic countries they write from  
right to left.

The prefix в-, in the meaning of location, can also be added to certain of the above base forms. For example:

-- Къде е магазинът?

"Where's the store?"

-- Тука вляво.

"Here, on the left."

Вдясно от тебе са очилата ми.

My eyeglasses are on your right --

Подай ми ги, моля.

give them to me, please.

### 11.6. Demonstrative pronouns: тоя

The pronoun тоя "this" is a variant form of този. Bulgarians use it frequently, especially in speech. The demonstrative онзи "that" has similar variant forms. Here are both sets:

<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>plural</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>
ТО-ЗИ	ТА-ЗИ	ТО-ВА	ТЕ-ЗИ	this
ТО-Я	ТА-Я	Т-УЙ	ТИ-Я	(same)
ОН-ЗИ	ОНА-ЗИ	ОНО-ВА	ОНЕ-ЗИ	that
ОН-Я	ОНА-Я	ОН-УЙ	ОНИ-Я	(same)

The masculine form този is sometimes shortened to тоз (in writing as well as in speech). The adverb така "thus" also has the variant form тъй.

### 11.7. Social interactional formulas

The form of да which sometimes called "modal" appears in a number of formulaic expressions, especially those connected with congratulations or good wishes.

One of the most frequent of these is (in literal translation) "May you be alive and healthy!". It is often said to someone upon departure, roughly equivalent to the archaic English "Fare thee well", and is frequently used as an expression of congratulations, in the sense of "best wishes". The same phrase is used, although somewhat less commonly, with the imperative **бъди** (plural **бъдете**). For example:

Да сте живи и здрави!  
Бъдете живи и здрави!

May you be well and healthy!  
Be well and healthy!

The verb meaning "toast" (in the literal sense of touching glasses and drinking) is **чукам се** (perfective **чука се**). It is introduced by either **да** or **хайде** **да**. Toasts themselves are usually expressed with the preposition **за**. For example:

Хайде да се чукаем за  
младоженците!  
За много години!  
Наздраве!

Let's toast the newlyweds!

Here's to many [happy] years!  
Cheers! To your health!

### 11.8. Prepositions

(a) The preposition **из** refers to non-directional movement within a closed area. Students of other Slavic languages should pay particular attention to this meaning.

Ще разходя женá си из Сóфия.  
Ще пътуваме из Бýлгáрия.

I'll show my wife around Sofia.  
We're going to tour Bulgaria.

(b) The preposition **за** is used in toasts, either literal (when raising a glass) or metaphorical (general expression of good wishes).

За успéх на íзпита!

Here's to success on the exam!



## EXERCISES

I. Rewrite the following sentences, doubling the pronouns.

1. Ти ли ѝ каза за това?
2. -- Другата година библиотеката ще има ли тези списания?  
-- Не, няма да ги получаваме.
3. Нашите приятели благодариха ли им за помощта?
4. -- Задружно е. Няма ли да отворите тези прозорци?  
-- Не ги отваряме, за да не става течение.
5. Скоро ли го очаквате да дойде?
6. -- Нахрани ли децата?  
-- Нали знаеш, че аз никога няма да ги оставя гладни.
7. Ще го напиша когато имам време.

II. Compose negative and interrogative "experiencer" sentences as follows:

Model: Димитър (present tense) лесно

Answer: На Димитър не му е лесно. На Димитър лесно ли му е?

- |    |               |                 |         |
|----|---------------|-----------------|---------|
| 1. | Калина        | (past tense)    | добре   |
| 2. | Студентите    | (future tense)  | трудно  |
| 3. | Децата        | (present tense) | забавно |
| 4. | Майка ми      | (past tense)    | лошо    |
| 5. | Камен и Надка | (future tense)  | студено |
| 6. | Лекарят       | (past tense)    | добре   |
| 7. | Баща му       | (present tense) | весело  |

III. Fill in the blank with *ce* ONLY if the meaning requires it.

1. Те \_\_\_\_\_ оплакаха от него на учителката.
2. Другия месец ще \_\_\_\_\_ женим нашата малка дъщеря.
3. Качете \_\_\_\_\_ по стълбите, асансьорът не работи.
4. Вие Иван ли \_\_\_\_\_ казвате?
5. Младоженците ще ви \_\_\_\_\_ върнат парите, когато могат.
6. Те \_\_\_\_\_ ожениха преди пет години и имат две деца.
7. Джули и Дейвид ще \_\_\_\_\_ върнат в Америка в края на лятото.

## ADDITIONAL GRAMMAR NOTES

### 11.1a. Aorist tense, continued

The verb **спя́** (2sg. **спи́ш**) is irregular in that it spells the aorist theme vowel as **-a-** and not **-я-**. Its aorist is thus 1sg. **спáх**, 2sg. **спá**, etc. As in other verbs, the vowel in the **-я́** ending of the present tense is pronounced [ -йá ], while the **-á** ending of the aorist is pronounced [ -á ].

Verbs with monosyllabic stems in **-ая** (such as **ла́я**, **зна́я**) form the aorist with the theme vowel **-я-**. All prefixed forms of these verbs (except those of **зна́я**) also form the aorist with **-я-**. Verbs in **-ая** with disyllabic stems (such as **копа́я**), and prefixed forms of **зна́я** (e.g. **позна́я**), however, have no theme vowel in the aorist. Here are the present and aorist forms of **ла́я** and **позна́я**:

	PRESENT	AORIST	PRESENT	AORIST
1 <sup>st</sup> singular	ла́-я	ла́-ях	позна́-я	позна́-х
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	ла́-еши	ла́-я	позна́-еши	позна́
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	ла́-е	ла́-я	позна́-е	позна́
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	ла́-ем	ла́-яхме	позна́-ем	позна́-хме
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	ла́-ете	ла́-яхте	позна́-ете	позна́-хте
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	ла́-ят	ла́-яха	позна́-ят	позна́-ха

### 11.2a. Emphatic and doubled pronouns

#### The pronoun **се́бе**

The reflexive pronoun **се́бе** occurs only in the doubled form, and only in the form **се́бе си**. This phrase expresses both direct and indirect object meanings.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| -- Когó виждаш в огледа́лото?                                 | "Whom are you looking at in the mirror?"                                   |
| -- Виждам се́бе си в не́го.                                   | "I see myself in it."  |
| -- На ме́не ли говори́ш?                                      | "Are you talking to me?"   |
| -- Не́, на се́бе си.  | "No, to myself."   |
| За се́бе си ако не се́ погри́жиш,<br>за когó ще се погри́жиш? | If you don't look after yourself, then<br>who are you going to look after? |

#### Word order with doubled pronouns

Doubled pronoun phrases -- comprising a long form and a short form pronoun object -- are encountered very frequently in Bulgarian. The two pronouns mean

exactly the same thing, but since one of them is a clitic and the other a fully accented word, they are subject to very different word order rules.

Accented words can, in principle, occur anywhere in the sentence. The long form of a doubled object, however, almost always stands at the beginning of the sentence, although in certain instances it can also stand at the end of the sentence. Short form objects obey the rules already learned for clitics: they cannot begin a sentence, they stand immediately adjacent to the verb, and they follow directly the particles *да, ще* or *не*.

Combining these two sets of rules, one sees that the short object can directly follow the long one, if the sequence of objects is followed directly by the verb. More frequently, however, the verb occurs near or at the end of the sentence. Care must then be taken that both sets of word order rules are applied correctly. The following examples (with numbering cumulative across lessons) illustrate these rules. As clitics, the short form objects are identified in capital letters (*IND, DIR*). As fully accented words, the long form objects are identified in lower case letters (*indirect obj., direct obj.*)

- (49) На мене      ни́що      ни́кога      не      ми́      да́ва.  
indirect obj.    direct obj.                      Neg.    IND    verb  
She doesn't ever give me anything.

- (50) Не́я      ще      я      ви́диш      ли?  
direct obj.    Fut.    DIR    verb    INT  
Will you see her?

- (51) Ха́йде и      на тях      да      им      го      пока́жем.  
indirect obj.    Conj.    IND    DIR    verb  
Let's show it to them too.

- (52) Тя      жена́      ли      му      е      на не́го?  
subject    predicate    INT    IND    3<sup>d</sup>COP    indirect obj.  
Is she his wife?

### 11.3a. "Experiencer" constructions

Experiencer constructions also occur frequently with doubled pronoun objects. The rules outlined above apply to them as well, of course.

- (53) На не́я      не      ѝ      е      добре́.  
indirect obj.    Neg.    IND    3<sup>d</sup>COP  
She doesn't feel good.

- (54) На тях      не      им      бе́ше      добре́.  
indirect obj.    Neg.    IND    verb  
They didn't feel well.

- (55) На тях *indirect obj.* няма да им бъде добре.  
*neg. Conj. IND verb* They won't feel well.
- (56) На него *indirect obj.* добре ли ще му стане?  
*INT Fut. IND verb* Will he get better?
- (57) Добре ли му беше на Иван?  
*INT IND verb indirect obj.* Were things OK [in the end] for Ivan?

#### 11.4a. Transitivity, reciprocity, and the particle *ce*

A large number of verbs can occur both in the transitive form (accompanied by a direct object) and the intransitive form (accompanied by the particle *ce*). For some verbs, the intransitive is the more neutral of the two, and in this case the transitive variant takes on a more causative meaning. The same is true of certain reciprocal verbs. Here are examples of usage, with the more neutral intransitive variant given first.

##### *intransitive*

Синът ми се жени скоро.

My son is getting married soon.

##### *transitive*

Скоро ще жения синя си.

Soon I'll be marrying off my son.

##### *intransitive*

Ще се разходим из София.

We'll stroll around Sofia [and see the sights].

##### *transitive*

Ще разходя жена си из София.

I'm going to take my wife around Sofia [and show her the sights].

##### *reciprocal*

Не се карайте, деца.

Don't fight, children.

##### *transitive*

Не ме карай да те чакам.

Don't make me wait for you.

Certain reciprocal verbs can retain the *ce* and still occur with a seemingly transitive meaning. In these cases, the object is a prepositional phrase. For example:

Утре ще се срещнем с него.

We'll meet him tomorrow.

Той се кара често с нас.

He argues with us often.

Several verbs are particularly interesting in this regard. One is *интересувам*, whose transitive usage is as in English. When used intransitively, it adds *ce* and

## Единайсети урок / Lesson 11

takes the preposition *от*. The verb *оплаквам* "mourn" is similar: in the intransitive version (with the meaning "complain") it adds *се* and takes the preposition *от*.

The verb *сещам се* "remember, call to mind" also belongs to this category. Although this verb is transitive in English, in Bulgarian it is an intransitive verb marked by *се*. Like other verbs of mentioning, thinking etc., it takes an object with the preposition *за*. For the transitive meaning, the related verb *подсещам* "remind" is used. For all these verbs, examples of which are given below, the intransitive version is the one more commonly encountered.

*intransitive*

Интересувам се от  
средновековието.

I'm interested in the Middle Ages.

*transitive*

Интересува ме средновековието.

The Middle Ages interest me.

*intransitive*

От какво се оплаквате?

What are you complaining about?

*transitive*

Жив да го оплачеш.

It makes your heart bleed to see him.  
(literally: it's as if you mourn him alive.)

*intransitive*

По цели месеци не се сеща за  
майка си.

For months at a time he won't  
remember [to think of] his mother.

*transitive*

Ако не го подсета, няма и по  
телефона да ѝ се обади.

If I don't remind him, he won't get in  
touch with her even by phone.

### 11.5a. Adverbs of direction and location

There are numerous adverbs of location which are formed either with the prefix *от-* (and to a lesser extent, *на-*), or without a prefix altogether. These usages are idiomatic. For example:

Чётните номера на къщите са  
отляво, а нечётните --  
отдясно.

The even-numbered houses are on the  
left, and the odd-numbered ones on  
the right.

Той седи отляво (от лявата ми  
страна).

He's sitting on my left (on my left  
side).

Вътре гори огън -- ела вътре.

There's a fire inside -- come on in.

Навътре в гората има много  
ягоди.

There are a lot of strawberries in the  
woods.

Боли́ ме отвѣ́тре, като чу́вам  
таки́ва неща́.

It pains me [inside] to hear such things.

Деца́та си игра́ят вѣ́н.  
Деца́та си игра́ят отвѣ́н.  
Деца́та си игра́ят навѣ́н.

The children are playing outside.  
(same)  
(same)

Perhaps the most frequently used of these is the idiomatic formula *го́ре-до́лу*, which corresponds to English "more or less":

Така́ го́ре-до́лу ми́сля и аз.

That's more or less what I think, too.

### 11.5b. The noun *пѣт*

The noun *пѣт* "time" occurs in expressions like "the first time", "the second time", "every time", "some time" and the like. The plural is *-и*. There is no quantified form: the plural is used after numbers and other quantifiers.

This noun usually occurs in the indefinite form, although the definite form is possible if the speaker has a specific "time" in mind. As in other adverbials of time formed from masculine nouns (e.g. *миналия мѣсец*), the definite *object* form is used.

Все́ки пѣ́т, кога́то я ви́ждам,  
забра́вям да ѝ ка́жа за те́бе.

Every time I see her I forget to tell  
her about you.

За пѣ́рви пѣ́т ще во́дим деца́та  
в Евро́па.

We're taking the children to Europe  
for the first time.

После́дния пѣ́т, кога́то се  
видя́хме, бе́ше през  
деке́мври.

The last time we got together was in  
December.

Ще ми́на няко́й пѣ́т да си  
поприка́зваме.

I'll drop by some time so we can have  
a chat.

Ние́ се видя́хме са́мо еди́н пѣ́т,  
и то закрáтко.

We met only once, and for a very  
short time at that.

Два́ пѣ́ти, три́ пѣ́ти, няма  
значѣ́ние ко́лко пѣ́ти звѣ́ня  
по телефо́на и все́ не мо́га да  
го наме́ря.

Twice, three times, it doesn't matter  
how many times I call, he's never  
there.

### 11.7a. Social interactional formulas

Another way to express congratulations is with phrases containing the adjective **честит**. If the occasion is not specified, one uses the adverbial form. If the occasion is specified, the adjective **честит** modifies the noun signifying it. For example:

Честита Нова година!	Happy New Year!
Честит рождён ден!	Happy birthday!
Честита Баба Марта!	Happy first day of spring!
Честит празник!	Happy holiday!
Честито!	Congratulations!

The greeting for one who has just arrived is composed of the adverb **добре** and the L-participle of the verb **дойда**. This phrase, which means literally "well come", must carry the adjectival ending appropriate to the person(s) being welcomed.

<i>greeting</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>	<i>addressee</i>
Добре дошл-и!	Welcome!	a group or a single person spoken to as <b>вие</b>
Добре дошл-а!	Welcome!	a female spoken to as <b>ти</b>
Добре дош-ъл!	Welcome!	a male spoken to as <b>ти</b>
Добре дошл-о!	Welcome!	a child, animal or neuter object

The imperative form **заповядай** (plural **заповядайте**) is used on a number of occasions. It is said on moving aside to let someone pass, on handing someone something (either as a gift or as a purchase), on extending an invitation, or on asking someone in. Examples below are given in the plural form; of course, the singular is used in speaking to someone addressed as **ти**.

Заповядайте, минете.	After you.
Ето, заповядайте.	Here [you are].
Заповядайте на гости у нас.	Come by and see us [sometime].
Заповядайте!	Come in!

### 11.9. Definiteness and numbers

Numbers can be used in the definite form when the group they refer to is spoken of as a specified, known unit. If the unit is 1, the definite form usually signals a contrast between "the one" and "the other". In the plural, **едни(те)** is used in the sense "some, certain ones".

Of course, numbers higher than 1 cannot distinguish singular and plural. Definite articles for these numbers are either **-та** (any number form ending in **-а**) or **-те**. For numbers 4 and higher the accent shifts to the definite article.

Here is a synopsis of the forms and their accentuation, followed by examples.

number	masculine		neuter	feminine	(plural)
1	един-ият		едно-то	една-та	едни-те
	personal	non-personal			
2	двама-та	два-та	две-те		
3	трима-ата	три-те			
4	четирима-та	четири-те			
	etc.		etc.		

Едната врата е отворена, а  
другата не е.

One of the doors is open, and the other  
one isn't.

Едните влизат, а другите  
излизат.

Some come in, and others go out.

Разхожда ме по едни криви  
улици.

He's taking me down some crooked  
streets.

А вие двамата, елате след 1 час.

As for you two, come back in an hour.

Трите жени чакат на опашка.

The three women are waiting in line.

Това беше през петдесетте  
години.

That was during the 50s.

When definite numbers are preceded by the conjunction **и**, the meaning is "all of..." (or, in the case of the number 2, "both"). For example:

И двамата мъже идват да ни  
помогнат.

Both men are coming to help us.

Ще почета и от двете книги.

I'll read a bit from both of the books.

Ще дойдат и тримата.

All three of them will come.

И трите яйца са развалени.

All three eggs went bad.

The ordinal number **първи** can also appear without the final **-и** in certain idiomatic expressions. The form without the **-и** is spelled differently: the sequence **-ър-** is replaced by the sequence **-ръ-**. For example:

Ще се срещнат за пръв път.

They will meet for the first time.



### 11.10. The conjunction **че**, continued

The conjunction **че** often suggests a mild degree of causality. In such instances, it is best left untranslated into English, since the English conjunction "because" would convey too much of a causal relationship. For example:

Хайде, **че** съм гладен!  
Аз да вървя, **че** ме чакат.

Let's go! I'm hungry!  
I'm on my way; they're waiting for me.

NOTE: A comma is nearly always written before **че**, regardless of either the meaning, or the spoken form, of the sentence.

### 11.11. The particle **де**

The particle **де** suggests increased interaction in conversation, often verging on impatience.

Кажѝ **де**! Жѐнен ли си?  
Хайде **де**! Да трѣгваме!

So tell me! Are you married [or not]?  
Come on! Let's get going!



## SAMPLE SENTENCES

1. Лиляна се плаши от мишки. Младен ѝ казва: Не се плаши, няма нищо страшно.
2. Малките деца вярват в Торбалан и се плашат от него.
3. -- Ох, как ме стресна!  
-- Не се стряскай, аз съм.
4. Камен и Надка не се разбират много добре: те се разбират като куче и котка.
5. Двамата братя карат колите си по един и същ начин.
6. Не се сещам каква песен можем да изпеем. Подсети ме за някоя хубава песен.
7. Спомням си доброто старо време.
8. Спомняш ли си колко струва един трамваен билет в София?
9. Ако не закуси, след обед ще му стане лошо.
10. На Лиляна ѝ става лошо в самолёт.
11. Камене, лошо ли ти е? Защо си толкова блед?
12. И двамата бяхме болни. Сега на мене ми е по-добре, а той още не може да става от леглото.
13. На мене ми е ясно за какво става дума, на тебе ясно ли ти е?
14. На нея все ѝ е студено, а на него му е горещо. Той отваря прозореца, тя го затваря.
15. Накъде ме водиш? Там няма път.
16. Вървиш наляво до пресечката, после завиваш.
17. Пътят е тясна: отляво има планина, а отдясно -- пропаст.

## **SENTENCES FOR TRANSLATION**

1. How is your father? I saw him yesterday and he wasn't so well then. What is the matter with him?
2. Boris and Marina don't speak to each other any more. They are always fighting. Things aren't going very well for them. I wanted to help them but I couldn't. Could you?
3. Will you wake up on time, or do you want me to wake you up? Don't complain if I wake you earlier than you want. It's better than waking up too late.
4. Congratulations on your new house! May you live there many long and happy years!
5. Ivan is cold, can you give him his jacket please? The children were cold before, but then their mother brought them their jackets and now they are no longer cold.
6. The students are all upset [feeling bad], because they have an exam tomorrow. Last night they were so cold they couldn't study. Today they will help each other study, though.
7. Are you all right? You say you're OK, but I'm worried about you. You say you are going to the left and then you go to the right, and you say you are going up and then you go down.
8. I don't understand. He sold you the kebabs for ten leva, but he sold me kebabs for fifteen leva. I don't want to complain to everyone, but to you I'll complain!
9. Your friends had a lot of fun last night -- they watched a film, saw many of their favorite actors, and died laughing. Why couldn't you watch the film with them? Were you really ill? Are you better now?
10. There are so many new places to visit -- I'm interested in all of them. But I am most interested in the mountains. I always feel great in the mountains. My sister does too -- we both are happy when we are in the mountains.

## READING SELECTION

### Кореспонденция - (9)

7 януари

Драги Боб,

Ние сме, както винаги през зимната ваканция, на гости за няколко дни у моите родители. Дойдохме веднага след Нова година. Родителите ми са вече стари и единствената им радост в живота са любимите внуци. Като повечето стари хора не искат да променят навиците си и да дойдат да живеят при нас. Много им се молихме, но не можахме да ги убедим. Къщата им тука е, разбира се, несравнимо по-голяма и удобна от нашия апартамент в София. Но на нас ще ни е приятно те да са по-близо до нас. И ние на тях ще можем повече да помагаме, и те на нас. Яна и особено Йво са много привързани към своите баба и дядо: като малък Йво прекара три години в Смолян при тях. Явно, докато са здрави (да чука на дърво), ще са тук, пък после ще видим.

Майка ми е много доволна, че сме на гости в Смолян. Шета от сутрин до вечер из къщи. Вчера ни прави баница, она ден -- кокотка с кисело зеле. Даже не се сеща да се оплаква от здравето си.

Ние с баща ми тия дни постъгнахме къщата -- знаеш как са старите къщи, в тях все има по нещо счупено.

Тук климатът е суров, а къщата на родителите ми няма, разбира се, парно отопление. Калина е зиморичава и все ѝ е студено. Вчера даже ѝ стана лошо, но днес ѝ е по-добре. Докато беше студено, държахме децата повече вътре. Днес обаче времето омекна и те излязоха навън. Яна направи голям снежен човек с нос от морков, а Йво си играе с кучето на двора. Още три дни и ще се връщаме в София. Може би там ще ни чака писмо от вас.

На тебе и на семейството ти пожелавам да сте живи и здрави.

Сърдечни поздрави,

Бойко

P.S. Пращам тази картичка да видите колко са хубави родните ми Родопи.



23 януари

Драги Бойко,

Няма да повярваш, но днес получихме едновременно вашите писма от 29 декември и 7 януари. Много благодарим за хубавите картички. Патриша се кани да пише отделно на Калина в отговор на новогодишната честитка. Родопите изглежда наистина заслужават да ги посетим за няколко дни. Какви интересни места има там? В България аз чух от колегите само за зимния курорт Боровец, но дали има смисъл да отидем до там, щом ще бъдем в България през лятото?

Въобщие, защо не ми разкажеш повече за планините в България? Аз видях само Витоша. Много е хубава. Ходих до там цели два пъти. Единия път, както сигурно си спомняш, се качихме с тебе и с Йво на Черни връх. А няколко дни по-късно ме водиха да вечеряме на Копитото. Изгледът към нощна София от ресторанта беше чудесен.

В едно от предишните си писма ти ми писа за Рила. Ние с Патриша вече твърдо решихме да посетим Рилския манастир.

Четохме за нестинарите в Странджа. Как мислиш, по кое време да отидем, за да ги видим?

Ето че пак те затрупах с въпроси. Чакаме с нетърпение отговора ти.

Поздрави от всички ни

Боб

## GLOSSARY

абонирам	subscribe	едновременно	simultaneous
арабски	Arab ( <i>adj.</i> )	ерген	bachelor
асансьор	elevator		
Баба Марта	Granny March (har- binger of spring)	жълко	too bad, pity
билет	ticket	жéня	marry off
блед	pale	жéня се	get married
		жív	live, living, alive
вдясно	on the right	жív да го	it makes your heart bleed
вляво	on the left	оплáчеш	to see him
врéх, врéхът	summit; tip	за	to ( <i>in a toast</i> )
( <i>pl.</i> врéховé)		за каквó стáва	what's the matter, what's
врéщам се /	return, go back	дúма	it about
вэрна се		за мнóго годíни	many happy returns
вълшéбник	magician, wizard	за да	in order to ( <i>conjunction</i>
тáи	out		<i>of purpose</i> )
вэобщé	in general	за да не стáва	so there won't be a draft
вэпрóс	question	тéчéние	
вэтрé	in, inside	зabáвен	amusing, fun
		закрáтко	for a short while
гóре	up	закúсам / закúся	eat breakfast
гóре-дóлу	more or less	зaпúмúвам	interest, occupy
горéщ	hot	зaнимaвам се с	be occupied with
горя	burn	зaслужáвам /	deserve, be worth
		зaслúжa (-иш)	
да сте жívи и	here's to your life	затрúпам /	cover up, bury under;
здрáви	and health	затрúпам	pile up
дáже	even	затрúпам с	burden with questions
дaлú	whether, if; ( <i>question</i>	вэпрóси	
	<i>particle</i> )	зúмeн	winter ( <i>adj.</i> )
дaлú íма смúсъл?	does it make any	зúмeн курóрт	ski resort
	sense?	зúмóрничaв	sensitive to the cold
двóр	yard	и то	at that
дéсен, дясна	right	игрáя на двóра	play in the yard
дóлу	down	игрáя си	play around
дóбрé дошлá	welcome ( <i>to female</i> )	иэ	around, throughout
дóбрé дошлú!	welcome ( <i>to a group</i>	из кúщи	around the house
	<i>or a formal</i>		( <i>fixed phrase</i> )
дóбрé дошгúл	<i>acquaintance</i> )	изпúвам / изпéя	sing [ <i>to the end</i> ]
дóбрóто стáро вréмe	welcome ( <i>to male</i> )	íма смúсъл	it makes sense
дошгúл	the good old days	интересúвам се от	be interested in
дървó ( <i>pl.</i> дървá)	come		
държá (-иш)	wood	кáк тáкá	how is it that, how can
дясна see дéсен	hold, keep	кáня се	that be
		кáрам се	plan, intend
едúнствен, -eнa	single, only	кaто мáлтък	scold, quarrel
			when he was little

# Единайсети урок / Lesson 11

качвам се по стълбите	climb the stairs	оня	that ( <i>variant of</i> онзи)
климат	climate	опашки	tail; line, queue
когато	when ( <i>conjunction</i> )	оплаквам /	mourn, lament
кокóшка	hen, fowl	оплача (-еш)	
комедия	comedy	оплаквам се /	complain, grumble
курóрт	resort	оплача се (-еш)	
лая	bark	отвѣн	from outside
ляв ( <i>pl. лѣви</i> )	left, Left	отгоре	from above
мечé	bear cub	отдолу	from below
Мéчо Пúх	Winnie the Pooh	отдясно	from the right
миризмá	smell, scent	отляво	from the left
мишка	mouse	отоплѣние	heating
мóже	it's possible	отскóро	(since) quite recently
		очилá ( <i>pl. only</i> )	eyeglasses
навик	habit	парá	coin
навѣн	outside ( <i>directional</i> )	парен	steam ( <i>adj.</i> )
навѣтре	inside ( <i>directional</i> )	парѣ	money
нагоре	up ( <i>directional</i> )	парно отоплѣние	central heating
надóлу	down ( <i>directional</i> )	пѣя	sing
надясно	to the right	плáща се (-иш)	be frightened, fear
наздраве	cheers, to your health!	пúвечто	the majority
накъдѣ	to where	погрижвам се /	take care of, look after
налѣво	to the left	погрижа се (-иш)	
нахранвам / нахраня	feed	подавам / подám	hand, pass, reach
не работи	it's out of order	(-дадѣш)	
несравним	incomparable	поприказвам	have a chat
нестинáр	fire-dancer	попáвам / попéя	sing a little
нестинáрство	fire-dancing, fire- walking	поразхóждам	take for a brief stroll
нечѣтен	odd-numbered	посещáвам /	visit
новогодишен	New Year's	посетя	
новогодишна	New Year's greeting	постягам / постéгна	tighten, fasten; prepare, fix up
честитка		почитам, почетá	read for a bit
нос, -ѣт ( <i>pl. носовé</i> )	nose	пресѣчка	intersection
няма нищо страшно	there's nothing to be afraid of	привѣрзан	tied, bound, attached
		променям /	change
обáждам се по	call on the phone	променя	
телефóна		пропáст, -тá	abyss, cavern
огледáло	mirror	пѣк	but, yet, and, while
ожѣнвам / ожéня	marry	пѣтѣкл	(foot)path
ожѣнвам се /	get married	пѣтѣшествие	trip
ожéня се		рáбота	job; matter
омѣквам / омѣкна	soften, grow milder	работя	work, be in operation
пшáи	that ( <i>variant of</i> онáзи)	развалѣн	spoiled, rotten
онпáи	those ( <i>variant of</i> онéзи)	разхóдка из градá	city tour
онúй	that ( <i>variant of</i> оновá)	решáвам /	decide
		решá (-иш)	
		рóден	one's own, native
		рóдно мýсто	birthplace
		салáм	sausage

# Единайсети урок / Lesson 11

самолёт	airplane	тоя	this (variant of този)
сватбен, -ена	wedding (adj.)	туй	this (variant of това)
сватбено	honeymoon	тъй	thus (variant of така)
пътешестване			
себе си	oneself (reflexive object form)	убеждавам / убедя	persuade (see L. 14)
семейство	family	удобен	convenient/comfortable
сещам се / сета се	recall, come to mind, think of, remember	умирам / умра	die
смиъл	sense, meaning	умирам от смях	die laughing
смях, смехът	laughter	хайде да се чукнем	let's have a toast
(pl. смехове)			
снежен	snow (adj.)	чакам на опашка	wait in/on line
снежен човек	snowman	черен	black
спирам / спра	stop	честит празник	happy holiday
стоя	stay in one place	честит рожден ден	happy birthday
стрискам / стресна	startle, scare	честито	congratulations!
стрискам се /	be startled, take fright	четвърт, -та	quarter
стресна се		четен	even-numbered
стълба	step, ladder	чукам / чука	knock, clink
суров	severe	чукам на дърво	knock on wood
счупен, -ена	broken	чукам се /	clink glasses, toast
събуждам / събудя	wake	чука се	
събуждам се /	wake up, awaken		
събудя се		шампанско	champagne
такъв (такава,	such	ще свърши работа	that'll do the job
такова, такива)		щом	as soon as, since, as,
такива неща	such things		if, once
твърд	this (variant of този)	явен	open, obvious
твърдо решавам	hard, firm, steadfast	явно	clearly
тия	firmly resolve	ягода	strawberry
	these (variant of	яйце (pl. яйца)	egg
	тези)	ясен	clear
то	then (particle)	ясно ми е	I get it, it's clear
торба	bag, sack		





## CULTURAL COMMENTARY

### Families: relationship patterns; residences

The parent-child relationship in Bulgaria is a very close one. It is nearly unthinkable, for instance, that a mother will not be present at her son's wedding: only the most drastic of unforeseeable circumstances would prevent her attendance.

The grandparent-grandchild relationship is also very close. It is not uncommon for children to spend very long periods of time at the home of the grandparents. Sometimes this is from necessity, as the parents both must work and cannot look after their children properly. It is also, however, traditional to keep the tie between the generations alive in this way.

As a rule, there is a large difference between city residences and country ones. Those in the city are small, cramped, and often in large apartment buildings with no open space for children to play. Those in the country are frequently large and roomy, but they lack central heating (and sometimes even indoor plumbing).

### Literature: children's books

Many favorite children's books from other languages have been translated into Bulgarian, among them A. A. Milne's *Winnie the Pooh* (Мечо Пух) and L. F. Baum's *The Wizard of Oz* (Вълшебникът от Оз). There are also many fine children's books written in Bulgarian, one of which is *Jan Bibian on the Moon* (Ян Бибиан на луната), by the well-known author Elin Pelin (Елин Пелин, 1878-1949).

### Geography: seaside and mountain resorts

The Black Sea coast is a favorite vacation spot. There are many fine beaches, resorts and small tourist spots. Bulgarians speak of it simply as морето ("the sea"). The other favorite vacation spot is the mountains; there are numerous resorts. One of the best known (for both summer and winter sports) is Borovets (Боровец), in the northern Rila mountains. Another is Pamporovo (Пампорово) in the Rhodopes. Being within the city limits of Sofia, Vitosha mountain is not considered a resort. Nevertheless it has ski lifts and tourist hotels, which are frequently visited. The hotel at Kopitoto (Копитото) has a good restaurant and a fine view of the city. Hiking to the top of Vitosha, at Cherni vrkh (Черни връх) is a favorite activity.

### Geography: Strandzha

The far southeastern corner of Bulgaria is called Strandzha (Странджа). One of the archaic folk customs formerly practiced there is that of "nestinarstvo" (нестинярство) or fire-walking. The fire-walkers (нестиняри) would be moved to state of ecstasy which would allow them to dance barefoot on live coals without getting burned. The custom is now recreated for tourists with a simulation of live coals.

### Customs and beliefs: Baba Marta; Torbalan

"Granny March" (Баба Марта) is the personification of the month of March; spring is said to begin on the first day of March. (For the custom of "martenitsi", see Lesson 13.)

Torbalan (Торбалан) is a mythical character in Bulgarian children's folklore. He carries a large sack (торбá), and is said to scoop up naughty children into his sack and carry them off.

## LESSON 12

### **DIALOGUE**

#### Защо габровците режат опашките на котките?

Веселин: Кóлко е часът? Кóлко óще има до Гóрна Оряховица?

Дейвид: Тáм ли ще слизате?

Веселин: Дá. Тáм трябва да се прехвърля на друг влак, на влака за Гáброво.

Дейвид: Кажéте ни нéщо за фестивáла. Каквó става тáм?

Веселин: Мнóго е интереснó и забáвно. Гáбровци разпáвят мнóго ви́цове.  
Ще ви разка́жа едíн. Защо габровците режат опашките на котките?

Джули: Защо?

Веселин: За да не изсти́ва стáята, като вли́зат и изли́зат през зíмата.

Дейвид: Но това е ужáсно!

Веселин: Защо?

Дейвид: Нали́ живóтните имат правá! Няма ли при вáс обществó за заш́ита  
на правáта на живóтните? Тря́бва да има, на всяка ценá!

Веселин: Това е ви́ц. Знаéте ли каквó е ви́ц?

Дейвид: Не мí харéсват таки́ва ви́цове.

Надка: Ма́мо, заболя́ ме гърлото!

Милена: Като седи́ш на течéние, така́ е!

Таня: Ка́мене, те́бе боли́ ли те гърлото?

Камен: Нé, са́мо момичетата ги боли́.

Таня: Кажí ми, наíстина ли ти е добré?

Камен: Добré ми е ма́мо, чéстна дýма.

Дейвид: Кажете ми още нещо за фестивала. Какво правите? Само вицове ли си разправяте?

Веселин: Не знам точно, те всяка година измислят нещо ново. Миналата година организираха карнавално шествие. Вчера във Варна случайно срещнах един приятел от Габрово. Много се зарадвах да го видя. Само че той беше много зает. Поговорихме си с него за фестивала на крак, като вървахме по улицата. Чух от него, че сега подготвят големи изненади. Затова отивам да видя със собствените си очи. Защо не дойдете с мен? Сами ще видите. Сигурен съм, че много ще харесате фестивала.

Дейвид: Какво мислиш, Джули? Да отидем ли?

Джули: Може.



Monument to the April Uprising, Dryanovo Monastery  
near Veliko Tarnovo

## BASIC GRAMMAR

### 12.1. Aorist tense, conclusion

There is a small group of verbs whose aorist is irregular. The aorist theme vowel -a- is added to a stem which has lost its internal vowel. This group includes *берá* and all its prefixed forms, as well as *перá*, *дерá* and their prefixed forms. Below are the present and aorist tense forms of *перá* and *разберá*.

	PRESENT	AORIST	PRESENT	AORIST
1 <sup>st</sup> singular	пер-á	пр-áх	разбер-á	разбр-áх
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	пер-эш	пр-á	разбер-эш	разбр-á
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	пер-é	пр-á	разбер-é	разбр-á
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	пер-ém	пр-áхме	разбер-ém	разбр-áхме
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	пер-ете	пр-áхте	разбер-ете	разбр-áхте
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	пер-át	пр-áха	разбер-át	разбр-áха

### 12.2. Usage of the aorist tense

The Bulgarian aorist tense is used to convey the simplest, most straightforward of past tense meanings: the fact that an action happened. It is formed freely from verbs of both aspects. The crucial factor in determining which aspect to use is the meaning desired, and the degree of boundedness associated with that meaning. Consider the following narration, in which the aorist verb forms are underlined:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| -- Тí каквó <u>пράви</u> вчéра?   | "What did you do yesterday?"  |
| -- <u>Учих</u> чéтири чáса,<br>а пóсле <u>пíх</u> кафé.<br><u>Изпíх</u> трí кафéта. | "I studied for four hours,<br>and then had [some] coffee.<br>I drank three cups of coffee." |
| -- <u>Нау́чи</u> ли нéщо<br>за тéзи чéтири чáса?                                    | "Did you learn something/anything<br>in those four hours?"                                  |
| -- <u>Нау́чих</u> правилáта<br>на пýтното дви́жение.                                | "I learned the rules of the road."  |

Each of these above verbs relates what the speaker "did". Some of what she did was more bounded in meaning, and for these actions perfective verbs ("learn", "drink [up a certain amount]") were used. When no boundedness was implied, imperfective verbs ("do", "study", "drink ") were used.

English can only sometimes render this distinction formally, such as through the opposition between "study" and "learn". More frequently, the English distinction must be understood from the context. Bulgarians, however (as well as students

learning to speak and write Bulgarian) must always make a conscious choice between a bounded (perfective) or an unbounded (imperfective) verb form.

### 12.3. Impersonal verbs

Bulgarian has four verb forms called "impersonal", which express the meanings of existence, non-existence, possibility and necessity. Two have been learned already and two will be learned in this lesson. Each impersonal verb is formally equivalent to the 3sg. form of a fully conjugated verb. The two sets are:

<i>conjugated verb</i>	<i>meaning</i>	<i>impersonal verb</i>	<i>meaning</i>
има́м	have	има́	there is/are
ня́мам	not have	ня́ма	there isn't/aren't
мо́га	can, be able	мо́же	maybe, OK
тря́бвам	be necessary to	тря́бва	must, have to

Of the conjugated verbs, only **тря́бвам** is new to the student. The subject of this verb (and of the sentence) is the person or thing needed, and the one who needs it is expressed as the indirect object. Here are examples:

О, Миле́на! То́чно ти ми  
тря́бваш!

Oh, Milena! You're just whom I  
need! [= Exactly you  
are necessary to me.]

Тря́бват им цвѐтни мо́ливи.

They need colored pencils.  
[= Colored pencils are  
necessary to them.]

Тря́бва им един добѐр ре́чник.

They need a good dictionary.  
[= A good dictionary is  
necessary to them.]

The unchanging form **тря́бва** (equivalent to the 3sg. form of **тря́бвам**) is much more commonly encountered. In its meaning as an impersonal form, it either stands alone or is followed by a да-phrase. Although impersonal **тря́бва** does not have a grammatical subject, the да-phrase does, and this subject may or may not be expressed. A literal translation of **тря́бва** would be "it is necessary that...", but the more normal translation is "have to", "must", "need to". Here are examples:

То́й тря́бва да учи.  
Тря́бва да учи.

He's got to study.

Аз тря́бва да рабо́тя дове́чера.  
Тря́бва да рабо́тя дове́чера.

I have to work tonight.

Ние́ тря́бва да слѐзем ту́ка.  
Тря́бва да слѐзем ту́ка.

We need to get off here.

Ти трябва да дойдеш навреме!	You must arrive on time!
Трябва да дойдеш навреме!	

Compare the above examples with the usage of conjugated трябва (from трябвавам):

Трябва му добър адвокат.	He needs a good lawyer.
Трябват му добри адвокати.	He needs good lawyers.

Although the impersonal form може can be literally translated "it is possible that...", the more normal translation is "may" or "might". In fact, the difference between the Bulgarian impersonal form може and the conjugated verb мога is roughly parallel to that between English "might" and "can". For example:

*impersonal* може

Може да работя довечера.	I might work tonight.
	[= it's a possibility]
Може ли да вляза?	May I come in?

*conjugated* може, from мога

Мога да работя довечера.	I can work tonight.
	[= I'm able and willing]
Не мога да вляза, че нямам ключ.	I can't get in, I don't have a key.

#### 12.4. "Third-person" verbs

Bulgarian has several verbs which occur only in the third person. These verbs are *not* impersonal -- they have singular and plural forms, and they take a subject. They are listed in the dictionary in their 3<sup>rd</sup> singular forms.

The most common of these verbs is боли "hurt". The subject of this verb is always the body part which hurts, and the object of the verb is the person who experiences pain. Sentences with боли are similar in many ways to the "experiencer" constructions learned in Lesson 11. The primary differences are that the pronoun object is a *direct* object, and that the verb has a subject, with which it must agree.

Боли ме главата.	I have a headache.
Боли го стомахът.	He has a stomachache.
Боли я зъбът.	She has a toothache.
Болят я зъбите.	Her teeth hurt.

## Дванайсети урок / Lesson 12

As in experiencer constructions, the doubled object can also be used, and *must* be used, when the experiencer of the body-part pain is expressed as a noun. Since the experiencer of the pain is grammatically a direct object, masculine nouns must have the definite object ending.

Мéне ме боли́ главáта.	I have a headache.
Нéя я болят зéбите.	Her teeth hurt.
Кали́на я боли́ ухóто.	Kalina has an earache.
Йво го боли́ гéрлото.	Ivo has a sore throat.
Студéнта го боли́ кракéт.	The student's leg hurts.

When the ailment is of a single type but concerns a number of experiencers, the verb can be either singular or plural. The plural form of the noun/pronoun object is sufficient to indicate the multiplicity of sufferers.

-- Ка́мене, тебе боли́ ли те гéрлото?	"Kamen, do you have a sore throat?"
-- Не, са́мо момичетата ги боли́.	"No, only girls have sore throats."

The aorist of боли́ is боля́ (on the model of the verb вървя́, aorist вървях́). The meaning is that something hurt at some point in the past but no longer does now. With the prefix за-, the meaning is "begin to hurt." For example:

Вче́ра ме боля́ главáта.	I had a headache yesterday.
Ми́налата се́дмица Лиля́на я боля́ха очите́.	Lilyana's eyes hurt last week.
Заболя́ха ги главите́ от миризмáта.	They got headaches from the smell.

### 12.5. Verbs of "liking"

To express the idea of "like" or "love" in general, Bulgarians use the verb обичам. It is used with infinitive replacements (да-phrases) and with certain nouns.

На́дка обича да рису́ва.	Nadka likes to draw.
Деца́та мно́го обичат да ходят на цирк.	The children love going to the circus.
Обичаш ли класи́ческа му́зика?	Do you like classical music?
Обичам те.	I love you.
Обичам те мно́го.	I like you a lot.

## Дванайсети урок / Lesson 12

By contrast, positive reactions to a particular thing or event, or particular single instances of "liking", are expressed with the verb **харѣсвам** (perfective **харѣсам**).

Тѣ кой пѣсни нѣй-мнѣго харѣсваш?	Which songs do you like the best?
Харѣса ли фѣлма?	Did you like the film?
Мнѣго си хѣбава -- сѣгурно ще те харѣса.	You're lovely -- of course she'll like you.

Peculiar to this verb is the ability to alternate transitive with intransitive usage. The above examples illustrate the transitive use: direct objects are clearly present. In the intransitive usage of this verb, the subject (the one who does the liking) is transformed into an indirect object experiencer (the one to whom something is pleasing).

Тѣзи пѣсен ми харѣсва. Харѣсва ли ти мѣята рѣкля?	That's a nice song -- I like it. Do you like this dress on me?
-- Мнѣго ни харѣса фѣлмѣт.	"We liked the film a lot."
-- А на мѣне не мѣ харѣса.	"Not me -- I didn't like it."

In most cases, it is difficult to render into English the difference between transitive and intransitive **харѣсвам** without a larger context. In general, however, the focus of the intransitive usage is less upon the "action" of liking (or not liking) and more upon the object which produces this reaction. Both uses of the verb mean "like [something]"; indeed Bulgarians use the two forms of this verb largely interchangeably.

### 12.6. Embedded questions, continued; the use of **дали**

Embedded questions, studied in Lesson 4, are questions which are integrated into another sentence, usually as the object of a verb. In terms of word order, it is important to remember that they reproduce the order of the original question exactly.

*original question*

Щѣ бѣдѣш ли тѣм?

Will you be there?

*embedded question*

Пѣтай го

ще бѣде ли тѣм.

Ask him if he will be there.

Speakers of English must take care not to translate "if" in sentences such as the above by Bulgarian **ако**. A rule of thumb is: if one can substitute "whether" for "if" in the English, then one must use **ли** (and not **ако**) in the Bulgarian.



Embedded questions of this sort may also be formulated with the conjunction **дали**. In this case, the interrogative particle **ли** is dropped, and the conjunction stands at the beginning of the embedded sentence. Note the similarity between the word order of English "if/whether" sentences and Bulgarian **дали** sentences:

Пийтай го	дали	ще бъде там.
Ask him	if/whether	he will be there.

### 12.7. The pronoun **сам**

The emphatic pronoun **сам** has two different meanings. One is equivalent to English "by/for oneself" and the other is equivalent to English "alone". There is a certain overlap between the two meanings, as in English, where the phrase "by oneself", can refer either to the state of being unaccompanied, or to self-initiated action.

Here are the forms, followed by examples of usage:

<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>plural</i>
<b>сам</b>	<b>самá</b>	<b>самó</b>	<b>самѝ</b>

Елате с мѐн! Самѝ ще видите.

Come with me! You'll see for yourselves.

Ти самá ли пътуваш? Хайде да седнем заедно.

Are you traveling alone? Let's sit together.

One must be careful to distinguish the adverb **само** "only" from the neuter pronominal adjective **самó** (in either of the above two meanings). For example:

**само** "only"

Само едното дете рисува;  
другите гледат телевизия.

Only the one child is drawing;  
the others are watching TV.

**самó** "alone, by oneself"

Детето седи самó в стаята  
и рисува.

The child is sitting alone in his room  
and drawing.

Детето направи тази рисунка  
самó, без моя помощ.

The child did the drawing all by  
himself, without [any] help  
from me.

## 12.8. Names of body parts

Names of many body parts which come in pairs, including those for hands, feet, eyes, and ears, have irregular plurals. The singular and plural forms in Bulgarian are:

<i>sg. indef.</i>	<i>sg. def.</i>	<i>pl. indef.</i>	<i>pl. def.</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>
ръка́	ръка́та	ръце́	ръце́те	hand, arm
кра́к	кракът	крака́	крака́та	foot, leg
око́	око́то	очи́	очи́те	eye
ухо́	ухо́то	уши́	уши́те	ear

The nouns *око́* and *ухо́* are neuter, but they have the plural ending *-и*.



Church in Nesebăr, detail

## EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with the proper form of *харесвам* or *обичам*.

1. Джу́ли \_\_\_\_\_ ма́лките де́ца и жи́вотните.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ ли ви та́зи ста́я?
3. На́дка \_\_\_\_\_ да ѝ четáт при́казки.
4. Каквó \_\_\_\_\_ по́вече: шокола́д или сладолéд?
5. Ни́е не \_\_\_\_\_ таки́ва къ́си причéски.
6. То́й \_\_\_\_\_ приро́дата и зато́ва хóди чéсто на екску́рзии.
7. Всéки живее́, ка́кто му \_\_\_\_\_.

II. Fill in the blanks with one of the following: *мо́же, има́, няма́, трябва́*; or with a conjugated form of *мо́га, има́м, няма́м, or трябва́м*.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ да е голя́ма хубави́ца, но не е мно́го любéзна.
2. Извинéте, сегá не \_\_\_\_\_ да ви покáня, мно́го бързам.
3. Не говори́, кога́то \_\_\_\_\_ каквó да ка́жеш.
4. Деца́та \_\_\_\_\_ да слúшат ма́йка си и баща́ си.
5. Ако \_\_\_\_\_ пари́, \_\_\_\_\_ да ви даде́м наза́ем.
6. В университетската библиотéка \_\_\_\_\_ мно́го кнíги за Бългáрия.
7. Те́ не \_\_\_\_\_ да рабóтят, кога́то \_\_\_\_\_ гóсти.

III. Fill in the blanks with an appropriate form of the verb *боли́* (choose between *боли́, боля́т, боля́, боля́ха, заболя́, заболя́ха*).

1. Ако те \_\_\_\_\_ зб́бите, иди́ на збо́лекар.
2. Ка́мен е добре́, вéче ни́що не го́ \_\_\_\_\_.
3. След вече́ря Милéна я \_\_\_\_\_ главáта.
4. Ако ви \_\_\_\_\_ крака́та, седне́те да си почи́нете.
5. То́лькова се умори́ха, че всíчки ги \_\_\_\_\_ очи́те.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ ни усти́те да повта́ряме, че това́ е грéшка.
7. Ми́налия ме́сец тях па́к ги \_\_\_\_\_ стомáх.

## ADDITIONAL GRAMMAR NOTES

### 12.1a. Relationship between aorist and present tense forms

Mastery of the Bulgarian verb system comes from an understanding not only of its different forms, but also of their interrelationships. In every dictionary (and in the glossary lists in this book) verbs appear in their present tense forms. One is therefore inclined to think that the present tense *is* the verb, and that everything else is derived from it.

In actuality, the verb is a complex of many forms, and is based upon the relationship between the present and the aorist tenses. Some verb forms are derived from the present tense, and others are derived from the aorist tense. Neither the present nor the aorist is primary, and both are essential.

To truly know a verb, therefore, one must know

- (a) its present tense form;
- (b) its aorist tense form;
- (c) the relationship that obtains between them.

The chart which follows is intended to guide the student internalize this knowledge in the most economic fashion.

Nearly every verb in Bulgarian belong to one of nine basic types. Conjugating a newly learned verb, therefore, is simply a matter of learning which type it belongs to. In the chart, these types are exemplified wherever possible by non-prefixed verbs. This is to underscore the fact that although adding a prefix changes the *meaning* of a verb, it does not alter its *form*. For instance, once the student learns all the forms for *берá*, s/he then knows all the forms for *разберá*, *приберá*, and any other verb composed of "prefix + *берá*".

The organizing principle of the chart is the theme vowel, and the characteristic sign of a type is the combination of present and aorist theme vowels. The verb forms given as examples are 1<sup>st</sup> plural. For clarity, forms are divided as follows:

<i>root</i>	<i>theme</i>	<i>ending</i>
	<i>vowel</i>	
ХОД	- И -	- ХМЕ

The following conventions are used:

The theme vowel [-a-] denotes a general category which includes both -a- and -я-.  
 The notation [-C-] denotes a category which includes the consonants -c- and -з-.  
 The notation [-C'-] denotes a category which includes the consonants -ш- and -ж-.

RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN PRESENT AND AORIST TENSE FORMS

	<i>tense</i>	<i>theme vowel</i>	<i>examples</i>		
1.	<i>Present</i> <i>Aorist</i>	<div>-а- -а-</div>	глед-а-ме глед-а-хме	иск-а-ме иск-а-хме	вечер-я-ме вечер-я-хме
2.	<i>Present</i> <i>Aorist</i>	<div>-и- -и-</div>	ход-и-м ход-и-хме	бро-и-м бро-и-хме	уч-и-м уч-и-хме
3.	<i>Present</i> <i>Aorist</i>	<div>-и- -а-</div>	върв-и-м върв-я-хме	мълч-и-м мълч-а-хме	сто-и-м сто-я-хме
4.	<i>Present</i> <i>Aorist</i>	<div>-е- --</div>	пи-е-м пи -- хме	взѐм-е-м взѐ -- хме	копá-е-м копá -- хме
5.	<i>Present</i> <i>Aorist</i>	<div>-е- -о-</div>	чет-ѐ-м чѐт-о-хме	сеч-ѐ-м сяк-о-хме	влѐз-е-м влѐз-о-хме
6.	<i>Present</i> <i>Aorist</i>	<div>-е- -а-</div>	срѐщн-е-м срѐщн-а-хме	вѐрн-е-м вѐрн-а-хме	стáн-е-м стáн-а-хме
7.	<i>Present</i> <i>Aorist</i>	<div>-е -е -- -а</div>	живѐ-е-м жив--я-хме	изпѐ-е-м изп--я-хме	закъснѐ-е-м закъсн--я-хме
8.	<i>Present</i> <i>Aorist</i>	<div>-C' -е- -C -а-</div>	пиш-е-м пис -а-хме	каж-е-м каз -а-хме	
9.	<i>Present</i> <i>Aorist</i>	<div>-ер -е- -р -а-</div>	пер-ѐ-м пр -á-хме	бер-ѐ-м бр -á-хме	

There are six different combinations of present and aorist theme vowels: these are represented by types 1 through 6 in the above chart. Types 7 through 9 have the same present/aorist theme vowel relationship as type 6. Each of these latter three types also has a change in the shape of the stem.

Type 8 is characterized by consonant shifts [с > ш] and [з > ж]. The observant student will note that this is the same consonant shift seen in imperfective derivation. Compare the forms below, all 1<sup>st</sup> singular.

Consonant			Verb form
с or з	(пре)писах преписвам	(раз)казах разказвам	Aorist Derived imperfective
ш or ж	препиша пиша	разкажа кажа	Prefixed perfective Simplex imperfective

Within type 4, the verb **взема** also has a stem change which, once learned, is predictable: the stem-final consonant -м disappears in the aorist. **Приема, поема** and **заема** are all conjugated in the same manner.

The accent is usually the same in both present and aorist of any one verb. There is an optional accent shift in the unprefixed aorist of types 1, 2, 6 and 8. Only in verbs of type 5, however, is there an obligatory accent shift. Practically all these verbs have end stress in the present and stem stress in the aorist. Only one verb exhibits the reverse shift, and several verbs do not shift stress at all. The student should learn the latter verbs as exceptions. Examples below are 1<sup>st</sup> plural forms.

Tense	Present	Aorist
<b>Accent</b>		
<i>Regular shift</i>	четём	чётохме
<i>Exceptional shift</i>	дойдем	дойдохме
<i>Lack of shift</i>	отидем влéзем etc.	отидохме влязохме

All verbs in type 3 are end stressed in both present and aorist; the only exception is **вiдiя** (with stem stress in the present). Verbs of the **и**-conjugation which are end-stressed are thus more likely to belong to type 3 than to type 2.

As seen in the chart on the preceding page, the primary basis for the nine-type classification is conjugation form. However, there are certain correlations between stem type and meaning. Type 7 verbs, for instance, are all derived from adjectives and signify that one is in (or coming into) the state described by that adjective. Furthermore, type 2 verbs are practically all transitive (with a few exceptions like **хóдя**), and type 3 verbs are practically all intransitive (again, with a few exceptions like **вiдiя**). This latter difference can aid the student in remembering which of the verbs with present tense in -и- forms its aorist in -и- (type 2), and which forms its aorist in -а- (type 3).

### 12.2a. Aspect in the aorist tense

The Bulgarian aorist tense is formed freely from both aspects of the verbs. The name of this tense in Bulgarian can be misleading, therefore, for it suggests that the aorist tense and the perfective aspect are related. Here are the terms:

Aspect		свършен <i>Perfective</i>	несвършен <i>Imperfective</i>
Tense	минало	свършено <i>Aorist</i>	

The crux of the terminological confusion rests in the word **свършен**, which literally means “completed”. There is indeed a certain overlap between the aorist tense (whose literal name is “past completed tense”) and the perfective aspect (whose literal name is “completed aspect”), in that the meaning of each does indicate a certain degree of completedness.

This overlap will be discussed in more detail in Lesson 14. Here it is important to note that the choice of aorist tense does *not* predetermine the choice of perfective aspect. The meaning of the aorist is concerned with the *fact* of past action, and not its potential boundedness. The boundedness is signalled by the choice of perfective aspect, and rests within the verb itself.

### 12.3a. Impersonal verbs

Although impersonal verbs are often used with **да**-clauses (especially **трябва**), they also occur frequently alone. Used in this way, **има** and **няма** express the idea of existence/availability or its absence; and **може** and **трябва** express the idea of possibility or necessity. Numerous different translations are possible. For example:

-- Има ли захар?	“Is there [any] sugar?”
-- Има, заповядайте.	“Yes, here [it is].”
Има време.	There’s [plenty of] time.
Съжалявам, ама тук няма нищо.	I’m sorry, but there’s nothing here.
Няма такава неща.	There’s no such thing.
Искам да те питам нещо, може ли?	I want to ask you something, is that OK?
-- Да отидем ли?	“Should we go?”
-- Може.	“We could.”
Знам, че не искаш, ама трябва.	I know you don’t want [to], but you have to.

## 12.4a. "Third-person" verbs and word order

## Definiteness in body-ache constructions

In body-ache sentences (with the verb боли́), the affected body-part acts as the subject. When the ailment is a common one and the experiencer is singular, the noun naming the body-part is either definite or indefinite, with little or no difference in meaning. For instance:

Боли́ ме главá.  
Боли́ ме главáта.

I have a headache.  
(same)

In the case of multiple experiencers, however, the presence or absence of the article is determined by the number of the verb. A singular verb indicates a generalized view (hence indefinite), while a plural verb demands more specificity (hence definite).

Заболя́ ги главá от миризмáта.  
Заболя́ха ги главите́ от  
миризмáта.

They got headaches from the smell.  
(same)

## Word order in body-ache constructions

The verb боли́ occurs either with a single short-form pronoun object or with a doubled object; there is little difference in meaning. When the sufferer is named by a noun, the doubled object is obligatory. When doubled objects are used, the noun (or long form pronoun object) must begin the sentence. The short form object obeys its normal word order rules. Here are examples (numbered cumulatively across lessons):

- (58) На́дка ви́наги я боли́ гърлото.  
direct obj. DIR verb subject

Nadka's always got a sore throat.

- (59) Ме́не не ме боли́ главáта.  
direct obj. Neg. DIR verb subject

I don't have a headache.

- (60) И́ван боли́ ли го стома́хът?  
direct obj. verb INT DIR subject

Does Ivan have a stomachache?

## Other similar constructions

Another common 3<sup>rd</sup> person verb is вали́, which refers to precipitation. Its subject is rain, snow, hail or the like. When no subject is used, rain is assumed as the default case. In the singular, the verb is normally used alone, although it can have a subject. In the plural, however, it must have an explicitly stated subject.



## Дванайсети урок / Lesson 12

### *present tense*

-- Вали ли?  
-- Вече не вали.

Вали като из ведрó.  
Ваят силни дъждовé.

"Is it raining?"  
"Not any more."

It's pouring buckets.  
We're having a lot of rain.

### *aorist tense*

Вчера валия цял дeн.  
Преди 5 минути завалия.

Вчера валия много сняг -- децата  
много се радваха.

През зимата валиха много  
снеговe.

It rained all day yesterday.  
It started to rain five minutes ago.

It snowed a lot yesterday -- the  
children were delighted.

There were many snowstorms last  
winter.

There are also a few verbs which occur almost exclusively in the 3<sup>rd</sup> person form. But as they are listed in dictionaries in the 1<sup>st</sup> person form, they do not technically belong to this group. These include *тресá* "shake, shiver" and *сърбá* "itch". The person who feels the shivers or the itches is expressed, as in the case of *боли*, in the direct object form. For example:

Сърби го лявата ръка.  
Тресé ме.  
Хем боли, хем сърби.

His left hand itches.  
I've got the shivers.  
You can't have it both ways.  
[literally: First it hurts, then it  
itches.]

In the same way as body afflictions are expressed by 3<sup>rd</sup> person verbs, certain emotional states are expressed by nouns. The similarity between the two constructions is that in each case the person affected is expressed by a direct object pronoun. Emotional states commonly described in this way are *срам* "shame", *яд* "anger", *страх* "fear", *гнýс* "loathing". For example:

Ужасно я е страх от мишки.  
Яд ме е на нея.  
Мен ме е гнýс от тебе.

Срам ме е.  
Не те е срам!  
Как не те е срам!

She's terrified of mice.  
I'm angry at her.  
You nauseate me.

I'm ashamed. [also: I'm shy.]  
Shame on you! [also: For shame!]  
You ought to be ashamed of yourself.

## 12.8a. Names of body parts

Here is a list of body-part names, given for ease of reference in alphabetical order according to the English term. Correspondences in meaning are relatively close, although there is some potential confusion in the terms for limbs. The words **ръка** and **крак** apply both to the entire upper and lower limbs, respectively, and to their extremities (hand or foot, respectively). Context will usually determine which is meant; if necessary, terms such as “palm [of the hand]” or “sole [of the foot]” are used. Similarly, **пръст** and **нокт** refer to the digits and their nails on both hands and feet, and **палец** can mean either “thumb” or “big toe”, depending on the context.

## NAMES OF BODY PARTS (alphabetical by English term)

корѐм	abdomen	петá	heel
глѐзен	ankle	червó	intestine
грѣб	back	коляно	knee
брада	beard, chin	крак	leg, foot *
задник	behind, rear end	ýсна	lip
крѣв	blood	чѐрен дрóб	liver
кóст	bone	(бял) дрóб	lung
кóкал	bone	уста	mouth
мóзък	brain	мýскул	muscle
гърда	breast	нокт	nail
буза	cheek	шия	neck
гърд or гърди	chest	врат	neck
брадичка	chin	нос	nose
ýхо	ear	небцѐ	palate
лакът	elbow	длан	palm
окó	eye	рамо	shoulder
вѐжда	eyebrow	кóжа	skin
мигла	eyelash	стъпáло	sole
лицѐ	face	стóмах	stomach
прѣст	finger	бедрó	thigh
юмрук	fist	гърло	throat
чѐло or челó	forehead	гýша	throat
косá	hair	пáлец	thumb, big toe
ръка	hand, arm	език	tongue
глава	head	сливица	tonsil
сърцѐ	heart	зѣб	tooth
		китка	wrist

\* ногá                      leg (*poetic, dialectal*)

## **SAMPLE SENTENCES**

1. Може да може, а може и да не може.
2. Ти може да искаш, но каква е ползата, щом не можеш.
3. Може ли да вляза в църквата с шапка на главата?
4. Влакът трябва да пристигне всеки момент.
5. Трябва да говоря с него, но не мога да го намеря.
6. Всеки момент може да завали.
7. Децата ги боли глава от много уроци.
8. Има ли някой да чака за доктор Петров?
9. Какво има?
10. Няма друг като него.
11. Тук боли ли?
12. Пака завали, а аз не си нося чадъра.
13. Завали дъжд и ни измъкни до кости.
14. Вали град.
15. От болката му потекоха сълзи.
16. Тя чете доклад на конференцията.
17. Той си отиде и никога вече не го видяхме.
18. Писа, писа и нищо не написа.
19. Те живяха щастливо заедно.
20. Децата харесват тази приказка.
21. Синята шапка му хареса повече.
22. Вчера обрахме черешата и сварихме сладко.
23. Тяна изпра всички дрехи на децата и ги простря.
24. Хайде да не го чакаме, той и сам ще ни намери.
25. Ти сама ли изплете този пуловер?
26. Питам го дали е гладен, но забравих да го попитам жаден ли е.
27. Не знам със захар ли пиете кафето.
28. Чудя се дали да си взема жилетката или да я оставя.

## SENTENCES FOR TRANSLATION

1. "Why does my head hurt so much? I wonder what I did?"  
"When did it start hurting? Is it the rain? I always get a headache if it starts raining. If it rains my head hurts, but not if it snows. Isn't that strange?"
2. We have to leave for the station immediately if we want to get there on time.  
Ask Marina if she wants to come with us. Does she still have a backache or is she better now?
3. All mothers love their children, even when they are ill. My sister, for instance, had an earache, a toothache and a stomachache all at the same time, and it was terrible for both her and my mother. But my mother never complained at all.
4. That was a great movie, I really liked it. Marin didn't like it, though. After the film he said, "That was a terrible film. I'm never going to the movies again." I couldn't understand him. But of course he'll go again. Movies are a necessity for him.
5. We might be able to come over tonight, if Nadka and Kamen are better. Both of them have toothaches. It's hard for them.
6. Do you like to watch soccer on TV? Or do you prefer to go to the stadium? Do you like to watch TV in general? Some people don't like TV at all. I don't like most of the programs, and I don't know if they will ever show better programs.
7. How many fingers do you see? Two or three? Now show me all your fingers.
8. How is your elbow? Is it still hurting? Both of my elbows hurt. But my hands are OK. That's good, because I need my hands.
9. Marina called me on the phone last night, she was in a terrible state. Her mother all of a sudden got a sharp pain in her stomach, and they were very frightened. Where was the doctor? They phoned, but they couldn't find him. Then, thank goodness, her brother came, and he took all of them to the hospital. Her mother is better now, although it still hurts.
10. "Do you need this book?"  
"Yes, I have to study this evening. Don't you have to study? How will you learn your lessons if you don't study? My father always calls to ask me if I am studying, and of course I always say yes."

## READING SELECTION

### Ўтре е събота

Марин: Алó. Пламен може ли да се обади, моля.

Пламен: На телефóна.

Марин: Не можах да ти позная гласá. Виж каквó, искам да ти направя едно предложéние. Ўтре е събота. Това е дéн за културни развлечения. Като културни хóра, и ние трябва да отидем някъде.

Пламен: Добре. Вече ми омръзна да гледам телевизия вечер. Каквó предлагаш?

Марин: Имаме голям избор: театър, кино, óпера, каквó ли не. Не знам какви са вкусовете ти.

Пламен: Самият аз обичам да ходя на óпера. Освен това звучи най-културно.

Марин: Óпера ли? Опомни се. Живеем във века на техниката. Пускаш си компáкт дýск и все едно си в зàлата. Пък и най-добрите певци са по чужбина.

Пламен: В такъв слýчай да отидем на кино. Знаеш ли програмата на кинáта?

Марин: Защо да я знам. Срещу нас дават видеокасети под наём. Може да гледаш каквóто поискаш, дори най-новите филми. Ние имаме широко разбиране за авторското право.

Пламен: Ма́й остава да отидем на театър.

Марин: Помисли логично. Ако пиесата е интересна, няма да има билéти. Ако има билéти, пиесата не е интересна. По-добре е сам да си четеш пиесите, няма защó да ти ги четé режисьóр.

Пламен: Значи избираме между видеокасета, компáкт дýск и сбóрник с пиеси. А също и телевизия.

Марин: Не съвсём. Почти забравих. Ўтре има мач. Играят "Лéвски" и "ЦСКА". Това са най-популярните отбóри.

Пламен: Не може ли да го гледаме по телевизията? Ще можем да гледаме повторéния.

Марин: Защо ти е повторение? Ако някой изпусне гол, той няма да го вкара на повторението. На стадиона е по-интересно и можеш да викаш на воля.

Пламен: Вярно. Нали говорим за културно развлечение? Съгласен съм, но ти ще се редиш на опашката за билети.

Марин: Купих билетите още вчера. Ходя на този мач от дете. И не забравяй да си вземеш чадър. Може да вали.

Пламен: Ще взема чадър, а също и аспирин. И благодаря за богатия избор.

Марин: Винаги можеш да разчиташ на мене. Значи, утре ще се обадя пак да се разберем къде ще се срещнем. Дочуване.

Пламен: Добре. Дочуване.



Theater of the Bulgarian Army, Sofia

## GLOSSARY

авторски	author's	голямо движение	lots of traffic
авторско право	copyright	град	hail
ало	hello (on the phone)	гърб, гърбът	back
амп	but	(pl. гърбове)	
армия	army	гърд, -та (or гърди)	chest
аспирин	aspirin	гъша	neck, throat
		гърда	breast, bosom
		гърло	throat
бедрó	thigh	давам на заем	loan
берá	pick, gather	давам под наем	rent out
боли (3rd person only)	hurt	движение	movement; traffic
боли ме главата	I have a headache	дерá	skin, fleece, tear, scratch
болят ме очите	my eyes hurt	длан	palm of the hand
болка	pain	доклад	report
брада	beard; chin	дочуване	goodbye (on the phone)
брадичка	chin	дрóб, -ът (pl. дрóбове or дробовé)	lung
буза	cheek	дъжд, -ът	rain
бял дрóб	lung	(pl. дъждовé)	
в такъв слúчай	in that case		
вали (3rd person only)	rain, etc.	жилетка	waistcoat, cardigan
	(precipitation)		sweater
вали (дъжд)	it's raining	заболява ме /	start to hurt
вали сняг	it's snowing	заболи ме	
вали град	it's hailing	(3rd person only)	
вали като из ведрó	it's raining buckets	заболявам /	get sick
валят силни	it's raining heavily	заболея	
дъждовé		завалива / завали	begin to precipitate
ведрó	bucket	(3rd person only)	
пéжда	eyebrow	задник	behind, rear end
вék, -ът	century	заемам / заема	take up, occupy
вид, -ът	aspect, view,	залл	hall
	appearance	зарадвам се	cheer up
видеокасета	video cassette	захар, -та	sugar
виж напред	(topic focuser)	защита	defense
викам	shout, yell	звучá (-иш)	sound
викам на воля	shout to one's heart's content	звучи добре	that sounds good
		зъболекар	dentist
виц	joke	измислям /	think up, invent
вкарвам / вкарам	push in, drive in	измисли	
вкарам гол	score [a goal]	измóкрям /	drench, soak
воля	will, desire	измóкря	
врат	back of the neck	измóкрям се	get soaked to the skin
		до кóсти	
главá	head	изненада	surprise
глас, -ът (pl. гласовé)	voice	изпирам / изперá	do laundry, wash
глезен	ankle		
гнýс ме е	[I] feel nauseated		
гол	goal (in sports)		

## Дванайсетти урок / Lesson 12

изплітам / изплета́	knit, twist	оба́ждам се /	come to the phone
изпу́скам го́л	miss [a goal]	оба́дя се	
има́м пра́во	have the right	общество́	society
		око́ ( <i>pl.</i> очі́)	eye
ка́к не те́ е сра́м!	you should be ashamed!	омръ́звам /	tire, bore
		омръ́зна	
каква́ е по́лзата	what's the use	омръ́зва ми	I'm bored
какво́ ли не́	whatever, whatnot ( <i>see L. 17</i> )	опера́	opera
		опо́мням се /	come to (one's) senses
		опо́мна се	
какво́то	whatever ( <i>see L. 17</i> )	опо́мні се!	snap out of it!
карнава́лен	carnival ( <i>adj.</i> )	организи́рам	organize
ки́тка	wrist	от дете́	since childhood
ко́жа	skin	отбо́р	team
коля́но ( <i>pls.</i> коленá or коленé)	knee		
компакт ди́ск	compact disk	па́лец	thumb, big toe
конфе́ренция	conference	пе́ра	wash
корéм	abdomen, belly	пе́ті	heel
коса́	hair	пиéса	play
ко́ст, -та́	bone	повта́рям /	repeat
крѳ́в, -та́ ( <i>pl.</i> крѳ́ви)	blood	повто́ря	
култу́рен	cultural	повторéние	repeat, replay
кѳ́с	short	поговóрвам /	talk for a bit
		поговóря	
лицé	face	подгóтвям /	prepare
логичен	logical	подгóтвя	
		пои́скам /	want, wish, ask for
		пои́скам	
ма́й	it seems, in all probability	по́лза	use, advantage
ма́й оста́ва да	I guess we have to	поми́слям /	think about
оти́дем та́м	go there	поми́сли	
ма́ч	[sports] match, game	популя́рен	popular
между́	between, among	потича́м /	start flowing
ме́н = ме́не		потека́ (-чеш)	
ми́гла	eyelash	прави́ла на пъ́т-	traffic laws, rules of
мина́ло свѳ́ршено	aorist tense	ното́ движе́ние	the road
вре́ме		прави́ло	rule
мо́зък	brain	права́та на	animal rights
му́скул	muscle	живо́тните	
		пра́во	[legal] right
на вся́ка це́на	at any price, at all costs, absolutely	прехвѳ́рям се /	transfer; shift
		прехвѳ́ря се	
на кра́к	hastily	при́казка	tale, story
на телефо́на	speaking! (on the phone)	приче́ска	haircut, hair style
		проти́рам /	stretch out
		проти́ра	
на́ем	rent	проти́рам дрѳ́хи	hang clothes out to dry
наза́ем	loan	прѳ́ст ( <i>pl.</i> прѳ́сти)	finger, toe
не те́ е сра́м!	shame on you!	пуло́вер	sweater
небѳ́це	palate [roof of mouth]	пѳ́тен	road, traveling
несвѳ́ршен	incomplete, imperfect		
несвѳ́ршен вид	imperfective aspect	разби́рам се /	come to an under-
нога́	leg ( <i>dialectal, poetic</i> )	разберá се	standing, agree
		разби́ране	understanding



# Дванайсети урок / Lesson 12

развлечение	amusement	трябва (3rd person only)	must, should
разprávям / разprávя	tell, relate	(то́й) трябва да дойде	he needs to come
разчи́там	rely on, count [on]	трябва му адвокат	he needs a lawyer
ра́мо (pl. раменá or раменé)	shoulder	трябвам	be necessary to
редя́	arrange, put in order	ужасен	terrible
редя́ се на опáшка	get/wait in line	уморя́вам се / уморя́ се	get tired, become exhausted
ре́жа (-еш)	cut, slice	университéтски	university (adj.)
режисьо́р	director	уста́	mouth
ро́кля	dress	у́стна	lip
ръка́ (pl. ръце́)	hand, arm	ухó (pl. уши́)	ear
са́м, сама́, само́, сами́	alone, [the] very, by oneself	хареса́м / хареса́м	like
самия́т аз	I myself	хе́м (хем ... хем)	both...and...; not only..., but...
сбо́рник	collection	це́на	price
свършен, -ена	complete, perfect	це́нтра́лен	central
свършен ви́д	perfective aspect	чадъ́р (pl. чадъри)	umbrella
сливи́ца	tonsil	че́ло (or чело́)	forehead
случа́ен	chance, accidental	черво́	intestine
случа́й	instance	че́рен дроб	liver
случа́йно	by chance	чере́ша	cherry
собо́ствен, -ена	one's own	че́стен	honorable, honest
сра́м, -ът (pl. сра́мове or сра́мове́)	shame, modesty	че́стна ду́ма	word of honor
сра́м ме е	I'm ashamed/shy	чу́жба́на	abroad
сре́щу	against, opposite, across from	ше́ствие	procession, train
стадио́н	stadium	широ́к	wide, broad
стома́х	stomach	широ́ко разби́ране	liberal interpretation
стра́х, -ът (pl. страхо́ве)	fear, dread	ши́я	neck
стра́х ме е (от)	I'm afraid [of]	щастли́в	happy
стъпа́ло	sole (of the foot)	юмру́к	fist
съгласе́н	in agreement	я́д	anger
сълза́ (pl. сълзи́ or сълзи́)	tear (from the eye)	я́д ме е (на)	I'm angry (at)
сърби́ (3rd person only)	itch		
те́хника	technology		
то́чно	just		
треса́	shake		
тресе́ ме	I've got the shakes; I've got a fever		

## CULTURAL COMMENTARY

### Traveling: train lines

Two main train lines connect the capital city of Sofia with the Black Sea port of Varna: one runs through the center of the country and one further to the north. Transfers can be made to smaller towns in the interior from major points along this line. The north central town of Gorna Oryakhovitsa (Горна Оряховица) is the transfer point for Gabrovo, which is situated between the two main arteries.

### Politics: animal rights

The cause of animal rights has not yet penetrated to Bulgaria. Certain "protective" societies are known, however; among them is a society dedicated to the conservation of nature (общество за защита на природата).

### Entertainment: music; sports

Like other world capitals, Sofia has numerous theater companies and its own symphony, opera and ballet companies. Bulgarians love music, especially singing; and Bulgaria is known for its fine opera singers. Many of these have emigrated to the West.

Recorded music, both on cassettes and compact disks, is easily available in Bulgaria, as are videocassettes of recent films. Although copyright laws are somewhat more lax than in the West, there is probably the same amount of illegal copying in Bulgaria as in other countries (and the same difficulties of enforcement).

The main sports stadium in Sofia is named after the revolutionary hero Vasil Levski (Васил Лѐвски, 1837-1873). It seats 55,000 spectators. Soccer is the game played there most often, but it is also used for track and field events. The traditional rival soccer teams are the ЦСКА (Централен спортен клуб на армията, the "Central Army Sport Club") and the Лѐвски ("Levski") team.



National theater "Ivan Vazov", Sofia

## LESSON 13

### **DIALOGUE**

#### Щом те боли гърлото, облечи се!

Таня: Надке, щом те боли гърлото, облечи се. И оня ден, докато се разхождахме из ботаническата градина, тебе те болеше гърлото.

Надка: Не искам да се обличам. Добре ми е така.

Таня: Не ме ли разбра? Веднага си облечи жилетката!

Надка: Ще си я облека след малко. Ако ме заболи повече.

Таня: Не спори. Като те заболи повече, ще е късно да се обличаш.

Надка: Добре. След малко. Но и Камен да се облече!

Таня: Не след малко, а сега.

Камен (на Надка): Защо? Тебе те заболя гърлото, ти се облечи. Мене не ме боли.

Таня: Покажи ми ръцете си. Аха, мръсни са. Трябва да се измиеш. Тука има малко вода. Ела да ти полее да си измиеш ръцете.

Камен: Мих се преди малко, докато Надка говореше с тебе. Не искам пак да се мия.

Таня: Когат? Не те видях. Слушай, Камене. Надка вече се облече и ти трябва да се измиеш. Това е.

Веселин: Скоро ще слизам, да си взема довиждане. Какво решихте, Джули? Ще дойдете ли с мен?

Джули: Ние с Дейвид трябва да продължим за София, имаме работа там. Ако я свършим бързо, може да дойдем в Габрово.

Веселин: Мога ли с нещо да ви бъда полезен? Имам много познати в София.

Джули: Ние трябва да се срещнем с професор Александър Попов, археолог. Не го ли познавате случайно?

Веселин: Какъв късмет! Познавам го добре. Той ми е роднина.

Джули: Наистина ли!

Веселин: А бе, защо да не дойда и аз с вас до София да ви представя?

Дейвид: Да не изпуснете заради нас фестивала?

Веселин: Има още малко време, докато фестивалът започне. Ако свършим бързо всичко в София, ще отидем заедно. Нали искате да посетите фестивала?



Downtown Sofia

## BASIC GRAMMAR

### 13.1. The imperfect tense, introduction

Bulgarian has two simple past tenses, the aorist and the imperfect. The 3<sup>rd</sup> singular form of the imperfect will be learned in this lesson. The theme vowel of the imperfect is -e- or -a-/-я-, and the 3<sup>rd</sup> singular ending is -ше. The full conjugation of the imperfect will be learned in Lesson 14.

Both the aorist and the imperfect refer to actions which took place in the past. Of the two tenses, the aorist is the more neutral: it simply states the *fact* of past action. The imperfect tense has a more specific meaning, in that it concentrates on the *duration* of a past action over a certain period of time. For example:

*aorist*

Вчера ме боля главата.

Yesterday my head hurt.

*imperfect*

Особено много болеше зад  
очите.

It hurt particularly in the area behind  
my eyes.

*aorist*

Вчера Лиляна говори с  
директора.

Lilyana spoke with the director  
yesterday.

*imperfect*

Мих се преди малко, докато  
Надка говореше с тебе.

I washed a while ago, while Nadka  
was talking with you.

Both instances of the aorist above refer to simple facts of past action: someone had a headache, or someone carried out a particular conversation. Both instances of the imperfect, however, focus on the duration of the action. That is, while the headache was going on (duration), it was centered in a particular spot; and while a certain conversation was going on (duration), the fact of washing got accomplished.

The use of the imperfect will be discussed in more detail in Lesson 14.

### 13.2. The past tense of impersonal verbs

The past tense of impersonal verbs is identical with the 3<sup>rd</sup> singular imperfect ending. For these verbs, however, this ending simply means "past": there is no separate aorist form. Thus:

<i>present</i>	<i>past</i>	<i>present</i>	<i>past</i>
има	имаше	трябва	трябваше
няма	нямаше	може	можеше

Translations vary, especially in the case of **трябва**, which means “supposed to”, “must”, “ought to”, or “should have”, depending on the context. It is crucial to remember that although the meaning of the sentence is “past tense”, the verb after **да** remains in the *present tense* form.

Имаше много интересен филм по телевизията.	There was a really interesting film on TV.
Нямаше никаква нужда да идваш снощи.	There really was no need for you to [have] come last night.
По цял ден го нямаше вкъщи. Трябваше да помolia за извинение.	He often was gone for the whole day. I ought to have asked [your] pardon.
Толкова ми беше зле, че трябваше да повикам лекаря през нощта.	I was in such a bad state that I had to call the doctor during the night.
Можеше и мене да повикате! Можеше по-кратко да говориш.	You could have called <i>me</i> , you know! You might have spoken more gently.

### 13.3. Reflexive verbs

The particles **се** and **си** are frequently combined with verbs, to which they add various shades of meaning. The particle **се** can add the meanings of intransitivity or reciprocity, or can simply create a verb of a different meaning. The particle **си** adds the meaning of “greater involvement in the action”; it can also function as a short form possessive when the possessor is identical with the subject of the sentence.

Both these particles are called “reflexive”, because they serve in various ways to reflect the verbal action away from a potential direct object and back towards the subject of the sentence. When attached to verbs of the general category “caring for the body”, these particles convey the reflexive meaning in its purest form. For this reason, such verbs are called “true reflexives.”

When used without the reflexive additive, these verbs are transitive. They take a direct object, and signify that the relevant action is performed upon someone or something else. When the reflexive particle **се** is added, the meaning is that the subject performs the action on or for himself. The object of the verb is now the particle **се**, and the verb is said to be reflexive. A literal English translation would add the object “himself”, “yourself”; correct English simply names the action.

## Тринайсети урок / Lesson 13

Below are eight of the most common of these verbs, followed by examples of transitive and reflexive usage.

<i>verb</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>
бърша	wipe, dry	обличам / облека	put on clothes, dress
къпя	bathe	обувам / обуя	put on shoes, stockings, etc.
мия	wash	събличам / съблека	take off clothes, undress
реша	comb	събувам / събуя	take off shoes, stockings, etc.

### *transitive*

Надка облича и съблича куклите си.	Nadka dresses and undresses her dolls.
Седни да те събуя.	Sit down and I'll take your shoes off.

### *reflexive*

-- Къде е Камен?	"Where's Kamen?"
-- В банята. Мие се.	"In the bathroom. He's washing."
Студено е навън. Облечи се!	It's cold outside. Put [something] on!

Reflexive verbs can also take the particle **си**. The meaning continues to be that the subject performs the action on or for himself. But when **си** is present, there is always another object in the sentence, either a noun or pronoun. If this direct object refers to a body part, it is always in the definite form; if it refers to a piece of clothing it can be either definite or indefinite. In English, the indefinite objects are treated as any indefinite object, but the definite objects are translated with possessive adjectives such as "my", "your", etc. Here are examples:

Камен се мие - мие си лицето.	Kamen is washing -- washing his face.
Веднага си облечи жилетката!	Put your sweater on right away!
Да си облека бяла риза довечера?	Should I wear a white shirt this evening?

### 13.4. Word order in negative-interrogative sentences

A negative-interrogative sentence contains both the negative and the interrogative particles. It follows basic word order rules: the negative particle **не** always precedes the verb and the interrogative particle **ли** usually follows it.

When clitics are present, the word order changes dramatically. Clitics continue to occur in sequence, preceded directly by the negative particle. The interrogative particle, however, must follow the first clitic in sequence, no matter what its meaning. The word order (and specifically the position of the object in the sentence) is thus quite different from that of those with short form pronoun objects. Compare the following examples:

Не познаваш ли Ивѧн?

Не го ли познаваш?

Не дадох ли книгата на Ивѧн?

Не му ли я дадох?

На тебе не е ли приятел?

Не ти ли е приятел?

Don't you know Ivan?

Don't you know him?

Didn't I give the book to Ivan?

Didn't I give it to him?

Isn't he a friend of yours?

Isn't he your friend?

### 13.5. Modal да, continued

The modal meaning of да is most strongly present when there is no verb preceding it. In these instances, да-phrases communicate (to a greater or lesser extent) wishes or desires of the speaker. When the verb following да is 3<sup>rd</sup> person, the wish is especially strongly felt. It can be expressed as a fervent desire, or even as a veiled order (depending, of course, on the context). For example:

Елате в 3 ч. И Йво да дойде.

Да слезем ли?

Да живее демокрацията!

И Камен да се облече!

Come at 3:00. Have Ivo come too.

Let's get off, shall we?

Long live democracy!

Kamen has to get dressed too!

### 13.6. Iterative imperatives

Affirmative imperatives are normally in the perfective aspect and negative imperatives normally in the imperfective aspect. Perfective aspect is chosen in the affirmative imperative because the speaker is usually referring to a specific, completed act. If the speaker wishes a repeated action, however, then an imperfective verb is used. For example:

Затвори вратата!

Не затваряй вратата!

Пишете ни по-често!

Обаждайте се!

Слагайте дрехите си на място!

Close the door!

Don't close the door!

Write more often!

Keep in touch!

Put your clothes where they belong!

### 13.7. The verb бъда

The verb бъда "be" can be seen as the bounded form of съм. It is used in forming both the future tense and the imperative mood of съм. It can also appear after да if the meaning is one of boundedness.



Той ще бъде в кабинета от 9 ч.	He will be in his office from 9:00 on.
Бъдете така добър да ми направите копие от това писмо.	Be so good as to make me a copy of that letter.
Мога ли с нещо да ви бъда полезен?	Can I be of help to you in some way?

### 13.8. The conjunction докато

The conjunction *докато* has different meanings depending on the aspect of the verb which follows. If the verb is imperfective, *докато* has the unbounded meaning "while", but if the verb is perfective, *докато* has the bounded meaning "until". Perfective *докато* can, but need not be, followed by the particle *не*, with no essential change in meaning.

Examples are given below. Bounded and unbounded conjunctions will be discussed in more detail in Lesson 17.

#### *unbounded*

Мих се преди малко, докато Надка говореше с тебе.	I washed a while ago, while Nadka was talking with you.
Докато е студено, ще държим децата вътре.	So long as it's cold we'll keep the children inside.

#### *bounded*

Има още малко време, докато фестивалът започне.	There's still a little time left before the festival begins.
Място не можеше да си намери, докато не ги чу една сутрин.	She couldn't settle down until she finally heard them one morning.

### 13.9. Prepositions

The preposition *по* has a wide range of idiomatic meanings. It indicates different sorts of connection, depending on the particular expression. For example:

Много приказва по телефона.	She talks on the phone a lot.
Имаше хубав филм по телевизията снощи.	There was a good film on TV last night.
Трябва да говорим по повод на това.	We have to talk in connection with that.
Отиваме там по бански.	We go there in our bathing suits.
Трябва да ядеш по три пъти на ден.	One should eat three times a day.

## EXERCISES

I. Fill in the blanks with *се* or *си* as appropriate.

1. Вече е късно. Време е да \_\_\_\_\_ отиваме.
2. Тя е много елегантна. Винаги \_\_\_\_\_ облича хубаво.
3. Когато отива в университета, той \_\_\_\_\_ облича jakето и джинсите.
4. Сутрин всички \_\_\_\_\_ мият или \_\_\_\_\_ къпят, ако има топла вода.
5. Нádка е още малка и не може да \_\_\_\_\_ мие самá лицето и ръцете.
6. Тук е горещо. Съблечí \_\_\_\_\_ палтото.
7. Тази кърпа е чиста. Можете да \_\_\_\_\_ избършете в нея.
8. Деца, затваряйте \_\_\_\_\_ устата, когато големите разговарят.
9. Камен от малък може сам да \_\_\_\_\_ обува обувката.
10. Всички \_\_\_\_\_ мият ръцете преди ядене, а Камен не \_\_\_\_\_ ги мие.
11. Когато \_\_\_\_\_ измиеш, ела при мене на топло.

II. Rewrite the following as negative questions.

1. Каза ли му го?
2. Той поиска ли ти автограф?
3. На него ли му дадоха книга за награда?
4. Писа ли ни подробно за тези неща?
5. На вас съобщиха ли ви за промяната в програмата?
6. Ние често играем тенис заедно.
7. Димитър всеки ден се обажда на майка си по телефона.

III. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate verb form (*боли, трябва, има, няма, може*) in present, aorist or imperfect tense.

1. Камен днес е по-добре. Първи ден не го \_\_\_\_\_ нищо.
2. Вчера той беше по-зле. Цял ден го \_\_\_\_\_ главата.
3. Когато той беше болен от грип, много го \_\_\_\_\_ главата.
4. Ако \_\_\_\_\_, ще препишем това писмо още веднъж.
5. Вчера той \_\_\_\_\_ работа и затова не \_\_\_\_\_ да дойде.
6. Ела непременно. Ако ме \_\_\_\_\_ вкъщи, \_\_\_\_\_ да ми оставиш бележка в пощенската кутия.
7. Той \_\_\_\_\_ и по-добре да напише доклада, но \_\_\_\_\_ време.

## ADDITIONAL GRAMMAR NOTES

### 13.3a. Reflexive verbs: word order

When used with reflexive verbs, the particle *се* functions exactly as a direct object, with the special meaning "object which is identical with the subject of the sentence". The particle *си* functions as a combination of "indirect object" and "possessive". This similarity of function is seen also in their form, as the first three lines of the pronoun object chart from Lesson 7 demonstrate:

	<i>subject</i>	<i>direct object</i>	<i>indirect object</i>
1 <sup>st</sup> singular	аз	ме	ми
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular (reflexive)	ти	те	ти
		се	си

These similarities extend to word order as well. The reflexive particles *се* and *си* obey exactly the same word order rules as the appropriate object pronouns. Examples are given below, with numbering cumulative across lessons.

- (61) Лѐкаря̀т ка̀зва на па̀циѐнта да    се    съблече́.  
Cnj.   DIR   verb

The doctor tells the patient to get undressed.

- (62) Чу́ ли ме? Ве́днѐга си    облечи́    жилѐтката.  
IND   verb   direct obj.

Did you hear me? Put your sweater on *now*!

- (63) Ще    си    я    облака́  
Fut.   IND   DIR   verb след ма́лко.

I'll put it on in a bit.

- (64) Ще    си    облече́    ли  
Fut.   IND   verb   INT бя́ла ри́за? *direct obj.*

Will he wear a white shirt?

### 13.4a. Word order and intonation in negative-interrogative sentences

Negative-interrogative sentences in Bulgarian are particularly tricky, for two different reasons: they follow a word order rule which has little similarity to any other rules learned, and they have a characteristic intonation which sounds unnatural to speakers of English.

When no pronoun objects are present, the negative particle precedes the verb and the interrogative particle follows it, as in (65) below. When clitic pronoun objects are present, they follow the negative particle directly. The interrogative particle **ли** must then be placed after the first clitic in the string, *no matter what it means*.

This rule differs from all others learned previously, which required a specific grammatically marked form to follow the negative particle or to precede the interrogative one. On the basis of only examples (66) or (67), for instance, one might be tempted to say simply that the correct sequence in negative interrogative sentences would be:

*"negative particle + pronoun object(s) + interrogative particle"*

However, examples (68) through (70) show that the rule makes reference only to the sequence of clitic forms. The student should study these examples carefully, and be aware that special effort will be required to internalize this word order pattern.

- (65) 

Не	искаш	ли
Neg.	verb	INT

 сладолед?  
direct obj.

Don't you want [any] ice cream?

- (66) 

Не	го	ли
Neg.	DIR	INT

 познаваш?  
verb

Don't you know him?

- (67) 

Не	им	ли
Neg.	IND	INT

 помага?  
verb

Isn't he helping them?

- (68) 

Не	ти	ли	го
Neg.	IND	INT	DIR

 дадох?  
verb

Didn't I give it to you?

- (69) 

Не	ти	ли	е
Neg.	IND	INT	3 <sup>rd</sup> COP

 приятел?  
predicate noun

Isn't he your friend?

- (70) 

Не	си	ли	му
Neg.	COP	INT	IND

 приятел?  
predicate noun

Aren't you his friend?

The characteristic rhythm of negative-interrogative sentences is due to two separate facts about Bulgarian intonation. The first is that the negative particle always focuses attention on the following accented word, and second is that the interrogative particle causes high tone on the preceding word. Any word surrounded by these two particles, therefore, carries a particularly strong accent. This intonation

pattern is especially striking when a clitic is the word that is surrounded, because clitics do not otherwise carry any accent at all.

In English, high intonation in the middle of a sentence marks special emphasis. The same is true in Bulgarian when the question particle *ли* is placed after any word *other* than the verb. For instance:

В сѣбота на кино ли ще хѳдиш? Are you going to the *movies* on Saturday? [and not somewhere else?]

В сѣбота ли ще хѳдиш на кино? Are you going to the movies on Saturday? [and not some other day?]

The high intonation of negative-interrogative sentences, however -- even higher than that of simple questions because of the negation -- is normal and neutral in Bulgarian. In each of the questions below, for instance, the capitalized form is pronounced much louder and with much higher tone than anything else in the sentence. An English ear will hear surprise (and almost shock) in this intonational pattern. In Bulgarian, however, it carries neutral meaning, and is the only way such sentences can be pronounced.

Тѳбе не Тѳ ли боли гѳрлото? Doesn't your throat hurt?  
На Иван не Мѳ ли е добрѳ? Isn't Ivan well?

### 13.9a. Prepositions

Prepositions are not accented, but are rather pronounced together with the following noun or pronoun object as a single word. Prepositions of two or more syllables, such as *между*, *срѳшу*, or *заради*, are sometimes given in dictionaries (although not in the glossaries to this book) with accent on the final syllable. In very slow speech, or in instances when it is necessary to pronounce these words alone, they do bear a light accent on the final syllable.

The same is true of conjunctions such as *ако*, *като* or *докато*. Only when a conjunction is formed from an adverb, such as *както* or *когато*, does it bear an accent of its own in the speech stream.

### 13.10. Pronoun reduplication and inverted word order

A definite noun object is obligatorily "reduplicated" by the corresponding short form pronoun object in a number of sentence patterns. One of these is after *ѳто* or *няма*, and another is in experiencer and body-ache constructions. For review, consider the following:

Ето го трамвая!

Калина я няма.

Иван го боли зъб.

На Надка ѝ е студено.

There's the tram!

Kalina's not around.

Ivan has a toothache.

Nadka is cold.

Bulgarians also have the option to reduplicate a noun object if they wish to place a certain emphasis on it. The most common way to express emphasis is to reverse the order of verb and object; frequently a reduplicated pronoun object is added as well.

As an example, compare the neutral form of a sentence with a definite direct object, followed by its emphatic form with inversion and doubling. The emphasis is not strong, and the difference is difficult to render adequately in English translation.

Не помня телефонния номер.

Телефонния номер не го помня.

I don't remember the phone number.

(same)

### 13.11. Derivation: diminutive suffixes

Bulgarian, like other Slavic languages, has several suffixes which are termed "diminutive". They form nouns from other nouns, and add the meaning of smallness. One of the commonest of these is the suffix *-ч-*, which is frequently followed by the neuter ending *-е*.

In some nouns this *-ч-* is derived from a final *-к* or *-ц* in the base noun, and in others it is a separate suffix added to the noun stem. Below are examples of both types of neuter derived diminutives.

base noun	stem	+ -ч- >	derived noun	(meaning)
чове́к	чове[к]-	+ -ч- >	чове́-че	dwarf
про́зор-ец	прозор-[ц]-	+ -ч- >	прозо́р-че	small window
мо́м-ък	мом-[к]-	+ -ч- >	мом-че́	boy
	мом-и-	+ -ч- >	моми́-че	girl
кеба́п	кебап-	+ -ч- >	кеба́п-че	grilled or stewed meat
но́ж	нож-	+ -ч- >	нож-че́	[razor] blade
живо́т-но	живот-ин-	+ -ч- >	животи́н-че	little animal
ба́лгар-ин	ба́лгар-	+ -ч- >	ба́лгар-че	young Bulgarian
друга́р	другар-	+ -ч- >	друга́р-че	young friend

Certain nouns in *-а* form diminutives according to a similar pattern. If the noun stem ends in *-к* or *-ц*, this consonant shifts to *-ч-*. The suffix *-к-* is then usually added before the feminine ending *-а*. Most of these nouns signify something of a smaller size; sometimes they simply mean "feminine", however.

<i>base noun</i>	<i>stem</i>	<i>+ -ч- к- &gt;</i>	<i>derived noun</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>
мáртеница	мартени[ц]	+ -ч-к- >	мáртени-чка	small martenitsa
уче́ник	учени[к]-	+ -ч-к- >	уче́ни-чка	female pupil
ма́са	маси-	+ -ч-к- >	ма́си-чка	small table

### 13.12. "Third-person" verbs, continued

Certain verbs, such as боли́ and ва́ли, are used only in the third person. A few other verbs of this sort express the idea of a feeling or a state which happens to one. Among these are досме́шава "feel like laughing" and досра́мыва "feel ashamed". These are used most frequently in the past tense. Досра́мыва expresses the experiencer as the direct object, while досме́шава expresses it as the indirect object.

Досра́мя ме да си по́йскaм  
по́вече.

I felt [too] ashamed to ask for more.

Ма́лко ми досме́ща́ като го  
полу́чих.

I chuckled to myself when I got it.



Museum-house "Todor Kableshkov", Koprivshtitsa

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

1. Ако ти е студено, не се мий.
2. Измий се, облечи се и да тръгваме, че закъсняваме.
3. Камене, ти си голямо момче, можеш сам да се измиеш.
4. Тя се облича много хубаво.
5. Той се облича спортно. Никога не си слага вратовръзка.
6. Тресе ме. Ту се обличам, ту се събличам.
7. През лятото тя се съблича по бански и се пече на слънце на балкона.
8. Не ходи бос! Тук не е толкова чисто. Обуй се!
9. Нádка е мálка, не може да се обúе самá и да си завърже връзките на обúвките. Мáйка ñ я обúва.
10. Къпе се по три пéти на дéн и всé мръсен се чúвства.
11. Не ти ли стáна неудобно да го пíташ за това?
12. Не ви ли стíга, че съм тúка?
13. Не го ли зnáеш какъв е?
14. Не мé ли чú като те извúках?
15. Идвайте ни пó-често на гóсти!
16. Проверявай редóвно дали пóщата е дошла.
17. Поливай цветята, докато ме нýма.
18. Мóжеше да не ми затвáряш вратáта под носá.
19. Тé трябваше вéче да са тúк.
20. Кáк мóже да взéмеш клю́ча без разрешéние -- трябваше да пíташ.
21. На твоите годíни трябваше да си пó-разúмен.
22. Вчéра íмаше сáмо двé яйцá в хладíлника, а днéc нýма нито еднó.
23. Не сý спóмням заглáвието на кнúгата.
24. Заглáвието на кнúгата не сý го спóмням.
25. Не ñ кáзаха нéговото íме. Нéговото íме не ñ го кáзаха.
26. Изядох послéдното яйцé. Послéдното яйцé го изядох.



## **SENTENCES FOR TRANSLATION**

1. You ought to have come earlier. Then we could have studied together all evening. Now we only have one hour to prepare for the test!
2. There used to be a shoe store here. Where is it? Do you know where they sell shoes now?
3. Kamen is a big boy now. Every day he puts on his own shirt, pants, shoes and socks. Nadka still needs her mother's help. Her mother puts on her shoes and socks for her.
4. Wait until I dry my hands, please. Then I can write down the telephone number for you. You'll call them tonight, won't you?
5. Mother dresses the children in the morning, and Father bathes them in the evening. They both put them to bed: Mother sings them a song and Father reads them a story. When the children are bigger, they will do all these things themselves.
6. That shirt is dirty, you'd better put on a clean one.
7. "Where is my tie? You were supposed to wash it for me!"  
"Didn't I give it to you? Yes, there it is, on the bed."
8. "We like martenitsi. Usually our Bulgarian friends send them to us, but when I opened their letter yesterday, there was nothing in it."  
"They didn't put it in the letter for you? Here, take this one. Everyone should have a martenitsa in the spring. You should have had one last week."
9. Where's Ivan? He isn't here. He wasn't here yesterday either. He could have written us a note so that we'd know where he is. Yes, he ought to have written us a note.
10. "I'm cold. I want to put on my sweater, but I don't know where it is."  
"Well, if you're cold then I'm hot. I'll take off my sweater and you can put it on. Then we'll both be fine."
11. Boris came in, took off his jacket and shoes, and sat down. Then he got up again, went into the bathroom, and washed his hands and face. He couldn't dry himself, though, because there was no towel.
12. Where's your coat? Didn't you take it off just a bit ago?

## READING SELECTION

### Кореспонденция - (10)

15 февруари, София

Драги Патриша, Боб, Емили и Майкъл,

Честита Баба Марта! Пожелаваме ви и през тази пролет да бъдете здрави и бодри, бели и червени като тези мартеници!

У нас в България хората смятат, че пролетта настъпва на първи март. Представяме си този месец като стара жена, намръщена и капризна, но с добро сърце. Името ѝ е Баба Марта. По това време долитат от юг и първите щъркели. Те винаги се връщат у дома си, в своето гнездо. Една двойка стари познайници си свиха гнездо преди три години на комина на нашата къща в Смолян. И нали щъркелите носят късмет, нашите ги чакат с нетърпение всяка година да се върнат. Миналата година беше студено и те малко закъсняха. Да знаете как се притесни моята свекърва... място не можеше да си намери, докато не ги чу една сутрин да тракат с клюн.

На първи март децата и много възрастни си закачват мартеници за здраве. Преди много години аз за първи път подарих мартеница на Бойко и ми стана мъчно, че той я забодде под ревера на сако̀то си. Попитах се не ме ли обича, от ког̀о ли иска да скрие моята мартеница? Трябваше да минат много години, за да разбера, че той (както и други мъже) се смущава да носи открито мартеница. Към края на месеца много хора закачват мартениците си на някое дърво, та те и на него да донесат здраве. Но, разбира се, децата се радват на мартениците най-много. Миналата година много близки дадоха мартенички на Яна и тя се окичи с тях като новогодишна елха. Закачи две и на любимата си кукла. Яна и нейните приятелки устроиха нещо като модно ревю с мартеници.

Иво обаче от няколко години се смята за прекалено голям за такива "детински работи".

Сърдечни поздравии от всички ни. Обаждайте се.

Калина

2 март, Сан Франциско

Драга Калина,

Малко ми досмеша, като получих онзи ден писмото ти и го отворих, а от него паднаха двуцветните вълнени пискюли. Ние смятахме, че пролетта настъпва на 21 март, в деня на пролетното равноденствие. Тази година обаче тя настъпи за нас рано -- като в България. Вчера Емили предизвика фурор на училище с мартеницата си. Майкъл обаче отказа да си я сложи. Бои се, че приятелите му ще се смеят. Не си сложи той мартеницата, но и на Емили не пожела да я подари. Скри я при другите си съкровища в дървената кутия под леглото.

Старите обичаи са смешни понякога, но животът без тях е скучен, нали?

Апропо, един мой приятел много се интересува от народна музика. Те ми подсказаха да си купя една българска плоча с изумителна автентична народна музика. Записът е от някакъв фестивал в Копрявцица. Ти можеш ли да ми разкажеш повече за този фестивал?

Ваша

Патриша



Storks on a chimney (central Bulgaria)

## GLOSSARY

автентичен	authentic	животинче	little animal
автограф	autograph	забождам / забода	stick, pin
апропо	apropos, by the way	завързвам / завържа (-еш)	tie
балкон	balcony	завързвам връз- ките на обувки	tie shoelaces
бански	bathing; swimsuit	заглавие	title
бодър	lively, cheerful	зад	behind
болен от грип	down with the flu	закачвам / закача (-иш)	hang, suspend
болеше	was hurting (2-3sg. imperfect)	запис	recording
бос	barefoot	заради	for the sake of
ботаническа градина	botanical garden	затварям вратата	shut the door in
ботанически	botanical	под носа [на]	[someone's] face
българче	young Bulgarian	зле	bad, badly
бърша (-еш)	wipe, rub	избърсвам / избърша (-еш)	wipe, dry
вземам си	make one's farewells	извиквам / извикам	cry, call out
довиждане		извинение	excuse, pardon
вратовръзка	necktie	измивам / измия	wash up
връзка	tie, string, shoelace	изумителен	amazing, astounding
вълнен, -ена	wool, woolen	капризен	capricious
гнездо	nest	кебап	grilled or stewed meat
говореше	was talking (2-3sg. imperfect)	клюн	beak
грип	influenza, flu	комин	chimney
двойка	pair	копие	copy
двуцветен	two-colored	кротък	gentle
демокрация	democracy	кукла	doll, puppet
детински	children's	кърпа	cloth, towel
детински работи	kid stuff	любя	love, be in love with
джинси	jeans	мартеница	see p. 287
директор	director	мартеничка	small martenitsa
докато не	until	мисичка	little table
долитам / долетя	come flying, fly up to	милея	hold dear, care for
досмешава ме / досмешее ме (3rd person only)	feel like laughing	моден	fashionable
досрамява ме / досрамее ме (3rd person only)	feel ashamed	модно ревю	fashion show
другарче	playfellow, playmate	момък	young man
дървен (-ена)	wood, wooden	(pl. момци)	
ела да ти полёя	let me pour water [over your hands]	мъчен	hard, difficult
елха	fir tree	награда	reward, prize
		намръщен (-ена)	sullen, gloomy

# Тринайсети урок / Lesson 13

нари́чам / нарека́ (-чеш)	call, name	предста́вам си / предста́вя си	imagine
настъ́пвам / настъ́пя	come on, set in, occur	прекале́н	too great, unconscionable
не спори́	don't argue	прекале́но голя́м	way too big
непреме́нен	indispensable, necessary	препи́свам / препи́ша (-еш)	rewrite, copy
непреме́нно	by all means	проверя́вам /	check, verify, test
неудобе́н	inconvenient	проверя́	
новогоди́шна елка́	New Year's tree	прозо́рче	small window
но́жиче	[razor] blade	проле́тен	spring ( <i>adj.</i> )
обича́й	custom, convention	проле́тно	vernal equinox
обли́чам /	dress [someone]	равноде́нствие	
облека́ (-чеш)		промя́на	change
обли́чам се /	put on, don	( <i>pl.</i> проме́ни)	
облека́ се (-чеш)		профе́сор	professor
обли́чам се спо́ртно	wear/put on casual clothing	равноде́нствие	equinox
обу́вам / обу́я	put something on someone's foot	разре́шение	permission
обу́вам се / обу́я се	put something on over the foot	разу́мен	sensible, rational
обу́ща	footwear	ра́нен	early
оки́чвам /	adorn, decorate	реве́р	lapel
оки́ча (-иш)		ревю́ ( <i>neuter</i> )	revue, show
отка́звам /	cancel, refuse	редо́вен	regular; in order
отка́жа (-еш)		ре́ша (-еш)	comb
откри́то	openly, aboveboard	ри́за	shirt
палто́	coat	сакó	jacket
пека́ (-чеш)	bake	сви́вам / сви́я	bend, fold, roll
пека́ се на слъ́нце	sunbathe	сви́вам гнездо́	build a nest
пискю́л	tassel, pendant	скри́вам / скрия́	hide
плóча	phonograph record	ску́чен	boring
по ба́нски	wearing swimsuits	сме́шен	funny, humorous
по по́вод	regarding, in connection with	сме́я се	laugh
пови́квам / пови́кам	call, call out	сму́щавам се /	get confused, be
по́вод	occasion, cause	сму́тя се	embarrassed
подро́бен	detailed	смя́там / сме́тна	reckon, count
подро́бно	in detail	смя́там (за)	consider [to be]
подска́звам /	hint, prompt	спо́ря	dispute, contend
подска́жа (-еш)		ста́на ми мъ́чно	I had a hard time
позна́йник	acquaintance	сти́гам / сти́гна	reach, arrive at
позна́йница	acquaintance ( <i>f.</i> )	събли́чам /	undress [someone]
поли́вам / полéя	pour	съблека́ (-чеш)	
поли́вам цветя́та	water the flowers	събли́чам се /	undress, get undressed
помо́лвам / помо́ля	beg, ask	съблека́ се (-чеш)	
по́мня	remember	събу́вам / събу́я	take [something] off [someone's] foot
попи́твам се /	ask oneself, wonder	събу́вам се /	take something off
попи́там се		събу́я се	one's foot
предста́вам /	present, offer	съкро́вище	treasure
предста́вя		та́	and; so that
		та́ча (-иш)	respect
		телефо́нен	telephone ( <i>adj.</i> )

## Тринайсети урок / Lesson 13

тенис	tennis	човече	dwarf
това е!	that's that!	чувствувам се	feel
тракам	rattle	(or чувствам се)	
устройвам / устрой	arrange, organize	щъркел	stork
фурор	furor	юг	south
ходя бос	go barefoot	яке	jacket

### CULTURAL COMMENTARY

#### Customs and beliefs: martenitsi; storks

A "martenitsa" (мартеница) is a small decoration made of red and white yarn wound into tassels. It is worn pinned or tied to one's lapel throughout the month of March. Friends give martenitsi to each other to mark the coming of spring. It is especially customary to give children martenitsi, and to mail them to friends in other countries. The colors are thought to symbolize the health of springtime: cheeks that are red and skin that is white (that is, not jaundiced). The custom is one in which Bulgarians take great delight.

Storks (щъркели) are very common birds in the Balkans. They often build their nests on rooftops near chimneys; to have a stork's nest on one's house is considered a sign of good luck. In addition, their return from winter migrations is considered to be a clear sign of spring.

#### Forms of address, and a poem

Forming diminutives with the suffix *-че* is quite common "at home" (within Bulgaria), but less so when referring to persons or things outside Bulgaria. Although Bulgarians could in principle refer to an English child as *англичанче*, they would not do so automatically. The word *българче*, on the other hand, is extremely common. Part of this may be due to the following poem that every Bulgarian schoolchild knows:

Аз съм българче. Свободно в край свободен аз живея. Всичко българско и родно любя, та ча и милея.	I am a Bulgarian child. Freely I live, in a free land. Everything Bulgarian and native is what I love, esteem and hold dear.
Аз съм българче. Обичам наш'те планини зелени. Българин да се наричам първа радост е за мене.	I am a Bulgarian child. I love our mountains green. To be able to say I am Bulgarian is the most joyful of things for me.

#### Folklore: Koprivshtitsa festival

It has been customary to hold a large folk festival every five years in the mountain town of Koprivshtitsa. Lovers of Bulgarian folk music come from all over the world for this festival. It will be described in Lesson 16.

## LESSON 14

### **DIALOGUE**

#### На гáрата в Сóфия

// Влáкът приближáва гáра Сóфия с мáлко закъснéние. На перóна чáкат мнóго хóра, между тáх един слáб човéк с мустáци и, мáлко пó-далéче, една мнóго елeгáнтно облéчена дáма. Веднáга щом влáкът спíра, от нéго слíзат първо Тáня с децáта, пóсле Милéна и Димíтър, а след товá дрúгите. //

Камен: Тáтко! Тí дойдé!

Петър: Разбíра се! Токú-що полúчих вáшето писмó от Вáрна. Намéрих го в пóщенската кутíя, когáто се върнах от рáбота. В нéго пишеше, че ще пристíгате с тóзи влáк. Трябваше да побързам, за да дóйда наврéме да ви посрéщна.

Таня: Имаме късмéт, че си в Сóфия. Каквá изненада!

Петър: Нали зnáеш, че áз съм по изненадите. Вкúщи ви чáка óще еднá изненада! Ё, деца, как прекáрахте на морéто? Каквó правихте? Хúбаво ли бéше?

Камен: О, мнóго хúбаво, тáтко. Сáмо íсках тí да си с нáс!

Надка: Тáтко, тáтко! Áз се наúчих да плúвам.

Петър: Брáво, мóето момíче!

Таня: Не мóжех да я извáдя от морéто. Стоéше по цýл дéн във водáта.

Надка: Вíж, тáтко, каквó гердáнче íмам. Нали е мнóго слáдко?

Петър: Дá, мнóго е хúбаво. Кóй ти го подарí?

Таня: Нíе с Нáдка всýка сýтрин събíрахме óхлювчета на плáжа. И Кáмен ни помáгаше. Пóсле избíрахме нáй-хúбавите и ги нíжехме на гердáни. Áз нанизах нáй-хúбавия гердáн.

Петър: А за тéбе, Кáмене, гердáн нýма ли?

Камен: Áз съм мбж. Защó ми е на мéне гердáнче? На мéне мáма ми кúпи шнóрхел!

\* \* \* \* \*

Димитър: Погледни, мило! Виж, майка ми ни маха оттам. Ела да ви запозная.

Милена: Боже, колко добре е облечена! Всички ли софийнки се обличат така? А виж ме мен на какво приличам след този дълъг път. Какво ли ще помисли за мен?

Димитър: Не се притеснявай, мило. Много си хубава. Сигурно ще те хареса. Мамо, ето ни най-после.

Павлина: Митенце! Ти пристигна!

Димитър: Ние пристигнахме, мамо. Запознай се, това е Милена. Милена, майка ми.

Павлина: Вие сигурно сте уморени от пътя. Хайде, таксито ни чака. Как пътувахте?

Милена: Без приключения.

\* \* \* \* \*

Таня: Хайде, деца, да тръгваме.

Надка: Нали и лелята ще дойде с нас?

Таня: Тя си има работа. Пусни я. Кажй ѝ довиждане.

Надка: Не, аз искам тя да дойде с нас. Искам да ѝ покажа куклите си.

Таня: Пусни сегат лелята. Пусни я, че бърза. Но може в неделя да отидем заедно на Витоша. Джули, обади ни се. Ето нашия телефон.

Джули: Не знам дали в неделя все още ще съм в София. Зависи какво ще каже професорът. Но ще ви се обадя на всяка цена, след като нещата се изяснят.



**BASIC GRAMMAR****14.1. The imperfect tense: form**

The endings of the imperfect tense are like those of the aorist; only the second and third singular are different. The imperfect endings are:

	<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>
<i>1<sup>st</sup></i>	-х-	-хме
<i>2<sup>nd</sup></i>	-ше	-хте
<i>3<sup>rd</sup></i>	-ше	-ха

These endings are preceded by one of two theme vowels: -а- (or -я-), used in а-conjugation verbs, and the alternating -я-/-е- vowel, used in all other verbs. Examples of the imperfect conjugation are given below, in each case together with the present and the aorist for comparison.

For а-conjugation (type 1) verbs, the aorist and the imperfect are identical except for second and third singular. Context is usually sufficient to know which is meant.

(type 1)	<i>PRESENT</i>	<i>IMPERFECT</i>	<i>AORIST</i>
<i>1<sup>st</sup> singular</i>	глед-ам	глед-ах	глед-ах
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> singular</i>	глед-аш	глед-аше	глед-а
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> singular</i>	глед-а	глед-аше	глед-а
<i>1<sup>st</sup> plural</i>	глед-аме	глед-ахме	глед-ахме
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> plural</i>	глед-ате	глед-ахте	глед-ахте
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> plural</i>	глед-ат	глед-аха	глед-аха

For all other verbs, the shape of the theme vowel depends upon the accent and upon the shape of the ending which follows. According to the general rule, the alternating vowel -я-/-е- always appears as -е- when unstressed. In the majority of verb types, therefore, the theme vowel will be -е-.

(type 2)	<i>PRESENT</i>	<i>IMPERFECT</i>	<i>AORIST</i>
<i>1<sup>st</sup> singular</i>	хód-я	хód-ех	хód-их
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> singular</i>	хód-иш	хód-еше	хód-и
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> singular</i>	хód-и	хód-еше	хód-и
<i>1<sup>st</sup> plural</i>	хód-им	хód-ехме	хód-ихме
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> plural</i>	хód-ите	хód-ехте	хód-ихте
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> plural</i>	хód-ят	хód-еха	хód-иха

When the theme vowel is accented, it appears as -e- in the second and third singular and -я- or -а- elsewhere. For example:

(type 3)

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	AORIST
1 <sup>st</sup> singular	върв-я	върв-ях	върв-ях
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	върв-иш	върв-еше	върв-я
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	върв-и	върв-еше	върв-я
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	върв-им	върв-яхме	върв-яхме
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	върв-ите	върв-яхте	върв-яхте
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	върв-ят	върв-яха	върв-яха

The *endings* of the imperfect tense are straightforward: there are only the above types. *Stems*, though, can be different. This is because the imperfect tense is formed from the present tense stem. When the present (= imperfect) and aorist stems are identical, as in the above examples, the aorist and imperfect paradigms differ only in their endings. Indeed, when the stems are the same and the theme vowel is -а- or -я-, the aorist and imperfect paradigms are identical except for the second and third singular forms.

The following are examples of verbs whose imperfect stem differs from the aorist stem. Because the endings are predictable, only the first person plural forms are given. Note in each case the similarity with the present tense stem, *including accent*.

(type 5)

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	AORIST
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	чет-ém	чет-яхме	чѐт-охме

(type 8)

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	AORIST
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	пѣш-ем	пѣш-ехме	пѣс-ахме

(type 9)

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	AORIST
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	бер-ém	бер-яхме	бр-ахме

If there is a consonantal alternation within the present tense (as in *móra* and *сека́*), the stem is taken from the third singular (and not the first singular). For example:

## Четиринайсети урок / Lesson 14

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	AORIST
<i>1<sup>st</sup> singular</i>	мог-а	мож-ех	мож-ах

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	AORIST
<i>1<sup>st</sup> singular</i>	сек-а	сеч-ах	сяк-ох

### 14.2. Usage of the imperfect tense

The imperfect is formally unique in that it is marked both for past tense (by the presence of the consonant -x- in the endings) and for present tense (by the use of the present tense stem of the verb).

Its meaning is a similar mixture. In terms of time frame, it clearly locates an action in the past. In all other ways, the meaning is that of the present tense: it describes an action or state that is either in progress at the moment in question, is habitually repeated, or is a general fact. As examples, consider the following pairs, in which the verb forms are underlined to focus upon this contrast:

*present*

Всеки ден чете вестник.

He reads the newspaper every day.

*imperfect*

Макар и на морето,  
той четеше вестник всеки ден.

Even though [he was] at the seashore,  
he read the newspaper every day.

*present*

Тя ходи много на кино.

She goes to the movies a lot.

*imperfect*

По-рано много ходеше на кино.

She used to go to the movies a lot.

*present*

Ти какво правиш в момента?

What are you doing right now?

*imperfect*

Ти какво правеше в този момент?

What were you doing right then?

*present*

Ние сега вече не пием много.

We don't drink much any more.

*imperfect*

А тогава -- ах, как пиехме!

But back then -- boy, how we used to drink!

*present*

Той идва редовно  
да играе бридж с татко ти.

He comes over regularly  
to play bridge with your father.

*imperfect*

Той идваше редовно  
да играе бридж с татко ти.

He used to come over regularly  
to play bridge with your father.

In fact, the only essential thing that separates each of the two pairs is the time frame: the sentences with a present tense verb describe an action occurring "now", and the sentences with an imperfect tense verb describe an action which was occurring "then".

The most appropriate English translations of the imperfect are "used to do" or "would do" (in the case of a repeated or habitual action) and "was doing", "were doing" (in the case of a single durative action).

### 14.3. Contrast of aorist and imperfect tenses

Both the aorist and imperfect tenses are concerned with past action. The aorist is the more neutral of the two: it focuses upon the fact of an action that happened in the past, but does not add any further information. The imperfect, however, concentrates on the duration of the action over a certain period of time. The English past progressive ("was doing", "were going") often renders this meaning exactly. In other instances, the English simple past is necessary. In these cases, context provides the necessary information of repetition or duration.

In the following examples, the main verb forms are underlined to focus on this contrast:

*aorist*

Мислих, мислих,  
но нищо не измислих.

I thought and thought,  
but didn't think up anything.

*imperfect*

То е, защото  
мислех под напрежение.

That's because  
I was thinking under pressure.

*aorist*

Вчера той отиде на конферен-  
цията и слуша два доклада.

Yesterday he went to the conference  
and listened to two papers.

*imperfect*

Първият беше много скучен.  
Отначало той внимателно  
слушаше, но после  
вниманието му се притъпи.

The first was very boring. In the  
beginning he listened  
attentively, but after that his  
attention wavered.

The usage of the imperfect is seen especially well in the narration of past events. The imperfect is used to set the frame for a story, and to involve the listener in the events of that time frame. For instance:

Вървях по улицата, рано-рано.  
Птиците пееха. [...]

I was walking down the street,  
early in the morning. The  
birds were singing. [...]

Връщах се с такси от болницата.  
Имаше голямо движение. [...]

I was coming from the hospital  
by taxi. There was a lot  
of traffic. [...]

If the speaker uses only imperfective verbs, the focus remains on the scene, and on the mood of the particular durative time frame. But if (as is often the case) the speaker goes on to narrate specific events that then happened within that time frame, s/he switches to the aorist. Thus, the imperfect is used to relate things that were going on in the background, while the aorist is used to relate things that happened, events in the foreground.

The following narrative illustrates this contrast between aorist and imperfect.

Imperfect

Готвех си вечеря. Пóмня, че  
се чóудех кдé е солтá.

I was making dinner. I remember  
wondering where the salt was.

*(actions going on in the background)*

Aorist

Изведнѣж силно ме заболя  
корéмът.

Suddenly I got a sharp pain in my  
abdomen.

*(foregrounded story-line event)*

Imperfect

Мислех отначáло, че ще ми  
мине...

I thought in the beginning that it  
would go away...

*(state, background information)*

Aorist

...и продължих да гóтвя.

...and I resumed cooking.

*(foregrounded single event, i.e. the "decision" to continue)*

Но не отмíна...

But it didn't go away...

*(foregrounded story-line event, leading to conclusion of story)*

Simple past

...и трябваше да извикам бърза  
пóмощ.

...and I had to call the ambulance.

*(conclusion of story)*

### 14.4. Indirect discourse

Speech which is quoted directly is called "direct discourse", and that which is rephrased in the speaker's own words is called "indirect discourse". The relationship between the two is particularly important when one rephrases something that was said, thought or felt at some time in the past. Consider the contrast between direct discourse and indirect discourse in the following English sentences:

<u>Type of discourse</u>		<u>verb</u>
<i>direct</i>	She said, "I am going to the movies."	am going
<i>indirect</i>	She said that she was going to the movies.	was going
<i>direct</i>	You wrote, "We will arrive today by train."	will arrive
<i>indirect</i>	You wrote that you would arrive today by train.	would arrive
<i>direct</i>	I thought: "It will be nice to visit Bulgaria."	will be
<i>indirect</i>	I thought it would be nice to visit Bulgaria.	would be
<i>direct</i>	My only desire was: "I wish you were with us."	were
<i>indirect</i>	I wished only that you had been with us.	had been

The speaker is talking of something in the past, and therefore the verb of the main sentence is in the past tense ("said", "wrote", "was"). The verb of a direct quote remains exactly as it was at the moment it was spoken, written, thought or felt. When an English speaker reformulates this quote as indirect discourse, however, s/he must indicate the time distance by shifting the quoted verb into the past.

Bulgarian does *not* make this shift. All verbs in indirect discourse remain in the same tense as when originally spoken, written or thought. Compare the Bulgarian translations of the above sentences:

<u>Type of discourse</u>		<u>verb</u>
<i>direct</i>	Ка́за: "Оти́вам на ки́но."	оти́вам
<i>indirect</i>	Ка́за, че оти́ва на ки́но.	оти́ва
<i>direct</i>	Ви́е напи́сахте: "Ще присти́гнем днес с вла́к."	ще присти́гнем
<i>indirect</i>	Ви́е напи́сахте, че ще присти́гнете днес с вла́к.	ще присти́гнете
<i>direct</i>	Поми́слих си: "Ху́баво ще е да посети́м Бълга́рия."	ще е
<i>indirect</i>	Поми́слих си, че ще е ху́баво да посети́м Бълга́рия.	ще е
<i>direct</i>	Еди́нственото ми желе́ние бе́ше: "И́скам ти́ да си с на́с!"	си
<i>indirect</i>	Еди́нственото ми желе́ние бе́ше ти́ да си с на́с.	си

## Четиринайсети урок / Lesson 14

Note that this requirement applies not only to neutral speech or thought, but also to wishes and desires. Thus, while most instances of indirect discourse occur after the conjunction **че**, some also occur after **да**.

It is necessary for speakers of English to pay particular attention to this rule. The shift of tenses is made so naturally (and unconsciously) in English that it will seem second nature to reproduce it in Bulgarian. It will take practice to catch all the instances where this English-based tendency must be overcome.

### 14.5. Subordinate clauses

A complex sentence is one in which two simple sentences (each with its own verb) are joined. When they are part of a single sentence, each of the simpler sentences is called a "clause". One, the main clause, stands alone, while the other, the subordinate clause, is joined to it by a conjunction.

Many such conjunctions are already familiar to the student. They are summarized here to illustrate their use in complex sentences.

**че** that

Зна́я, че в та́зи сладка́рница има ху́бав сладолéд.	I know that there is nice ice cream in that sweet-shop.
--	--

**ако** if

Ако ва́ли, ня́ма да мо́жем да отиде́м на Ви́тоша у́тре.	If it rains, we won't be able to go to Vitosha tomorrow.
--	---

**докато** while

Дока́то ви́е два́мата прика́звахте, а́з приго́твих вси́чко.	While you two were chatting, I got everything ready.
--	---

**като** as, when

Ка́то върва́хме по у́лицата, то́й ми разка́зваше за фести́вала.	As we walked down the street, he told me about the festival.
--	---

Ка́то живе́ех у тях на кварта́ира, пла́щах висо́к на́ем.	I paid a high rent when I lived in their apartment.
---	--

**ка́кто** as, like

Ще напра́вим то́чно ка́кто ни съве́твате.	We will do exactly as you advise us.
--	--------------------------------------

щом since, as, if, as soon as

Щом влакът спира, слізат  
пътниците от него.

As soon as the train stops, the  
passengers get off.

Щом те боли гърлото, облечи  
се!

If your throat hurts, put something  
on!

когато when

Намерих го, когато се върнах от  
работа.

I found it when I came home from  
work.

There are also a number of conjunctions which are formed of two components. The most common of these are the following:

преди да before

Преди да тръгнем, ще ти се  
оба́дим.

I'll give you a call before we set out.

Преди да ми ка́же, че е от  
Аме́рика, ми́слех, че е  
бу́лгарка.

Before she told me she was from  
America, I thought she was  
Bulgarian.

сле́д като after, once, on

Сле́д като взех лека́рството, се  
почу́вствувах по-добре́.

After I took the medicine, I felt  
better.

Ще ви се оба́дя, сле́д като  
неща́та се изясня́т.

I'll give you a call once things get  
clarified.

бе́з да without

Търсихме, търсихме, бе́з да  
наме́рим ни́що.

We looked and looked without  
finding anything.

Note that the English translation of "бе́з да + verb" must use a gerundial form (e.g. "finding") as its object.



## EXERCISES

I. Put each sentence into the frame "По-рано..., ама вече не." ("Earlier..., but not any more").

1. Камен и Надка стават всеки ден в седем часа.
2. През лятото често вали.
3. Те ходят всяка седмица на Витоша.
4. Те искат да се запознаем.
5. Ангел винаги закъснява за работа.
6. Ние често играем тенис заедно.
7. Димитър всеки ден се обажда на майка си по телефона.

II. Rewrite in indirect discourse.

1. Старата жена пита: "Кой звъни?"
2. Петър се интересува: "Кой беше този човек с очилата? Видях го, като говореше с Таня."
3. Таня пожела на младоженците: "Бъдете щастливи!"
4. Гостите помолиха: "Може ли да се обадим по телефона?"
5. Надка казва: "Боли ме гърлото."
6. Димитър предлага на приятелите си: "Останете още малко с нас!"
7. Джули моли децата: "Не викайте толкова, ще събудите майка си!"

III. Fill in the blanks with one of the following conjunctions: ако, без да, докато, както, като, когато, преди да, че, щом.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ не ми кажеш всичко, няма да си тръгна.
2. Той си тръгна, \_\_\_\_\_ филмът свърши.
3. Те винаги се обаждат, \_\_\_\_\_ ще закъснеят.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ не искаш, не идвай с нас.
5. Вечер \_\_\_\_\_ заспи, тя четеше роман.
6. Той, \_\_\_\_\_ подозира, беше пълно копие на знаменития актьор.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ я видя, ще ѝ кажа.

**ADDITIONAL GRAMMAR NOTES****14.1a. The imperfect tense: form**

Formally, the imperfect tense is a mixture of the present and the aorist: it has the stem of the present and the endings of the aorist. Indeed, those features which are *different from* the aorist are precisely those which are *identical to* the present. This is seen especially clearly in verbs of type 4 and 7. Note also that while the aorist sometimes lacks a theme vowel, the imperfect always has one.

(type 4)

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	AORIST
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	взѐм-ем	взѐм-ех-ме	взѐ- -хмѐ

(type 4)

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	AORIST
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	чѹ-ем	чѹ-ех-ме	чѹ- -хмѐ

(type 7)

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	AORIST
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	живѐ-ем	живѐ-ех-ме	жив- -я́хмѐ

For all but type 1 verbs, the imperfect theme vowel is the alternating vowel *-я-/-ѐ-*. According to the basic rule, *-ѐ-* appears when unstressed or when the following syllable contains a front vowel, and *-а-* appears elsewhere. In the case of the imperfect tense, two exceptions must be made to this rule.

The first concerns the 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> plural endings *-хмѐ*, *-хтѐ*. Despite the fact that these endings contain a front vowel, the theme vowel preceding them continues to be *-а-* if it is stressed (*четя́хмѐ*, *четя́хтѐ*). Apparently the consonant *-х-* blocks the application of this rule.

The second concerns verbs whose imperfect stem ends in *-ч*, *-ж*, *-ш* or *-й*. According to the rule, *-ѐ-* should appear in 2-3sg., and *-а-* should appear elsewhere. This rule is indeed observed in the forming the imperfect of these verbs. Many Bulgarians, however, use the theme vowel *-ѐ-* in all imperfect forms of these verbs. Below are given both the variant forms and the regular forms:

(type 3)

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	IMPERFECT variant	AORIST
1 <sup>st</sup> singular	мълч-а	мълч-ах	мълч-эх	мълч-ах
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	мълч-иш	мълч-еше	мълч-еше	мълч-а
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	мълч-и	мълч-еше	мълч-еше	мълч-а
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	мълч-им	мълч-ахме	мълч-ехме	мълч-ахме
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	мълч-ите	мълч-ахте	мълч-ехте	мълч-ахте
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	мълч-ат	мълч-аха	мълч-еха	мълч-аха

Verbs in which this variant is commonly heard are *държ́а*, *стоя́*, *сека́* and the like. The apparent tendency is to increase the formal differentiation between aorist and imperfect.

#### 14.2a. Additional uses of the imperfect tense

The imperfective aspect is used to express simultaneity with another ongoing action. In contrast to the aorist, which signifies the sequential occurrence of past actions, the imperfect emphasizes the fact that both actions are past, and that neither is any more specified in time than the other. For example:

То́й гово́реше по телефо́на,  
а ти́ каквó правеше?

What were you doing while he was  
talking on the phone?

То́й идваше у нас, докато  
та́тко ти рабо́теше в  
министе́рството.

He used to come by to see us when \*  
your father was working at the  
Ministry.

*\* during the time period when*

С нас пъту́ваха два́ма  
америка́нци -- ня́ма да  
повя́рваш ко́лко хубаво  
гово́реха бълга́рски!

There were two Americans traveling  
with us -- you wouldn't believe  
how well they spoke \* Bulgarian!

*\* during the time of the traveling*

The imperfect can also be used to ask someone to repeat something which was said in the present tense. Here, the meaning remains "present", but the added information is that of politeness. The distancing effect of the past tense verb form acts to smooth over somehow the fact that communication was not achieved properly the first time around. This usage is also found in English.

Ка́к бе́ше не́говото и́ме?

What was his name?

[= What did you say his name was?]

Кога́ присти́гаше самоле́тът?

When was the plane due?

[= When did you say the plane was due?]

## 14.3a. Contrast of aorist and imperfect tenses

In the case of the verb *móra* “can, be able”, the difference between aorist and imperfect usages is particularly tricky. This is partly because English translations are almost completely unable to convey this difference, and partly because of the ambiguous meaning of the verb in its past tense form, “could”.

When the past tense of “can” refers to the fact of (in)ability, the contrast between aorist *можáх* and imperfect *мóжех* is similar to the contrast in other verbs. For example:

*aorist: fact of action*

Тя не можá да понесé обидата  
и се разплáка.

She couldn't deal with the insult  
and burst into tears.

*imperfect: emphasis on duration of action*

Тя си оти́де, защóто не мóжеше  
пóвече да понáся обидите му.

She left, because she could  
no longer bear his insults.

*aorist: fact of action*

-- Ти можá ли да видиш филма  
снóщи?  
-- Не можáх. Мнóго бях уморén  
и си лéгнах рáно.

“Did you manage to watch that film  
last night?”

“I didn't. I was very tired and went  
to bed early.”

*imperfect: emphasis on duration of action*

-- А аз случáйно го видях.  
Не мóжех да заспá и затовá  
вклóчих телевизора.

“I just happened to watch it.  
I couldn't fall asleep  
and so turned on the TV.”

When the past tense of “can” refers to the possibility of an action, however, then the imperfect form *мóжех* means “could have (but didn't)”. This conditional usage of the imperfect will be treated in greater detail in Lessons 22 and 23.

Here is one example of this contrast:

*aorist: fact of action*

Не можáх да ти се обáдя,  
защóто нýмах време.

I wasn't able to call because I  
didn't have time.

*imperfect: possibility of action*

Мóжех да ти се обáдя, но не  
и́сках да те притесн́явам.

I could have called but I  
didn't want to disturb you.

### 14.3b. Imperfect tense and imperfective aspect

The names of the two simple past tenses (imperfect and aorist) and of the two aspects (imperfective and perfective) are even more similar in Bulgarian than they are in English. The chart below, given already in shortened form in Lesson 12, shows the Bulgarian names and their English equivalents. Recall that the literal meaning of the Bulgarian adjective **свършен** is "completed."

Aspect (вид)		свършен <i>Perfective</i>	несвършен <i>Imperfective</i>
Tense (време)	мѢНѢЛО	свършено <i>Aorist</i>	несвършено <i>Imperfect</i>

Such a striking similarity in names seems to suggest a corresponding similarity in fact. It is important to be aware of this similarity, but also of the differences. The imperfect and aorist tenses, and imperfective and perfective aspects, are *not* interchangeable.

The aorist tense can be formed from both perfective and imperfective verbs. The meaning of the aorist is the fact of action in the past, and the meaning of aspect is the presence or absence of the idea of boundedness. One can think of the fact of past action in either bounded or unbounded terms: if it is past bounded action, the verb is perfective aorist (**тоѢ го направи**), and if it is past unbounded action, the verb is imperfective aorist (**тя прави неѢо**). There is some overlap between the idea "specific point in past time" (aorist tense) and "bounded action" (perfective aspect), but the two categories are far from synonymous.

Similarly, the imperfect tense can be formed from both imperfective and perfective verbs. The meaning of the imperfect is "durative or habitual past action, the frame of a narrative" -- action not bound to any particular point in time. Here there is more overlap of meaning. Verbs which lack the general idea of boundedness (imperfective verbs) tend to occur more often in contexts which express the absence of temporal boundedness. Nevertheless, there are situations in which a bounded (perfective) verb can be used with the meaning "repeated or habitual past action". These specific situations, which are conditioned by the presence of certain conjunctions, will be studied in Lesson 17.

Yet the terminological parallel noted above is neither coincidental nor illusory: there is a similarity between the two sorts of boundedness. That expressed by the opposition aorist vs. imperfect is concerned with a perception of past time, and that expressed by the opposition perfective vs. imperfective is concerned with a perception of the nature of verbal activity. The general idea of aspect is present in both, and it is not altogether wrong to say that both these oppositions are aspectual in nature. Indeed, some grammarians speak of "subordinate aspect" (that which is limited to the frame of past time) and "superordinate aspect" (that which is concerned with all verbal activity). While the student must learn both the forms and the meanings as

they are associated with these separate categories, s/he should also be aware of the underlying importance of aspect as an organizing principle of the Bulgarian verb system.

#### 14.5a. Subordinate clauses

The compound conjunctions *преди да* and *след като* mean “before” and “after”, respectively. *Both* components of the conjunction must be present. This is particularly important to remember in the case of *преди да*, because it is possible for these two components to be separated from one another in the sentence. That is, the word order rule which requires the verb of a *да*-phrase to follow immediately after it supersedes the word order rule which keeps the two components of the conjunction together. Thus when the subject of the verb following *да* must be included, it comes *between* the conjunction and the *да*. For instance:

Ти трябва да пристигнеш,  
преди той да си легне.

You must get here before he goes  
to bed.

Special care must be taken not to confuse the conjunctions *преди да* “before” and *след като* “after” with the prepositions *преди* (*пред*) and *след*, which also mean “before” (“in front of”) and “after”, respectively. Each of the conjunctions contains two words, and must be followed by an entire verbal phrase, whereas each of the prepositions is a single word, which must be followed by a noun or pronoun.

##### conjunction преди да

Тя навярно ще пристигне  
преди той да дойде.

She'll probably arrive before he does.

vs.

##### preposition пред

Четиримата стоят пред блока.

The four of them are standing in  
front of the apartment building.

##### preposition преди

Трябва да дойдеш преди един.

You have to come before 1:00.

##### conjunction след като

След като пристигнеш, ще ни  
разкажеш всичко.

After you get here, you'll tell us  
everything.

vs.

##### preposition след

След яденето поднесоха кафе.

After dinner, they served coffee.

След пет години никой няма да  
си спомня за това.

At the end of five years, no one will  
remember that.

### 14.6. Neuter nouns, continued

Foreign words ending in **-и** and **-у** are treated as neuter nouns in Bulgarian. For example:

<i>singular indefinite</i>	<i>singular definite</i>	<i>plural indefinite</i>	<i>plural definite</i>	<i>(meaning)</i>
такси́	такси́то	такси́та	такси́тата	taxi
менио́	менио́то	менио́та	менио́тата	menu

A number of other “words” are considered to be neuter in gender. Among these are the spoken form of certain very common abbreviations. Note that in these instances the letters are spoken followed by the vowel **-е-** (and not the vowel **-ъ-**, as in the normal “naming” of a letter of the alphabet).

ГДР	(Герма́нска демокра́тическа репу́блика) DDR [the former East German republic]	›	ге́дерé (то)
СДС	(Съю́з на демокра́тическите си́ли): UDF [Union of Democratic Forces] *	›	се́десé (то)
БСП	(Бъ́лгарска социа́листическа па́ртия): BSP [Bulgarian Socialist Party] *	›	бе́сепé (то)

\* political parties within Bulgaria



Former Communist Party headquarters, downtown Sofia

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

1. Един баща се караше на синовете си. Обърна се към по-големия.  
-- Защо тук е толкова мръсно? Какво прави вчера цял ден?  
-- Мотях се.  
-- А брат ти какво правеше?  
-- Помогаше ми.
2. Той гледаше телевизия по цял ден, но този филм някак му се изплъзна.
3. Изкъпа се, облече се, изчисти си обувките и, тъкмо като си връзваше вратовръзката, телефонът иззвъня. Докато говореше по телефона, кафето му изкипя. Стана му ясно, че и днес няма да му върви.
4. Вчера видях Георги на улицата. Той вървеше под ръка с едно много хубаво момиче и му разказваше нещо смешно. Момичето го гледаше влюбено. Като свърши разказът, момичето се разсмя, а Георги го целуна.
5. Тогава те трудно живееха, а сега им е по-добре.
6. Той беше толкова уморен, че не можеше да държи очите си отворени.
7. Те можаха да направят превода без грешка.
8. Те можеха да направят превода и без грешка, ако внимаваха.
9. В България като кихнеш, ти казват "Наздраве!", а като се окъпеш -- "Честита баня!"
10. Директорът диктуваше бързо на секретарката си, като поглеждаше от време на време през прозореца.
11. Като пораснеш, ще станеш инженер.
12. Професорът съобщи, че изпитът по български език ще се проведе след три дни.
13. Попитах го от кога се страхува, но той не ми отговори.
14. Аз много се зарадвах, когато той ми каза, че утре пристига в София.
15. Ще ти се разсърдя, ако не ѝ кажеш, че той се обажда всеки ден да пита за нея.
16. Без да я питат, каза, че отдавна знае за това, но пет пари не дава.



## SENTENCES FOR TRANSLATION

1. He told us he would arrive today, but he's not here yet. Are you sure you heard him correctly?
2. "Tell me again what happened last night. You were washing the dishes..."  
"I was washing the dishes, and thinking about my exam the next day, when I heard a loud sound. Did something fall, I wondered. I went into the next room to look. Nothing. Nadka was sitting there, playing with her dolls, dressing them and undressing them. I asked her whether she had heard anything. And then I saw the mirror on the floor, all in pieces."
3. While I was talking on the phone, someone came into the house and took our television set! What a terrible world this is.
4. "What did Milena write in her letter?"  
"She said she was sorry there had been no letter from her for so long, but that she was very busy at her new job, and that she would write again as soon as she could."
5. Don't forget to put the money into the envelope before you mail the letter. After the postman takes the letter, it will be too late.
6. She wanted to call you earlier, but didn't have your phone number. I'll give it to her as soon as I see her. I know that you'll understand without asking.
7. I think Peter is in love. Did you see him this morning? He was standing in front of Katia's house and gazing at her window. He stood there for more than an hour without moving! And I myself stood there for a full fifteen minutes before he noticed me.
8. We used to study much more than we do now. Last year, for instance, we studied three hours every night. We used to drink a lot more coffee than too.
9. My mother told me that when she was young she used to write poems. She would lie in bed and look at the moon, and then she would get up, take her pencil and notebook, and write down her thoughts.

## READING SELECTION

Новини

2 април

Здравей Пламене,

Имам за тебе една добра и една лоша новина. Ще започна с лошата: Помниш ли новия ми костюм? Сигурно го помниш, защото май беше единствен. Купих си го за вашата сватба. Нали кумът трябва да е представителен. Избихме го заедно с Лиляна повече от два часа. Въртах се пред огледалото и се оглеждах. Мислех, че ще го нося дълго, защото изглеждаше много здрав, но сега от него става само парцал. Ето как стана това.

Отивах на работа както обикновено, с велосипеда. Лиляна ме убеждаваше да не карам велосипеда с костюма. Убеждаваше ме, но не ме убеди. Имахме банкет в службата и исках да се издокарам. Движех се по обичайния си път. Знам го наизуст и мога да го мина със затворени очи. Всичко беше добре, но се появи онзи хлапак. Изглеждаше съвсем обикновено момче -- седеше на една пейка на тротоара и ядеше сандвич. Носеше фланелка с надпис "University of California - Berkeley" и шапка от вестник. Със свободната ръка си подпираше брадичката. Тъкмо минавах покрай него, когато хлапакът извика: "Чичко, задното ти колело се върти напред!" Изтръпнах от ужас. Погледнах надолу и назад. Найстина се въртеше напред. Докато мислех дали това е наред, велосипедът продължаваше напред -- и с двете колела -- право към кофата за боклук. Сега сакоето е скъсано, а панталоните са целите в петна. Обърнах се, но хлапакът изчезваше зад ъгъла. Като че ли се смееше.

Добрата новина е, че спечелих от тотото. Знаеш какво е тото -- в тази игра може да спечелиш, но обикновено губиш (или почти винаги губиш) пари, като познаваш числа. Казват, че най-сигурният начин е да сънуваш числата. Приготвих закуска за децата, когато съобщавах числата по радиото. Не вярвах на ушите си -- четири от шест. Тази игра я играех от четири-пет години, но досега все нямах късмет. Така се зарадвах, че пържените филийки на децата почти изгоряха. Може би ще има за нов костюм!

Какви новини при тебе? Добри или лоши?

Марин

## GLOSSARY

актьор	actor	иззвънявам / иззвъни	ring [out]
банкѐт	banquet	изкипявам / изкипи	boil over
бѐз да	without ( <i>relative conjunction</i> )	изкъпвам се / изкъпя се	bathe, take a bath
боклук	rubbish, garbage	изплъзвам се / изплъзна се	slip out, slip through
бридж	bridge (card game)	изтръпвам / изтръпна	fall asleep (of a body part)
БСП [ <i>pron. бѐсепѐ</i> ]	BSP (Bulgarian Socialist Party)	изтръпвам от ужас	freeze with terror
в служба	at work	изчиствам / изчисти	clean up, clean out
велосипѐд	bicycle	изяснявам / изясня	clear up
включвам / включа (-иш)	include	има м с работата	have things to do
влюбен	in love	инженѐр	engineer
вниманиѐ	attention	като че ли	as if, apparently
вниманиѐто му се	his attention	като че ли се	he appeared to be
притъпи	wandered	смееше	laughing
внимателен	attentive	квартира	apartment, quarters
вървя под ръка	walk arm in arm	кихам ( <i>or</i> кихвам)	sneeze
въртя се	turn around, rotate	/ кихна	
ГДР [ <i>pron. гѐдерѐ</i> ]	GDR (DDR, former East Germany)	колело	wheel; bicycle
гердан	necklace, collar	костюм	suit
германски	German	кофа	pail, bucket
губя	lose	кофа за боклук	garbage can
движа се (-иш)	move, go	кум, -ѐт	godfather
демократически	democratic	кума	godmother
диктувам	dictate	макар	at least
днес няма да ми	today's not going to	макар че	although, even though
върви	be my day	михам	wave
желаниѐ	wish, desire	минало несвър- шено време	imperfect tense
завис от вас	it depends on you	министѐрство	ministry
завис той какво ще	it depends what he	мотам се ( <i>or</i> мотая се)	fool around
каже	will say	мустаци ( <i>pl.</i> )	mustache
зависа	depend	навѐрно	probably
зад ъгъла	around the corner	надпис	inscription
заден	back, rear ( <i>adj.</i> )	нанизвам / нанижа (-еш)	string together
закъснѐние	delay; tardiness	напред	ahead, forwards
запознавам / запозна	acquaint [someone] with	напрежѐние	pressure, tension
игра	play, game; playing	научавам се / науча се (-иш)	learn
изваждам / извадя	take/bring out, produce, extract	нижа (-еш)	thread, string together
изгарям / изгоря	get burned, burn up	обида	insult
издокарвам се / издокарам се	dress up	обичаен	customary

# Четиринайсети урок / Lesson 14

облечен, -ена	dressed	работа	work, business
обръщам се /	turn	радио	radio
обръна се		разказ	story
оглеждам / огледам	survey, examine	разплаквам се /	burst into tears
оглеждам се /	look at one's	разплача се (-еш)	
огледам се	reflection	разсмивам се /	burst out laughing
окъпвам се /	bathe	разсмея се	
окъпя се (-еш)		разсърдвам се /	get angry
от време на време	from time to time	разсърдя се	
отминавам / отмина	pass by, leave behind	рано-рано	very early
отначало	at the beginning	република	republic
охлюв	snail shell		
		с малко	a little late
панталон (or	pants	закъснение	
панталони)		СДС [pron. sédesé]	SDS (UDF, Union of Democratic Forces)
партия	party	скала	rock, cliff
парцал	rag	скъсан	torn
пет пари не давам	I don't give a damn	слаб	weak, thin
петно	spot	сладкарница	sweet shop
пляж	beach	след като	after (relative conjunction)
по изненадите съм	[I] like surprises	служба	service, position
по-рано	earlier, before; "used to"	софиянец	Sofia resident
	have/take a look	софиянка	Sofia resident (f.)
поглеждам /		социалистически	socialist
погледна	look! look over	спечелвам /	win, gain, earn
погледни	there!	спечеля	
подозирам / подозря	suspect, be suspicious	страхувам се	fear, be afraid of
подпирам / подпъра	prop up, support	състоя се	consist of; take place
подпирам си	[sit] with chin in	съюз	union
брадичката	hand		
познавам число	pick/guess a number	такси (neuter)	taxi
понасям / понесá	carry off; sustain, endure	току-що	just, now, barely
	bear/sustain an	тото	lottery, pool
понасям обида	insult	тротоар	sidewalk
попитвам / попитам	ask, inquire		
пораствам / порасна	grow up	убеждавам	try to convince
почувствавам	have the feeling, become aware	убедя	convince
	appear	ужас	horror
появявам се /			
появя се	translation	фланелка	T-shirt
превод	before (relative	(or фанелка)	
преди да	conjunction)	филийка	little slice
	personable,	филия	slice
представителен	distinguished		
приключение	adventure	хлапак	kid
притъпявам /	blunt, dull		
притъпя		число	number
провеждам се /	be conducted, be		
проведа се	implemented	шнорхел	snorkel
пълно копие	exact replica		
пържени филийки	French toast	ъгъл (pl. ъгли)	corner

## **CULTURAL COMMENTARY**

### **Geography: Black Sea and its coastal cities**

The majority of Bulgarians try to go to the Black Sea for a summer holiday. There are many fine beaches: swimming, sunbathing, snorkeling, gathering of shells, and other normal beach sports are part of the holiday. There are also interesting historical sites nearby, particularly the scattered remains of the Byzantine town of Nesebăr (Несебър). These ruins, of especial interest to medievalists, are located on a peninsula only accessible over a long causeway. Nesebăr is located on the Black Sea coast to the north of the port of Burgas (Бургас).

### **Customs and beliefs: kum; April Fool's Day**

Important family ceremonies such as weddings and christenings are marked not only by the appropriate ritual events but also by the adoption into the family of someone as "sponsor" of this event. The name given to this sponsor is "kum" (кѹм, feminine form кумá). The custom corresponds to that of the "godfather" and "godmother" for a newly-born child. In Bulgaria, this custom is extended to weddings as well. The person chosen as one's "kum" bears that relationship throughout life.

The custom of playing practical jokes on "April Fool's Day" (April 1<sup>st</sup>) is widespread in Bulgaria, as in the West.

### **City life: lottery; T-shirts**

The state lottery in Bulgaria is called "toto" (тото). One buys a lottery ticket with 49 numbers printed on it, and guesses which will be the chosen numbers. Up to six numbers are chosen: he who guesses all six correctly wins the largest prize; one also wins with five or four correct guesses. The correct numbers are announced on the radio and printed in the newspaper.

T-shirts and sweatshirts with the names of Western universities on them are very popular in Bulgaria. Those who wear them may possibly have had some connection with the university named; normally, however, there is no such connection.

### **Food and drink: "fried slices"**

"Fried slices" (пържени филийки) of bread are a popular breakfast, especially for children. The Western equivalent is French toast.



## LESSON 15

### **DIALOGUE**

Да отидем да хапнем някъде?

Джули: В Сѳия е по-прохладно, отколкото на морето. Почакайте ме малко. Искам да си извадя жилетката от чантата.

Веселин: Сѳия е по-високо.

Дейвид: Така ли? А мястото изглежда съвсем равно.

Веселин: Софийското поле е на петстотин и петдесет метра над морското равнище.

Ангел: По-хубаво от морето няма, нали Дейвид? При нас в Балчик и климатът е мек, и риба може да си хване човек. През лятото от софийнци не можем да се размием. И чужденци идват на почивка.

Веселин: Дейвид, Джули, да отидем да хапнем някъде, а? Аз страшно съм огладнял.

Ангел: Хайде да отидем. Аз знам едно много хубаво място. Миналата година, като бях в командировка в Сѳия, всяка вечер ходехме там с приятели.

Дейвид: Ами добре, аз съм вече много гладен. И жаден! Има ли там на това място хубави напитки?

Джули: Аз ще ви помоля да ме извините, много съм уморена. Две нощи не съм спала и днес искам да си легна по-рано.

Веселин: Човек трябва да яде три пъти на ден! Днес сте на един сандвич с кашкавал цял ден. Не е достатъчно!

Джули: Имам едно кисело мляко в стаята и това ми стига. Аз не съм свикнала да ям по много.

Веселин: Както искате. Аз ще ви изпратя до вкъщи. Виждам, че чантата ви е тежка. Ангеле, вие с Дейвид може да идете тогава да вечеряте без нас.

Ангел: Да тръгнем заедно, можем да намерим някое място по пътя.

## Петнайсети урок / Lesson 15

// Джули, Дейвид, Ангел и Веселин си взимат багажа и излизат от чакалнята на гарата. Тръгват към спирката на трамвая. //

Веселин: Довечера ще се обадя на Сашо да уредя среща за утре.

Дейвид: Кой е този Сашо?

Веселин: Професорът, бе! Александър Попов! Нали искахте да се срещнете с него?

Джули: Да, разбира се. Много мило от ваша страна, че ни помагате.

Веселин: Къде да ви се обадя да ви кажа кога ще е срещата?

Джули: Не помня телефонния номер наизуст, трябва да попитам хазайката.

Веселин: Ето го нашия трамвай! Хайде да се качваме.

### GLOSSARY

мек	soft, mild	разминавам се / размина се	pass each other, blow over
мeтър	meter		
мoрски	sea ( <i>adj.</i> )	свиквам / свикна	get used to, grow accustomed to
мoрското равнище	sea level	софийското поле страна	the plain around Sofia part, side
над	above	хазайка	landlady
от ваша страна	on your part	хапвам / хапна	eat, have a bite
поле	field, plain	чакалня	waiting room
прохладен	cool		
равен	even, flat		
равнище	level, standard, plain		

## GRAMMAR

*The style of this grammar lesson is telegraphic. Its aim is to summarize the essence of Bulgarian grammar, both those elements which have been learned and those which are to come. Brief examples are given after general statements; for fuller descriptions, usage and further examples, the student should consult the relevant grammar sections in preceding lessons.*

*The grammar summary is followed by a section summarizing word order rules, and by sample paradigms of all verbal tenses and moods.*

### 15.1. Review of noun forms

#### Gender

Nouns in Bulgarian are masculine, feminine, or neuter. To a large extent, one can tell the gender from the form of the noun. Most masculine nouns end in a consonant (мъж, дѣн, студѣнт), but some end in -а or -о; these all refer to human beings (баща, колега, дядо). Most feminine nouns end in -а (жена, книга, порция) but a number end in a consonant (нощ, сутрин, младост). Most neuter nouns end in -о or -е (мляко, морѣ) but a few loan words end in -и or -у/-ю (такси, кенгуру, меню). The category "plural" is often listed together with gender in charts of grammatical endings ("masculine/feminine/neuter/plural").

#### Plural

The plural ending for practically all feminine nouns and most masculine nouns is -и. The plural ending for all neuters is [-а]. It is written -я in some instances (общѣжития, цветя, лозя) and is preceded by the sequences -ен- or -ет- in others (времена, момчета). Most masculine monosyllabic nouns have the plural ending -ове (влакове, плодове). A few have -е (мъжѣ), -а (листа, братя), -ища (пѣтища, краища) or -и (дни, зѣби).

#### Definiteness

Nouns are made definite by affixing the definite article. If the noun form ends in -о or -а, the article rhymes with it (сѣлото, дядото; сѣлата, бащата, листа, жената). Otherwise the form of the article is determined by gender.

Feminine nouns take -та. This article is never stressed when it follows a vowel, and always stressed when it follows a consonant (порцията, жената, but сутринта). Neuter nouns take -то (сѣлото, детѣто). Plural nouns take -те (жените, мъжете, влаковете, нощите).

Masculine nouns take -ът (влакът, студѣнтът) unless the final consonant is soft, in which case the article is -ят (лѣкарят, денят). Consonant softness is apparent only before endings beginning in the back vowels -а (definite -- конят, or quantified -- 2 коня) or -о (plural -- огньове). Masculine definite nouns distinguish two cases in the singular, subject (студѣнтът, лѣкарят, часът) and object (студѣнта, лѣкаря, часа). The latter definite article, when stressed, is always pronounced [ъ].



### Quantification

Feminine and neuter nouns are in the plural after numbers or other quantifiers (две кнѝги, две селá, нѝколко нещá). Masculine nouns add the "quantified" ending, which is identical to the definite object form except for a possible difference in accent placement (два́ часа vs. два́ ча́са). Masculine nouns signifying human beings are in the plural after numbers; special numbers are used for 2-6 (два́ма студѝнти, трѝма мъжѝ, but де́вет ле́кари).

### Accent

Feminine nouns almost always keep their accent on the same syllable. Neuter plurals ending in -а are always end stressed; if the singular is stem stressed, the accent will shift (сѝло / селá, мля́ко / млекá but месó / месá). Neuter plurals in -ета or -я do not shift stress. Some masculine nouns shift stress to the article but others do not (ча́с, часѝт but вла́к, вла́кът); similarly, some masculine plurals in -ове stress the ending but others do not (градóвѝ, дъждóвѝ, but блóковѝ, вкúсовѝ). The quantified ending is never accented.

## 15.2. Review of pronoun forms

### Personal pronouns

Subject personal pronouns are stressed (áз, тѝ, тóй). Object personal pronouns are of two types, stressed (also called "long form", мѝне, тѝбе, нѝро) and unstressed (also called "short form"). Short form object pronouns distinguish two cases, direct object (ме, те, го) and indirect object (ми, ти, му). Short form pronouns are clitics and follow strict word order rules. Long forms distinguish "direct object" from "indirect object" by the addition of a preposition (мѝне vs. на мѝне). In certain instances long form and short form pronouns are used together.

The category "short form pronoun" also includes the so-called reflexive particles се and си, which are frequently added to verbs. In possessive constructions, short form indirect object pronouns are either attached to nouns or used adjacent to the copula in predicate constructions. All these short forms are clitics, and obey strict word order rules. A synopsis of these rules is given in section 15.6.

### Demonstrative, interrogative, indefinite, negative and intensive pronouns

Demonstrative (тóзи, óнзи), interrogative (кóй), and descriptive interrogative (какѝв) pronouns change form to agree with the noun which is referred to. If no noun is present the default form for demonstratives and descriptive interrogatives is neuter but for the simple interrogative it is masculine (товá, каквó; but кóй). Interrogative pronouns of both sorts (as well as various adverbs) can be made indefinite or negative by prefixing нѝ- or нѝ- (нѝкой, нѝкакѝв; нѝкой, нѝкакѝв). They can be made relative by the addition of the particle -то, which will be learned in Lesson 17.

The intensifier pronoun сáм changes form to agree with the noun which is referred to (самá, самó, самѝ). There is no default form.

### Possessive pronouns

Possessive pronouns change form to agree with the noun modified (**мо́й, мо́я; тво́й, тво́я; не́гов, не́гова**). They are sometimes called "long form possessives" to differentiate them from the short form indirect object pronouns used to indicate possession. They function as adjectives in that they can affix a definite article if the noun modified is definite (**мо́ят баща́, тво́ята сестра́**). The possessive interrogative **чий** is declined in the same way; the use of its definite form in relative constructions will be learned in Lesson 17.

Both the long form and short form possessives use the so-called "reflexive" form (**сво́й, сво́я; си**) if the identity of "possessor" is equivalent to that of "subject of the sentence".

### 15.3. Review of adjectives

Adjectives agree with the noun modified: the possible endings are masculine (**но́в**), feminine (**но́ва**), neuter (**но́во**) or plural (**но́ви**). Adjectives take definite or indefinite form depending on the definiteness of the noun they modify. When they modify a definite noun, they (and not the noun) carry the definite article marker (**но́вият блóк, но́вата кьща́, но́вото място́, но́вите градове́**). In the case of a definite masculine noun, adjectives also carry the mark which differentiates subject from object (**мла́дият студéнт** [subject] vs. **мла́дия студéнт** [object]). They can also appear in the definite form without a noun, in which case a noun is understood (**мáлките** [деца́]).

Most masculine adjectives end in a consonant in the indefinite form (**но́в, ху́бав**). Some adjectives have **-и** in the masculine indefinite form (**бъ́лгарски, девéти**, etc.). All masculine adjectives have **-и-** before the definite article (**но́вият, ху́бавият** [= **но́в-и-ът, ху́бав-и-ът**]).

### 15.4. Review of numbers

#### Cardinal numbers

The number for 1 doubles as the indefinite article; it has forms for all three genders and the plural (**еди́н, една́, едно́, едни́**). The number 2 has one form for masculine (**два́**) and another for neuter and feminine (**две́**). Other numbers have only a single form (**три́, че́тири, пéт**, etc.). The teens are formed by affixing **-на́йсет** (**двана́йсет, трина́йсет**, etc.) and the decades by adding **-йсет** or **-десéт** (**три́йсет, чети́рийсет, петдесéт**, etc.). Compound numbers are formed by addition, with the conjunction **и** (**два́йсет и три́**).

Variant "personal" numbers exist from 2 to 6 (**два́ма, три́ма**, etc.). They are used when the quantified group includes at least one male person.

All cardinal numbers can take the definite article. The number 1 takes adjectival definite forms (**еди́ният, една́та**, etc.). Numbers ending in **-а** take a rhyming article (**два́та, два́мата**), and all others take **-те**. For numbers 4 and above, this article is accented (**чети́ритé, девéттé, осемдесеттé**). Adding the conjunction **и** focuses on the group as an entirety (**и два́мата, и две́те**).

### Ordinal numbers

The ordinals for 1 and 2 are unrelated to the cardinals (първи, втори), those for 3 and 4 are similar (трети, четвърти), and those from 5 on are formed by adding -и to the cardinal (пети, шести, седми, etc.). In rare instances the ordinal for 1 can appear without the final -и (as in за пръв път). Ordinals take the regular endings for adjectives, including the definite article (първият, първата, etc.)

## 15.5. Review of verbal forms

*Note: summary paradigms of all verbal forms are given in section 15.7.*

### Unity of individual verbs

Every verb is a unit, and can appear in all conjugational forms. The verb is composed of a prefix (such as в-, от-, раз-), a stem (such as -каз-, пис-), one or more suffixes (such as -в-, -ав-, -н-) and an ending. Endings are composed of a theme vowel (such as -е-, -и-) and one of the personal endings (such as -я, -м, -ме). Not every verb form has all these components.

Prefixes can change the meaning of the verb, but they do not change its conjugational forms. Once a verb form is known, all verbs formed from it by prefixation are conjugated in the same manner. A "simplex" verb is a verb without a prefix.

### Aspect

Most verbs exist in two separate forms, one of which carries the added meaning of "boundedness". The verb with the bounded meaning is called perfective, and the one without it is called imperfective. A number of verbs exist only in the imperfective form (съм, имам). Most simplex imperfective verbs can be prefixed and thereby made perfective; when this happens an imperfective verb is created to make an aspect pair (пиша > о-пиша > о-пис-вам); this process is reviewed in Lesson 18. Some verbs are paired from the outset (връщам / върна or ставам / стана); a very few of these pairs can, via prefixation, yield a new aspect pair (о-ставам / о-стана).

Some prefixes carry a predictable meaning, and the system whereby these prefixes create verb "clusters" is known to linguists as *Aktionsarten*. This system is the topic of Lesson 26. The manner in which aspect pervades the Bulgarian verbal system, and its expression in a generalized past form, is the topic of Lesson 29.

### Tense

Verb tenses are simplex or compound. Simplex tenses are expressed in a single word (present, пиша; aorist, писах; imperfect пишех), and compound tenses are composed of auxiliary plus verb form (future, ще остана, няма да остана; past indefinite, останах съм). Compound tenses yet to be learned, and the lesson in which they are to be presented, comprise the past indefinite with transitive verbs (Lesson 16), the past anterior (Lesson 18), and several tenses connected with future forms (future in the past, Lesson 22; future anterior, future anterior in the past -- Lesson 23).

There are three conjugations in the present tense, identified by the three theme vowels (-а-, -и-, -е-). The 1<sup>st</sup> singular present is the dictionary form, and the conjugation type to which each verb belongs is largely predictable from this form.

The form of the aorist tense is only partially predictable from that of the present tense, and it is best to learn the two tenses together. There are nine types which govern the organization of simplex tenses (and, as it happens, of passive participles).

The future tense is formed by prefixing an unchanging particle to the present tense forms. Word order rules concerning clitic pronoun objects are slightly more complex with compound tenses.

### Mood

Verbal mood expresses the attitude of a speaker. Moods are also either simplex or compound. Simplex moods are the indicative and the imperative. The imperative (елá!, пиши́!, ви́ж!) is formed from both perfective and imperfective verbs and has two forms, a singular and a plural (ви́ж/ви́жете, кажи́/каже́те). The indicative covers all the nine tenses summarized above (some of which are simplex in form and others of which are complex).

Complex moods are yet to be learned; these are the renarrated (Lessons 24-25) and the conditional (Lesson 27-28).

### Participles

Participles are both verbal and nominal. They are formed from verbs and carry the idea of the verbal action, but they function like adjectives and change to agree with a particular noun or nominal idea.

Past active participles, also called "L-participles" (минал, дошъл, останал), are used attributively, predicatively, and in the formation of verbal tenses and moods (the past indefinite tense, the past and future anterior tenses, and the renarrated mood). These participles constitute the backbone of the Bulgarian tense-mood system. The aorist L-participle, formed from the aorist stem, is used in the majority of these tenses and moods. The imperfect L-participle, formed from the imperfect stem (Lesson 24), is used in the remainder.

Past passive participles (жéнен, познáт) will be learned in Lesson 17; summary paradigms are given below in 15.7. They are used as adjectives and in the passive verbal constructions which will be learned in Lesson 18.

Present active participles (слéдващ) are used primarily as adjectives; their formation will be learned in Lesson 23. The verbal noun (губене) and the verbal adverb (глéдайки) also express the idea of verbal activity. These unchanging forms will be learned in Lessons 19 and 23, respectively.

## 15.6. Word order rules

Examples of word order rules were given in Lessons 5 through 13. Below is a synopsis of these rules, followed by a list of the abbreviations used in them. The lesson number where the rule was introduced appears in the left margin.

## Rules

- [5] *(x) + DIR + verb*  
*verb + DIR*  
*Cnj. + DIR + verb*  
*Neg. + DIR + verb*  
*verb + INT + DIR*  
*Neg. + DIR + INT + verb*  
*Neg. + verb + INT*
- predicate + COP*  
*Neg. + COP + predicate*  
*predicate + INT + COP*  
*Neg. + COP + INT + predicate*
- [6] *Part. + verb*  
*Part. + DIR + verb*
- [7] *any DIR can be replaced by IND*
- [8] *Fut. + DIR + verb*  
*neg. + Cnj. + DIR + verb*  
*Fut. + verb + INT*  
*Fut. + DIR + verb + INT*  
*neg. + INT + Cnj. + verb*  
*neg. + INT + Cnj. + DIR + verb*  
*neg. + INT + subject + Cnj. + verb*
- Fut. + DIR + verb + Cnj. + DIR + verb*  
*Fut. + verb + INT + Cnj. + DIR + verb*
- [9] *verb + IND + DIR*  
*any IND or DIR can be replaced by IND + DIR sequence*
- [10] *subject + COP + IND + predicate*  
*subject + Neg. + COP + IND + predicate*  
*subject + IND + 3<sup>d</sup>COP + predicate*  
*subject + Neg. + IND + 3<sup>d</sup>COP + predicate*  
*subject + Neg. + COP + INT + IND + predicate*  
*subject + Neg. + INT + IND + 3<sup>d</sup>COP + predicate*
- [11] *direct obj. + (x) + Neg. + DIR + verb*  
*indirect obj. + (x) + Neg. + IND + verb*  
*Neg. + DIR + verb + direct obj.*  
*Neg. + IND + verb + indirect obj.*
- Neg. can be replaced by Fut. or Cnj. in the above*

- [12] *direct obj. + (x) + DIR + verb + subject*  
*direct obj. + Neg. + DIR + verb + subject*  
*direct obj. + verb + INT + DIR + subject*
- [13] *Neg. + IND + INT + DIR + verb*  
*Neg. + IND + INT + 3<sup>d</sup>COP + predicate*  
*Neg. + COP + INT + IND + predicate*

## Abbreviations

### CLITICS

always unstressed  
 cannot stand in initial position  
 must obey strict word order rules

<i>DIR</i>	direct object pronoun	ме те се го я ни ви ги
<i>IND</i>	indirect object pronoun	ми ти си му ѝ ни ви им
<i>INT</i>	interrogative particle	ли
<i>COP</i>	copula/auxiliary except 3 <sup>rd</sup> sg.	съм си сме сте са
<i>3<sup>d</sup>COP</i>	copula/auxiliary 3 <sup>rd</sup> sg.	е

### PARTICLES

unstressed  
 unchanging in form  
 must stand at head of clitic string  
 can be in initial position

<i>Cnj.</i>	subordinating/modal conjunction	да
<i>Neg.</i>	negative particle	не
<i>Fut.</i>	future particle	ще
<i>Part.</i>	hortative particle	я

### WORDS

fully stressed  
 changing in form  
 no normal word order restrictions

<i>(x)</i>	optional stressed word(s)	varied
<i>subject</i>	noun, pronoun	varied
<i>verb</i>	simplex or participle	varied
<i>predicate</i>	noun, adjective, phrase	varied
<i>direct obj.</i>	full form pronoun	мене тебе него нея нас вас тях
<i>indirect obj.</i>	preposition + pronoun	на + above
<i>neg.</i>	negative [+ <i>Cnj.</i> ]	няма

# 15.7. Sample verbal paradigms

## SIMPLEX TENSES

### Present

	a-conjugation		и-conjugation		е-conjugation	
1 <sup>st</sup> singular	глéдам	отвáрям	вiдiя	държá	пiня	четá
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	глéдаш	отвáряш	вiдиш	държiш	пiеш	четéш
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	глéда	отвáря	вiди	държi	пiе	четé
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	глéдаме	отвáряме	вiдим	държiм	пiем	четém
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	глéдате	отвáряте	вiдите	държiте	пiете	четéте
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	глéдат	отвáрят	вiдят	държáт	пiят	четáт

### Aorist

	a-conjugation		и-conjugation		
1 <sup>st</sup> singular	глéдах	отвáрях	нóсiх	вiдiях	държáх
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	глéда	отвáря	нóсн	вiдiя	държá
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	глéда	отвáря	нóсн	вiдiя	държá
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	глéдахме	отвáряхме	нóсiхме	вiдiяхме	държáхме
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	глéдахте	отвáряхте	нóсiхте	вiдiяхте	държáхте
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	глéдаха	отвáряха	нóсiха	вiдiяха	държáха

### e-conjugation

1 <sup>st</sup> singular	пiх	чéтох	върнах	живiях	пiсах	пiрах
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	пi	чéте	върна	живiя	пiса	пiра
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	пi	чéте	върна	живiя	пiса	пiра
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	пiхме	чéтохме	върнахме	живiяхме	пiсахме	пiрахме
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	пiхте	чéтохте	върнахте	живiяхте	пiсахте	пiрахте
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	пiха	чéтоха	върнаха	живiяха	пiсаха	пiраха

### Imperfect

	a-conjugation		и-conjugation		е-conjugation	
1 <sup>st</sup> singular	глéдах	отвáрях	нóсех	държáх	пiшех	четiях
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	глéдаше	отвáряше	нóсеше	държéше	пiшеше	четéше
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	глéдаше	отвáряше	нóсеше	държéше	пiшеше	четéше
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	глéдахме	отвáряхме	нóсехме	държáхме	пiшехме	четiяхме
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	глéдахте	отвáряхте	нóсехте	държáхте	пiшехте	четiяхте
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	глéдаха	отвáряха	нóсеха	държáха	пiшеха	четiяха

All these tenses are negated by placing не before the verb form.



## COMPOUND TENSES

## Future affirmative

	a-conjugation	и-conjugation	e-conjugation
1 <sup>st</sup> singular	ще глѣдам	ще видѣя	ще четѣа
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	ще глѣдаш	ще видиш	ще четѣш
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	ще глѣда	ще види	ще четѣ
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	ще глѣдаме	ще видим	ще четѣм
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	ще глѣдате	ще видите	ще четѣте
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	ще глѣдат	ще видят	ще четѣт

## Future negative

	a-conjugation	и-conjugation	e-conjugation
1 <sup>st</sup> singular	нѣма да глѣдам	нѣма да видѣя	нѣма да четѣа
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	нѣма да глѣдаш	нѣма да видиш	нѣма да четѣш
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	нѣма да глѣда	нѣма да види	нѣма да четѣ
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	нѣма да глѣдаме	нѣма да видим	нѣма да четѣм
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	нѣма да глѣдате	нѣма да видите	нѣма да четѣте
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	нѣма да глѣдат	нѣма да видят	нѣма да четѣт

## Past indefinite affirmative

	a-conjugation	и-conjugation	e-conjugation
1 <sup>st</sup> singular	глѣдал съм	нѣсил съм	видѣял съм
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	глѣдал си	нѣсил си	видѣял си
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	глѣдал е	нѣсил е	видѣял е
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	глѣдали сме	нѣсили сме	видѣли сме
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	глѣдали сте	нѣсили сте	видѣли сте
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	глѣдали са	нѣсили са	видѣли са

## Past indefinite negative

	a-conjugation	и-conjugation	e-conjugation
1 <sup>st</sup> singular	не съм глѣдал	не съм нѣсил	не съм чѣл
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	не си глѣдал	не си нѣсил	не си чѣл
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	не ѣ глѣдал	не ѣ нѣсил	не ѣ чѣл
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	не сме глѣдали	не сме нѣсили	не сме чѣли
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	не сте глѣдали	не сте нѣсили	не сте чѣли
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	не са глѣдали	не са нѣсили	не са чѣли

Singular forms of the participle change according to the gender of the subject; глѣдала съм (не съм глѣдала), нѣсила съм (не съм нѣсила), видѣяла съм (не съм видѣяла), прѣла съм (не съм прѣла), чѣла съм (не съм чѣла), etc. are used if the subject is feminine.



6

## Past anterior

### a-conjugation

### и-conjugation

### е-conjugation

1 <sup>st</sup> singular	бях гледал	бях нѳсил	бях видял	бях чѳл
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	бѳше гледал	бѳше нѳсил	бѳше видял	бѳше чѳл
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	бѳше гледал	бѳше нѳсил	бѳше видял	бѳше чѳл
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	бяхме гледали	бяхме нѳсили	бяхме видѳли	бяхме чѳли
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	бяхте гледали	бяхте нѳсили	бяхте видѳли	бяхте чѳли
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	бяха гледали	бяха нѳсили	бяха видѳли	бяха чѳли

Singular forms of the participle change according to the gender of the subject; бѳх гледала, бѳх нѳсила, бѳх видяла, бѳх чѳла, etc. are used if the subject is feminine. The negative is formed by placing не before the entire form.

7

## Future anterior affirmative

### a-conjugation

### и-conjugation

### е-conjugation

1 <sup>st</sup> singular	ще сѳм гледал	ще сѳм нѳсил	ще сѳм чѳл
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	ще си гледал	ще си нѳсил	ще си чѳл
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	ще е гледал	ще е нѳсил	ще е чѳл
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	ще сме гледали	ще сме нѳсили	ще сме чѳли
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	ще сте гледали	ще сте нѳсили	ще сте чѳли
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	ще са гледали	ще са нѳсили	ще са чѳли

## Future anterior negative

### a-conjugation

### и-conjugation

### е-conjugation

1 <sup>st</sup> singular	няма да сѳм гледал	няма да сѳм нѳсил	няма да сѳм чѳл
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	няма да си гледал	няма да си нѳсил	няма да си чѳл
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	няма да е гледал	няма да е нѳсил	няма да е чѳл
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	няма да сме гледали	няма да сме нѳсили	няма да сме чѳли
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	няма да сте гледали	няма да сте нѳсили	няма да сте чѳли
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	няма да са гледали	няма да са нѳсили	няма да са чѳли

Singular forms of the participle change according to the gender of the subject; ще (няма да) сѳм гледала, ще (няма да) сѳм нѳсила, ще (няма да) сѳм чѳла, etc. are used if the subject is feminine.

8

## Future in the past affirmative

### a-conjugation

### и-conjugation

### е-conjugation

1 <sup>st</sup> singular	щѳх да гледам	щѳх да нѳся	щѳх да четѳ
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	щѳше да гледаш	щѳше да нѳсиш	щѳше да четѳш
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	щѳше да гледа	щѳше да нѳси	щѳше да четѳ
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	щѳхме да гледаме	щѳхме да нѳсим	щѳхме да четѳм
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	щѳхте да гледате	щѳхте да нѳсите	щѳхте да четѳте
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	щѳха да гледат	щѳха да нѳсят	щѳха да четѳт

**Future in the past negative**

	<i>a-conjugation</i>	<i>и-conjugation</i>	<i>e-conjugation</i>
<i>1<sup>st</sup> singular</i>	нямаше да гледам	нямаше да нoся	нямаше да четá
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> singular</i>	нямаше да гледаш	нямаше да нoсиш	нямаше да четéш
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> singular</i>	нямаше да гледа	нямаше да нoси	нямаше да четé
<i>1<sup>st</sup> plural</i>	нямаше да гледаме	нямаше да нoсим	нямаше да четém
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> plural</i>	нямаше да гледате	нямаше да нoсите	нямаше да четéте
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> plural</i>	нямаше да гледат	нямаше да нoсят	нямаше да четát

**9 Future anterior in the past affirmative**

	<i>a-conjugation</i>	<i>и-conjugation</i>	<i>e-conjugation</i>
<i>1<sup>st</sup> singular</i>	щя́х да сѣм глeдал	щя́х да сѣм нoсил	щя́х да сѣм чeл
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> singular</i>	щeше да си глeдал	щeше да си нoсил	щeше да си чeл
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> singular</i>	щeше да e глeдал	щeше да e нoсил	щeше да e чeл
<i>1<sup>st</sup> plural</i>	щя́хмe да смe глeдали	щя́хмe да смe нoсили	щя́хмe да смe чeли
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> plural</i>	щя́хтe да стe глeдали	щя́хтe да стe нoсили	щя́хтe да стe чeли
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> plural</i>	щя́хa да ca глeдали	щя́хa да ca нoсили	щя́хa да ca чeли

**Future anterior in the past negative**

	<i>и-conjugation</i>	<i>e-conjugation</i>
<i>1<sup>st</sup> singular</i>	нямаше да сѣм нoсил	нямаше да сѣм чeл
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> singular</i>	нямаше да си нoсил	нямаше да си чeл
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> singular</i>	нямаше да e нoсил	нямаше да e чeл
<i>1<sup>st</sup> plural</i>	нямаше да смe нoсили	нямаше да смe чeли
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> plural</i>	нямаше да стe нoсили	нямаше да стe чeли
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> plural</i>	нямаше да ca нoсили	нямаше да ca чeли

Singular forms of the participle change according to the gender of the subject; щя́х/нямаше да сѣм нoсила, щя́х/нямаше да сѣм чeла, etc. are used if the subject is feminine.

**MOODS**

**Indicative:** all the paradigms given above.

**40 Imperative**

	<i>type 1</i>		<i>type 2</i>		<i>irregular</i>	
<i>singular</i>	чети́	носи́	гледай	брой	ви́ж	влéз
<i>plural</i>	четéте	носéте	гледайте	бройте	ви́жете	влéзте

11 **Conditional**

**a-conjugation**

**и-conjugation**

**е-conjugation**

1 <sup>st</sup> singular	бѣх глѣдал	бѣх нѣсил	бѣх видѣл	бѣх чѣл
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	бѣ глѣдал	бѣ нѣсил	бѣ видѣл	бѣ чѣл
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	бѣ глѣдал	бѣ нѣсил	бѣ видѣл	бѣ чѣл
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	бѣхмѣ глѣдали	бѣхмѣ нѣсили	бѣхмѣ видѣли	бѣхмѣ чѣли
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	бѣхтѣ глѣдали	бѣхтѣ нѣсили	бѣхтѣ видѣли	бѣхтѣ чѣли
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	бѣхѣ глѣдали	бѣхѣ нѣсили	бѣхѣ видѣли	бѣхѣ чѣли

Singular forms of the participle change according to the gender of the subject; бѣх глѣдала, бѣх нѣсила, бѣх видѣла, бѣх чѣла, etc. are used if the subject is feminine. The negative is formed by placing не before the entire form.

12 **Renarrated**

The form of the renarrated mood depends on the tense which is being renarrated.

**Present/imperfect affirmative renarrated**

**a-conjugation**

**и-conjugation**

**е-conjugation**

1 <sup>st</sup> singular	глѣдал сѣм	нѣсел сѣм	четѣл сѣм
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	глѣдал си	нѣсел си	четѣл си
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	глѣдал	нѣсел	четѣл
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	глѣдали смѣ	нѣсели смѣ	четѣли смѣ
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	глѣдали стѣ	нѣсели стѣ	четѣли стѣ
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	глѣдали	нѣсели	четѣли

**Present/imperfect negative renarrated**

**a-conjugation**

**и-conjugation**

**е-conjugation**

1 <sup>st</sup> singular	не сѣм глѣдал	не сѣм нѣсел	не сѣм четѣл
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	не си глѣдал	не си нѣсел	не си четѣл
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	не глѣдал	не нѣсел	не четѣл
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	не смѣ глѣдали	не смѣ нѣсели	не смѣ четѣли
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	не стѣ глѣдали	не стѣ нѣсели	не стѣ четѣли
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	не глѣдали	не нѣсели	не четѣли

Singular forms of the participle change according to the gender of the subject; глѣдала сѣм (не сѣм глѣдала), нѣсела сѣм (не сѣм нѣсела), четѣла сѣм (не сѣм четѣла), etc. are used if the subject is feminine.

### Future/future in the past affirmative renarrated

	<i>a-conjugation</i>	<i>и-conjugation</i>	<i>e-conjugation</i>
<i>1<sup>st</sup> singular</i>	щя́л съм да глѣдам	щя́л съм да нѡся	щя́л съм да четá
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> singular</i>	щя́л си да глѣдаш	щя́л си да нѡсиш	щя́л си да четéш
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> singular</i>	щя́л да глѣда	щя́л да нѡси	щя́л да четé
<i>1<sup>st</sup> plural</i>	щѣли сме да глѣдаме	щѣли сме да нѡсим	щѣли сме да четém
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> plural</i>	щѣли сте да глѣдате	щѣли сте да нѡсите	щѣли сте да четéте
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> plural</i>	щѣли да глѣдат	щѣли да нѡсят	щѣли да четáт

Singular forms of the participle change according to the gender of the subject; щя́ла съм да глѣдам, щя́ла съм да нѡся, щя́ла съм да четá, etc. are used if the subject is feminine.

### Future/future in the past negative renarrated

	<i>a-conjugation</i>	<i>и-conjugation</i>	<i>e-conjugation</i>
<i>1<sup>st</sup> singular</i>	ня́мало да глѣдам	ня́мало да нѡся	ня́мало да четá
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> singular</i>	ня́мало да глѣдаш	ня́мало да нѡсиш	ня́мало да четéш
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> singular</i>	ня́мало да глѣда	ня́мало да нѡси	ня́мало да четé
<i>1<sup>st</sup> plural</i>	ня́мало да глѣдаме	ня́мало да нѡсим	ня́мало да четém
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> plural</i>	ня́мало да глѣдате	ня́мало да нѡсите	ня́мало да четéте
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> plural</i>	ня́мало да глѣдат	ня́мало да нѡсят	ня́мало да четáт

### Future anterior/future anterior in the past affirmative renarrated

	<i>и-conjugation</i>	<i>e-conjugation</i>
<i>1<sup>st</sup> singular</i>	щя́л съм да съм нѡсил	щя́л съм да съм чѣл
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> singular</i>	щя́л си да си нѡсил	щя́л си да си чѣл
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> singular</i>	щя́л да е нѡсил	щя́л да е чѣл
<i>1<sup>st</sup> plural</i>	щѣли сме да сме нѡсили	щѣли сме да сме чѣли
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> plural</i>	щѣли сте да сте нѡсили	щѣли сте да сте чѣли
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> plural</i>	щѣли да са нѡсили	щѣли да са чѣли

### Future anterior/future anterior in the past negative renarrated

	<i>и-conjugation</i>	<i>e-conjugation</i>
<i>1<sup>st</sup> singular</i>	ня́мало да съм нѡсил	ня́мало да съм чѣл
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> singular</i>	ня́мало да си нѡсил	ня́мало да си чѣл
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> singular</i>	ня́мало да е нѡсил	ня́мало да е чѣл
<i>1<sup>st</sup> plural</i>	ня́мало да сме нѡсили	ня́мало да сме чѣли
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> plural</i>	ня́мало да сте нѡсили	ня́мало да сте чѣли
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> plural</i>	ня́мало да са нѡсили	ня́мало да са чѣли

Singular forms of the participle change according to the gender of the subject; щя́ла съм да съм глѣдала (ня́мало да съм глѣдала), щя́ла съм да съм нѡсила (ня́мало да съм нѡсила), щя́ла съм да съм чѣла (ня́мало да съм чѣла), etc. are used if the subject is feminine.

15 Past indefinite/past anterior affirmative renarrated

	a-conjugation	и-conjugation	e-conjugation
1 <sup>st</sup> singular	бѣл сѣм глѣдал	бѣл сѣм нѣсил	бѣл сѣм чѣл
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	бѣл си глѣдал	бѣл си нѣсил	бѣл си чѣл
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	бѣл глѣдал	бѣл нѣсил	бѣл чѣл
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	бѣли сѣм глѣдали	бѣли сѣм нѣсили	бѣли сѣм чѣли
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	бѣли сте глѣдали	бѣли сте нѣсили	бѣли сте чѣли
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	бѣли глѣдали	бѣли нѣсили	бѣли чѣли

Past indefinite/past anterior negative renarrated

	a-conjugation	и-conjugation	e-conjugation
1 <sup>st</sup> singular	не сѣм бѣл глѣдал	не сѣм бѣл нѣсил	не сѣм бѣл чѣл
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	не си бѣл глѣдал	не си бѣл нѣсил	не си бѣл чѣл
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	не бѣл глѣдал	не бѣл нѣсил	не бѣл чѣл
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	не сѣм бѣли глѣдали	не сѣм бѣли нѣсили	не сѣм бѣли чѣли
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	не стѣ бѣли глѣдали	не стѣ бѣли нѣсили	не стѣ бѣли чѣли
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	не бѣли глѣдали	не бѣли нѣсили	не бѣли чѣли

Singular forms of the participle change according to the gender of the subject; бѣла сѣм глѣдала (не сѣм бѣла глѣдала), бѣла сѣм нѣсила (не сѣм бѣла нѣсила), бѣла сѣм чѣла (не сѣм бѣла чѣла), etc. are used if the subject is feminine.

16 Aorist affirmative renarrated

	a-conjugation	и-conjugation	e-conjugation
1 <sup>st</sup> singular	глѣдал сѣм	нѣсил сѣм видѣл сѣм	прѣл сѣм чѣл сѣм
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	глѣдал си	нѣсил си видѣл си	прѣл си чѣл си
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	глѣдал	нѣсил видѣл	прѣл чѣл
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	глѣдали сѣм	нѣсили сѣм видѣли сѣм	прѣли сѣм чѣли сѣм
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	глѣдали сте	нѣсили сте видѣли сте	прѣли сте чѣли сте
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	глѣдали	нѣсили видѣли	прѣли чѣли

Aorist negative renarrated

	a-conjugation	и-conjugation	e-conjugation
1 <sup>st</sup> singular	не сѣм глѣдал	не сѣм нѣсил	не сѣм чѣл
2 <sup>nd</sup> singular	не си глѣдал	не си нѣсил	не си чѣл
3 <sup>rd</sup> singular	не глѣдал	не нѣсил	не чѣл
1 <sup>st</sup> plural	не сѣм глѣдали	не сѣм нѣсили	не сѣм чѣли
2 <sup>nd</sup> plural	не стѣ глѣдали	не стѣ нѣсили	не стѣ чѣли
3 <sup>rd</sup> plural	не глѣдали	не нѣсили	не чѣли

Singular forms of the participle change according to the gender of the subject; глѣдала сѣм (не сѣм глѣдала), нѣсила сѣм (не сѣм нѣсила), видѣла сѣм (не сѣм видѣла), прѣла сѣм (не сѣм прѣла), чѣла сѣм (не сѣм чѣла), etc. are used if the subject is feminine.

## TENSE / MOOD neutralization

### Generalized past (perfective)

	<i>a-conjugation</i>	<i>и-conjugation</i>	<i>e-conjugation</i>
<i>1<sup>st</sup> singular</i>	гледал съм	носил съм	чёл съм
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> singular</i>	гледал си	носил си	чёл си
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> singular</i>	гледал е	носил е	чёл е
<i>1<sup>st</sup> plural</i>	гледали сме	носили сме	чели сме
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> plural</i>	гледали сте	носили сте	чели сте
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> plural</i>	гледали са	носили са	чели са

### Generalized past (imperfective)

	<i>a-conjugation</i>	<i>и-conjugation</i>	<i>e-conjugation</i>
<i>1<sup>st</sup> singular</i>	гледал съм	носел съм	четял съм
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> singular</i>	гледал си	носел си	четял си
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> singular</i>	гледал е	носел е	четял е
<i>1<sup>st</sup> plural</i>	гледали сме	носели сме	четели сме
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> plural</i>	гледали сте	носели сте	четели сте
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> plural</i>	гледали са	носели са	четели са

Singular forms of the participle change according to the gender of the subject; гледала съм (не съм гледала), носила/носела съм (не съм носила/носела), чела/четяла съм (не съм чела/четяла), etc. are used if the subject is feminine.

## PARTICIPLES AND OTHER FORMS

### Past active participle - aorist stem

	<i>a-conjugation</i>			<i>и-conjugation</i>		
<i>masc. singular</i>	гледал	отварял		носил	видял	държал
<i>fem. singular</i>	гледала	отваряла		носила	видяла	държала
<i>neut. singular</i>	гледало	отваряло		носило	видяло	държало
<i>plural</i>	гледали	отваряли		носили	видели	държали

### *e-conjugation*

<i>masc. singular</i>	пíл	чёл	върнал	живял	писал	пíрал
<i>fem. singular</i>	пíла	чела	върнала	живяла	писала	пíрала
<i>neut. singular</i>	пíло	чело	върнало	живяло	писало	пíрало
<i>plural</i>	пíли	чели	върнали	живели	писали	пíрали

18 Past active participle - imperfect stem

		a-conjugation		и-conjugation		е-conjugation	
218'0	masc. singular	гледал	отв́арял	но́сел	държа́л	пи́шел	четя́л
23	fem. singular	гледала	отв́аряла	но́села	държа́ла	пи́шела	четя́ла
	neut. singular	гледало	отв́аряло	но́село	държа́ло	пи́шело	четя́ло
	plural	гледали	отв́аряли	но́сели	държе́ли	пи́шели	чете́ли

19 Past passive participle

		a-conjugation		и-conjugation		
218'0	masc. singular	гле́дан	отв́арян	но́сен	же́нен	държа́н
23, 19	fem. singular	гле́дана	отв́аряна	но́сена	же́нена	държа́на
	neut. singular	гле́дано	отв́аряно	но́сено	же́нено	държа́но
	plural	гле́дани	отв́аряни	но́сени	же́нени	държа́ни

		е-conjugation				
	masc. singular	пи́т	че́тен	в́рнат	взе́т	пи́сан
	fem. singular	пи́та	че́тена	в́рната	взе́та	пи́сана
	neut. singular	пи́то	че́тено	в́рнато	взе́то	пи́сано
	plural	пи́ти	че́тени	в́рнати	взе́ти	пи́сани

20 Present active participle

		a-conjugation	и-conjugation	е-conjugation
218'0	masc. singular	сле́дващ	но́сещ	пи́шещ
23	fem. singular	сле́дваща	но́сеща	пи́шеща
	neut. singular	сле́дващо	но́сещо	пи́шещо
	plural	сле́дващи	но́сещи	пи́шещи

Verbal adverb

a-conjugation	и-conjugation	е-conjugation
гле́дайки	носе́йки	чете́йки

22 Verbal noun

a-conjugation	и-conjugation	е-conjugation
гле́дане	но́сене	че́тене пи́сана





## CUMULATIVE GLOSSARY

(PART 1)

### Bulgarian - English

1823

The following glossary contains all the Bulgarian words used in the first fifteen lessons of *Intensive Bulgarian*. Each entry is indexed to the lesson where the word or phrase first appeared. Most idioms or phrases are fully cross-referenced; for instance, the phrase *има́м ну́жда от* "need, have need of" is glossed under *има́м*, *ну́жда* and *от*.

All entries are accented. Accentual doublets are given where they are mentioned in all major dictionaries (such as *че́ло* or *чело́*); other accentual variants are not noted. Accepted accentual variations in the aorist and L-participle of unprefixing verbs are not noted, either in glossaries or in textual usage. Stress shifts onto the masculine definite article are noted: *ди́м*, *-ѐт*.

Plural forms for nouns are given only when not predictable from grammar rules presented in the lessons. Thus, only plural forms in *-ове* where either ending syllable is stressed, plurals in *-я* of masculine monosyllables, feminine plural forms with shifted stress, or unpredictable neuter plural forms are specifically noted. Gender is noted only when not predictable: feminine nouns in a consonant other than in *-ост* are given with the article (*вече́р*, *-та́*) and neuter nouns ending in other than *-о* or *-е* are given with the gender specified: *меню́* (*neuter*).

Adjectives are given in the masculine singular indefinite form. The absence of a fleeting vowel is noted only when it is not predictable from rules presented in the lessons (thus *червѐн*, but *вѐлнен*, *-ена*). In the case of shifting vowels in the root (as in *вѐрен*, *вѐрна* or *ря́дък*, *ре́дки*), the non-masculine form is cross-referenced to the main entry.

Simplex imperfectives are given a single entry; all other verbs are given as aspect pairs with the imperfective listed first. All verbs are given in the standard 1<sup>st</sup> singular present form. The conjugation class of verbs whose stems end in *-ш*, *-ч* or *-ж*, or which is not predictable from the citation form, is noted: *пи́ша* (*-еш*), *пу́ша* (*-иш*), *кѐпя* (*-еш*).

English glosses are given as simply as possible; for a larger range of meanings, the full Bulgarian-English dictionary (the source taken as standard for this glossary listing) should be consulted. When the English noun and adjective forms are homonymous, the notation *adj.* or an explanatory note such as [person] is added. Grammatical information such as *interrogative* or *relative conjunction* has been given in the relevant instances.

This glossary list consolidates and reproduces the fifteen separate glossary listings given at the end of each of the lessons. The form is slightly different, in that idioms and phrases are listed here under each of their major components (as opposed to alphabetically according to the first element in the phrase, as in the lessons). A somewhat fuller listing is given herein: certain definitions are more detailed, and certain phrases are given here which were omitted from the lesson glossaries.





## Българо-английски речник

а [1] and  
 абонирам [11] subscribe  
 август [5] August  
 автентичен [13] authentic  
 автобус [2] bus  
 автограф [13] autograph  
 авторски [12] author's ; авторско право [12] copyright  
 адвокат (ка) [2] lawyer  
 адрес [9] address  
 аеробика [8] aerobics  
 аз [1] I ; аз се казвам my name is  
 ако [4] if ; ако обичате [4] if you please  
 актьор [14] actor  
 албум [9] album, picture-book  
 алкохол [2] alcohol  
 ало [12] hello (on the phone)  
 ама [12] but  
 американец [3] American (male)  
 американка [3] American (female)  
 американски [8] American (adj.)  
 ами [7] but, well  
 английски [2] English (language)  
 англичанин [3] Englishman, English person  
 англичанка [3] Englishwoman  
 апарат [5] [piece of] apparatus, equipment  
 апартамент [8] apartment  
 апетит [9] appetite  
 април [9] April  
 апропо [13] apropos, by the way  
 арабски [11] Arab (adj.)  
 ароматен [10] aromatic  
 армия [12] army  
 археолог [3] archaeologist  
 архитектура [7] architecture  
 асансьор [11] elevator  
 аспирин [12] aspirin  
 атмосфера [3] atmosphere  
 аха [5] aha

баба [8] grandmother  
 Баба Мърта [11] Granny March (harbinger of spring)  
 бавен [3] slow  
 багаж [2] baggage, luggage  
 бай [1] uncle, old man (term of address)  
 балкон [13] balcony  
 баница [10] banitsa (baked pastry) ; баница с късмети [10] banitsa filled with fortunes  
 банкет [14] banquet  
 бански [13] bathing; swimming suit ; по бански [13] wearing swimsuits  
 баня [3] bath, bathroom

барок [10] Baroque  
 бароков [9] baroque (adj.)  
 баща [8] father  
 бе [6] (vocative particle) ; как се казваш бе? [6] what's your name, fella?  
 бедрó [12] thigh  
 без [6] without ; пет без десет [6] ten to five (4:50)  
 без да [14] without (relative conjunction)  
 безмѣсен [7] vegetarian (i.e. without meat)  
 белѣжа (-иш) [7] mark  
 белѣжка [7] note; remark  
 белѣжник [7] notebook, notepad  
 бѣли [2] see бял  
 берá [12] pick, gather  
 бѣше [6] was (2nd, 3rd singular)  
 библиотѣка [5] library  
 билѣт [11] ticket  
 бѣра [4] beer  
 благодарност [9] thanks, gratitude ; ден на благодарността [9] Thanksgiving Day  
 благодаря [10] thank, pay gratitude  
 благодаря [2] thank you  
 блѣд [11] pale  
 близък [10] close (adj.) ; близки са [10] they are very close friends  
 блóк [8] apartment building  
 бóб [10] beans  
 бóг [9] god, God ; слава Бóгу [9] thank God ; Бóже [9] oh God, oh my God  
 богáт [7] rich  
 бóдър [13] lively, cheerful  
 Бóже see бог  
 боклук [14] rubbish, garbage  
 боледувам [10] be ill  
 бóлен [2] sick, ill ; бóлен от грип [13] down with the flu  
 боли (3rd person only) [12] hurt ; боли ме главáта [12] I have a headache ; болят ме очите [12] my eyes hurt ; болѣше [13] was hurting  
 бóлка [12] pain  
 бóлница [6] hospital  
 бонбóн [10] candy  
 бóс [13] barefoot ; ходя бóс [13] go barefoot  
 ботанически [13] botanical ; ботаническа градина [13] botanical garden  
 боя [10] paint  
 боя се [8] fear ; не сѣ бóй [8] don't be afraid  
 бояджия, -ийка [10] house painter; paint or dye merchant  
 боядисвам [10] paint, color; dye

браво [10] bravo  
 брада (also брадичка) [12] chin  
 брада [12] beard; chin  
 брак [10] marriage  
 брат (plural братя) [8] brother  
 братовчед (ка) [2] cousin  
 бридж [14] bridge (card game)  
 броя [3] count  
 БСП (pron. бѐсепе) [14] BSP (Bulgarian Socialist Party)  
 буза [12] cheek  
 буква [8] letter (of alphabet); четá до последната буква [8] read every last word  
 булка [10] bride  
 буркан [6] jar, can  
 бутам [6] push, shove  
 бѹда [7] be  
 бѹдещ [9] future (adj.); бѹдеще време [9] future tense  
 Бѹдни вѹчер [10] Christmas Eve  
 бѹлгарин [3] Bulgarian (male)  
 бѹлгарка [3] Bulgarian (female)  
 бѹлгарски [1] Bulgarian; Bulgarian language  
 бѹлгарче [13] young Bulgarian  
 бѹрз [6] fast, quick; urgent; става бѹрзо [6] it's quick, it goes quickly  
 бѹрзам [4] hurry, be in a hurry  
 бѹрша (-еш) [13] wipe, rub  
 бял, бѹли [2] white; бял дроб [12] lung (see also дроб)  
 бях [6] was (1st singular)  
 бяха [6] were (3rd plural)  
 бяхме [6] were (1st plural)  
 бяхте [6] were (2nd plural)

в [1] [6] in, into, on, at  
 вагон [6] wagon, car  
 важен [8] important  
 ваканция [6] vacation  
 вали (3rd person only) [12] rain, etc. (precipitation); вали (дѹжд) [12] it's raining; вали сняг [12] it's snowing; вали град [12] it's hailing; валият силни дѹждове [12] it's raining heavily; вали като из ведро [12] it's raining buckets  
 варя [3] boil, cook  
 вас [10] you (plural/polite; direct object pronoun)  
 ваш [8] your, yours (plural/polite)  
 вдигам / вдигна [6] raise, lift; вдигам шум [6] make noise  
 вдясно [11] on the right  
 вегетериáнец [3] vegetarian (male)

вегетериáнка [3] vegetarian (female)  
 веднага [4] immediately, at once  
 веднѹж [7] once  
 ведро [12] bucket; вали като из ведро [12] it's raining buckets  
 вежда [12] eyebrow  
 век, -ѹт (plural векове) [12] century  
 велосипѹд [14] bicycle  
 верен, вѹрна [10] true, faithful; вѹрно е, че [10] it's true that  
 весел [9] happy, gay, lively  
 вѹстник [6] newspaper  
 ветровѹ see вѹтър  
 вече [3] already, by now  
 вѹчер, -та [9] evening; добѹр вѹчер [9] good evening (fixed phrase); вѹчер, вѹчерта [9] in the evening; тази вѹчер [9] this evening; ѹтре вѹчер [9] tomorrow evening  
 вѹчерен [9] evening (adj.)  
 вѹчерям [9] eat dinner  
 взѹмам (or взѹмам) / взѹма [4] take; begin, take to; вземѹ моливите! [4] pick up the pencils!; взѹмам си довиждане [13] make one's farewells  
 ви [5] you (plural/polite, direct object pronoun)  
 ви [7] (to) you (plural/polite, indirect object pronoun)  
 вид, -ѹт [12] aspect, view, appearance; (не)свършен вид [12] (im)perfective aspect  
 видеокамера [5] videocamera  
 видеокасета [12] video cassette  
 виѹ [1] you (plural/polite subject pronoun)  
 виждам / виѹя [3] [4] see; виѹж каквѹ [12] look, well (topic focuser in conversation)  
 византиѹски [8] Byzantine  
 викам [12] shout, yell; викам на воля [12] shout to one's heart's content  
 вила [10] pitchfork  
 вилица [10] fork  
 винаги [4] always  
 вино [2] wine  
 висок [5] tall, high; elevated; loud  
 виц [12] joke; разпѹвам виц [12] tell a joke  
 вкарвам / вкарам [12] push in, drive in; вкарвам гол [12] score [a goal]  
 включвам / включа (-иш) [14] include  
 вкус, -ѹт [7] taste; по вкуса на всеки човек [7] to everyone's taste  
 вкусен [6] tasty, delicious  
 вкъщи [6] home, at home  
 влак [2] train; пътувам с влак [2] travel by train  
 влизам / вляза [4] enter, go in

# Българо-английски речник

влюбен [14] in love  
 вляво [11] on the left  
 внимавам [6] pay attention ;  
 внимавайте, бутате човека [6]  
 careful, you're pushing someone  
 внимание [14] attention ; вниманието  
 му се притъпи [14] his attention  
 wandered  
 внимателен [14] attentive  
 внук [10] grandson  
 внучка [10] granddaughter  
 вода [4] water  
 вода [8] lead, take  
 война [7] war  
 войник [7] soldier  
 воля [12] will, desire ; викам на воля  
 [12] shout to one's heart's content  
 врат [12] back of the neck  
 врата [2] door  
 вратовръзка [13] necktie  
 време (plural времена) [2] [9] time ;  
 weather; season ; времето е топло [2]  
 the weather is warm ; в последно  
 време [6] recently ; по това време  
 [7] at about that time ; годишните  
 времена [9] seasons (of the year) ;  
 доброто старо време [11] the good  
 old days ; от време на време [14]  
 from time to time  
 време [9] verbal tense ; сегашно време  
 [9] present tense ; бъдеще време [9]  
 future tense ; минало свършено време  
 [12] aorist tense ; минало  
 несвършено време [14] imperfect  
 tense  
 връзка [13] tie, string, shoelace  
 връх, върхът (plural върхове) [11]  
 summit; tip  
 връщам / върна [5] return (transitive)  
 връщам се / върна се [11] return, go  
 back  
 вря [9] boil (intransitive)  
 все [10] always, constantly; surely ; все  
 ме няма [10] I'm never there ; все  
 още избирам [10] I'm still looking ;  
 все едно и също [10] [it's] always the  
 same thing  
 всеки, всяка, всяко [6] every ; всеки  
 момент [6] any minute ; на всяка  
 цена [12] at any price, at all costs,  
 absolutely  
 всичко [2] all, everything ; всичко шест  
 [6] six in all ; всичко хубаво [2]  
 all the best  
 втори [8] second ; втора майка [10]  
 stepmother ; втори баща [10]  
 stepfather  
 вторник [9] Tuesday

вуйчо (plural вуйчовци) [10] uncle  
 (mother's brother)  
 вход [8] entrance  
 вчера [9] yesterday ; вчера следобед  
 [9] yesterday afternoon ; вчера  
 сутринта [9] yesterday morning  
 вчерашен [9] yesterday's  
 във = в [7] in, into, on, at  
 въздух [4] air  
 възрастен [4] adult; elderly  
 възрастни [4] grownups  
 възторг [10] delight, rapture ;  
 предизвиквам възторг у [10]  
 enrapture  
 вълк (plural вълци) [8] wolf  
 вълнен, -ена [13] wool (adj.), woolen  
 вълшебник [11] magician, wizard  
 вън [11] out  
 въобще [11] in general; at all  
 въпрос [11] question  
 вървя [3] walk, move, go ; вървя с  
 [10] go well with ; вървя си [10]  
 get going ; вървя под ръка [14]  
 walk arm in arm ; днес няма да ми  
 вървя [14] today's not going to be my  
 day  
 въртя се [14] turn around, rotate; move  
 вътре [11] in, inside  
 вярвам [7] believe  
 вярно see верен  
 вятър (plural ветрове) [2] [7] wind ;  
 има силен вятър [2] there's a strong  
 wind, it's very windy

г. = година [9]  
 гара [5] station (train or bus)  
 гарнитюра [4] garnish ; пържолата с  
 гарнитюра [4] steak with the  
 trimmings  
 ГДР (pron. гедерé) [14] GDR (DDR;  
 former East Germany)  
 гердан [14] necklace, collar  
 германски [14] German  
 ги [5] them (direct object pronoun)  
 гимназия [3] academically oriented high  
 school  
 глава [12] head  
 главен [9] main, chief  
 главно [9] mainly  
 глад [7] hunger  
 гладен [2] hungry  
 глас, -ът (plural гласове) [12] voice  
 гледам [4] [9] look at; look after  
 глезен [12] ankle  
 глътвам / глътна [7] (take a) swallow  
 глътка [3] swallow, gulp

гнездó [13] nest  
 гнýс ме е [12] feel nauseated  
 го [5] him, it (*direct object pronoun*)  
 говóря [3] speak, talk  
 годенíк [10] fiancé  
 годенíца [10] fiancée  
 годíна [3] year; през 1975 г. [9] in 1975  
 годишeн [9] yearly, annual; годишните  
 временá [9] seasons (of the year)  
 годишнина [10] anniversary  
 гóзба [5] dish  
 гóл [12] goal (in sports); вкáрвам гóл  
 [12] score [a goal]; изпýскам гóл  
 [12] miss [a goal]  
 голя́м, голéми [2] large, big; голéмите  
 [4] big ones, adults; голя́мо  
 дви́жение [12] lots of traffic  
 горá [3] woods, forest  
 гóре [11] up; гóре-дóлу [11] more or  
 less  
 горéщ [11] hot  
 горя́ [11] burn  
 господá [3] gentlemen; дáми и господá  
 [3] ladies and gentlemen (*vocative*)  
 господíн [1] Sir, Mr.  
 госпожá (*plural* госпóжи) [1] Ma'am,  
 Mrs.  
 госпóжица [1] Miss  
 гóст (*plural* гóсти) [5] [8] guest; идвам  
 на гóсти [5] come/go over to visit  
 готвáрски [7] cooking, culinary;  
 готвáрска кнíга [7] cookbook  
 гóтвя [4] prepare, cook  
 гóтвя се [9] prepare, get ready  
 готóв [6] prepared, ready  
 гра́д [12] hail  
 гра́д, -éт (*plural* градовé) [6] [7] town,  
 city  
 гради́на [3] garden  
 грешá (-иш) [7] sin, err  
 грешка [3] mistake  
 грéя [9] warm, heat (up); shine;  
 слъ́нцето грéе [9] the sun is shining  
 грип [13] influenza, flu; бóлен от грип  
 [13] down with the flu  
 грóзде [9] grapes (*collective*)  
 грóздов [2] [made] of grapes  
 грéб, грéбът (*plural* грéбовé) [12] back  
 грéд, -тá (*or* гърдй) [12] chest  
 грéк, грéкът (*plural* грéци) [6] Greek  
 (male)  
 гýбя [14] lose  
 гýша [12] neck, throat  
 гýба [4] mushroom; омлét с гýби [4]  
 mushroom omelet

гýлтам [8] swallow; гýлтам лекáрство  
 [8] take medicine  
 гърдá [12] breast, bosom  
 гýрло [12] throat  
 гýрци *see* грéк

97

да [5] (*subordinating/modal conjunction*);  
 íскам да дóйда [5] I want to come;  
 не мóга да дóйда [5] I can't come;  
 ако и да [9] even though; да сте  
 жíви и здрáви [11] here's to your life  
 and health; и тóй да дóйде [13] he  
 should come too  
 дá [1] yes  
 дáвам / дáм (дадéш) [9] give; allow;  
 дáй, дáйте [4] give (*imperative*);  
 дáвам под нáем [12] rent out;  
 дáвам на зáем [12] loan  
 дáже [11] even  
 дáй *see* дáвам  
 далéче (and далéч) [4] far, far away  
 дали́ [11] whether, if (*relative/question  
 particle*); дали́ íма смýсл? [11]  
 does it make any sense?; не знáя дали́  
 íма смýсл [11] I don't know whether  
 it makes any sense  
 дáма [3] lady; дáми и господá [3]  
 ladies and gentlemen (*vocative*)  
 данó [10] let's wish, if only, I hope;  
 данó пристíгне наврéме [10] let's  
 hope it gets there on time  
 двá [6] two (*masculine*)  
 двáйсет [6] twenty  
 двáма [6] two (*masculine animate*)  
 дванáйсет [6] twelve  
 двé [2] [6] two (*feminine, neuter; in  
 counting*)  
 двéста [9] two hundred  
 двíжа се (-иш) [14] move, go  
 дви́жение [12] movement; traffic;  
 голя́мо дви́жение [12] lots of  
 traffic; правилá на пýтното  
 дви́жение [12] traffic laws, rules of  
 the road  
 двóйка [10] [13] pair; "2" (failing mark in  
 school)  
 двóйкаджия, -ийка [10] high school  
 dropout  
 двóр [11] yard; игрáя на двóра [11]  
 play in the yard  
 двуцвéтен [13] two-colored  
 де [10] (*intensifying particle*); вземéте  
 де! [10] so take [some] already!  
 дéвет [6] nine

# Българо-английски речник

деветдесѣт [6] ninety  
 девѣти [8] ninth  
 деветнайсет [6] nineteen  
 деветстотин [9] nine hundred  
 дежурен [10] on duty  
 дежурство [10] duty  
 декември [9] December  
 декламирам [7] declaim, recite  
 демократиѣски [14] democratic  
 демокраѣия [13] democracy  
 ден, -ят (*plural* дни, *quantified form* дѣна or дѣня) [4] [6] day; рожден ден [5] birthday; добър ден (*fixed accent*); [6] hello, good day; днешен ден [9] this very day; други ден [9] the day after tomorrow; бнзи ден [9] the day before yesterday; през деня [9] in the daytime; Ден на благодарността [9] Thanksgiving Day  
 дерá [12] skin, fleece, tear, scratch  
 десен, дясна [11] right (as opposed to left)  
 десѣрт [6] dessert  
 десѣт [6] ten  
 детѣ (*plural* деца) [1] [3] child; от детѣ [12] since childhood  
 детински [13] children's; детински работи [13] kid's stuff  
 джинси [13] jeans  
 диктувам [14] dictate  
 дим, -ѣт [4] smoke  
 директен [8] direct  
 директор (ка) [13] director  
 длán [12] palm of the hand  
 дневник [10] diary  
 днес [1] today  
 днешен [9] today's; днешен ден [9] this very day  
 до [2] [5] [6] by, near, next to; [up] to; until; то е до вратата [2] it's by the door  
 добре [2] well, fine; O.K.; добре дошли! [2] welcome!; добре ли си сегá? [3] are you O.K. now?  
 добър [2] good; добър вѣчер [9] good evening (*fixed phrase*); добър ден (*fixed accent*) [6] hello, good day; добро утро [9] good morning; доброто старо време [11] the good old days  
 довѣчера [9] this evening  
 довиждане [8] goodbye; вземам си довиждане [13] make one's farewells  
 доволен [6] pleased, satisfied  
 догодина [7] next year  
 дойда *see* дохождам

докарвам / докарам [10] drive to, bring to  
 докато [9] while, until  
 докато не [13] until  
 доклад [12] report, (scholarly) paper  
 долѣтам / долѣтя [13] come flying, fly up to  
 долу [11] down; горе-долу [11] more or less  
 дом, -ѣт (*plural* домовѣ) [7] home, house; у дома [10] at home  
 домáт [6] tomato  
 домашен [2] [7] homemade; home (*adj.*)  
 домашно [8] homework  
 донáсям / донесá [7] bring  
 допълнение [8] addition, supplement  
 дори [8] even  
 досегá [6] until now  
 досмѣшава ме / досмѣшее ме (*3rd person only*) [13] [I] feel like laughing  
 досрамáя ме / досрамѣе ме (*3rd person only*) [13] [I] feel ashamed  
 достáтъчен [7] enough  
 дохождам / дойда [5] come, arrive  
 дочуване [12] goodbye (on the phone)  
 дошъл, дошла, дошли [11] come (*active participle*); добре дошъл [11] welcome (*to a male friend*); добре дошла [11] welcome (*to a female friend*); добре дошли! [11] welcome (*to group or formal acquaintance*)  
 драг [2] [3] dear; Драги Боб, [2] Dear Bob, (*beginning of a letter*)  
 дрѣха [10] article of clothing; дрѣхи [10] clothes  
 дрѣб, -ѣт (*plural* дрѣбове or дрѣбовѣ) [12] lung (*see also* бял дрѣб); чѣрен дрѣб [12] liver  
 друг [2] [7] other, another; next; на другата спѣрка [7] at the next stop; други ден [9] the day after tomorrow; другата нощ [9] tomorrow night  
 другáр (ка) [1] comrade  
 другáрче [13] playfellow, playmate  
 дýма [7] word; за каквѣ стáва дýма? [11] what's the matter? what's it about?  
 дýхам blow; дýха [1] it's blowing, there is air coming  
 дýши [6] people (*counting form*); кѣлко дýши [6] how many people  
 дъжд, -ѣт (*plural* дъждовѣ) [12] rain; валият силни дъждовѣ [12] it's raining heavily  
 дълго [8] [for] a long time  
 дълъг [2] long

дървен (-ена) [13] wood (*adj.*), wooden  
дърво (*plural* дървета) [7] tree  
дърво (*plural* дърва) [11] wood  
държам (-яш) [11] hold, keep  
дъх [8] breath, wind; поемам [си] дъх  
[8] catch one's breath  
дъщеря [10] daughter  
дядо (*plural* дядовци) [8] [10]  
grandfather; Дядо Мраз [10] Jack  
Frost; Дядо Коледа [10] Santa  
Claus  
дясна *see* десен

е [1] is (*3rd singular*); *see* съм  
европейски [8] European  
евтин [9] cheap, inexpensive  
един [2] [3] one, a (*masculine*); един  
и същ [10] the same, one and the  
same

единайсет [6] eleven  
единствен, -ена [11] single, only  
една [3] one (*feminine*); в една стая с  
[10] in the same room as  
едно [2] [3] one (*neuter*; in counting)  
едновременно [11] simultaneous  
едър [9] large, robust; на едро [9]  
wholesale  
езеро [3] lake, pond  
език [3] language, tongue  
ей! [1] hey, oh  
екзотика [7] exotica, exoticism  
екзотичен [5] exotic  
екскурзия [8] excursion  
елам [5] come (*imperative of дойда*) ела  
да ти полее [13] come let me pour  
water [over your hands]  
елегантен [5] elegant  
елен [8] deer, stag  
елха [13] fir tree; новогодишна елха  
[13] New Year's tree  
ера [9] era; преди н.е. [9] B.C.;  
от н.е. [9] A.D.  
ерген [11] bachelor  
есен, -та [9] fall, autumn  
етаж [8] floor (of a multi-story building)  
ето [2] here (*pointing*)  
ефектен [5] effective  
ефенди [1] effendi, sir (*archaic term of  
address*)

жаден [2] thirsty  
жалко [11] too bad, pity  
желание [14] wish, desire

желая [7] wish, desire  
жена [2] woman, wife  
женен, -ена [10] married  
женя [11] marry off  
женя се [11] get married  
жив [11] live, living; lively; жив да го  
оплачеш [11] it makes your heart  
bleed to see him; да сте живи и  
здрави [11] here's to your life and  
health  
живей [3] live  
живот [9] life  
животинче [13] little animal  
животно [8] animal; права на  
животните [12] animal rights  
жилетка [12] waistcoat, cardigan sweater  
жилищен [8] residential; жилищен  
комплекс [8] housing development,  
block of apartments  
журналист (ка) [5] journalist  
жълт [8] yellow

за [1] [6] [10] [11] for, to; about; here's  
to; за къде пътувате? [1] where are  
you traveling to?; за съжаление [1]  
unfortunately; за две седмици [6]  
for two weeks; кажи ни за тях [10]  
tell us about them; зная за него [10]  
I know about him; за много години  
[11] many happy returns; за какво  
става дума? [11] what's it about?  
what's the matter?  
за да [11] in order to (*conjunction of  
purpose*); за да не става течение  
[11] so there won't be a draft  
забавен [11] amusing, fun  
забелязвам / забележа (-иш) [5] notice,  
spot  
забождам / забодя [13] stick, pin  
заболява (ме) / заболя (ме) (*3rd person  
only*) [12] start to hurt  
заболявам / заболя [12] get sick  
забравям / забравя [7] forget  
завалява / завали (*3rd person only*) [12]  
begin to precipitate [rain, unless otherwise  
specified]  
завеждам / заведа [10] take somewhere,  
lead  
завивам / завия [6] turn, bend, wrap  
зависа [14] depend; зависи от вас  
[14] it depends on you; зависи той  
какво ще каже [14] it depends on  
what he will say  
завързвам / завържа (-еш) [13] tie;  
завързвам връзките на обувки [13]  
tie [one's] shoelaces



## Българо-английски речник

заглавие [13] title  
 зад [13] behind, beyond ; зад ъгъла [14] around the corner  
 заден [14] back, rear (*adj.*)  
 задник [12] behind, rear end  
 задúшен [4] stuffy  
 заедно [5] together  
 заемам / заема [12] take up, occupy  
 заёт [7] busy, occupied  
 закачвам / закача (-иш) [13] hang, suspend  
 заключвам / заключа (-иш) [8] lock  
 закрáтко [11] for a short while  
 заку́свам / заку́ся [11] eat breakfast  
 заку́ска [10] breakfast  
 закъснение [14] delay; tardiness ; с малко закъснение [14] a little late  
 закъснявам / закъснѐя [7] be late  
 зала [12] hall ; всѐ едно си в злата [12] it's just like being in the concert hall  
 залязвам / заляза [9] set (of the sun)  
 заминавам / замина [9] leave, depart  
 занасям / занеса [7] carry, take to  
 занимавам [11] interest, occupy  
 занимавам се (с) [11] be occupied (with)  
 запис [13] recording  
 заповядавам / заповядам [5] command, order ; заповядай [5] help yourself  
 запознавам / запозная [14] acquaint [someone] with  
 запознавам се / запозная се [10] meet, get acquainted  
 запомням / запомня [9] remember  
 започвам / започна [6] begin  
 зарадвам се [12] cheer up  
 заради [13] for the sake of, because of  
 засега [9] at present, for now  
 заслужавам / заслужи (-иш) [11] deserve, be worthy of  
 заспивам / заспя [14] fall asleep  
 затварям / затворя [3] [4] close ; затварям вратата под носá [на] [13] shut the door in [someone's] face  
 затворен, -ена [2] closed  
 затова [5] therefore, thus  
 затрупувам / затрупам [11] cover up, bury under; pile up ; затрупувам с въпроси [11] burden with questions  
 захар, -та [12] sugar  
 защита [12] defense  
 защо [3] why  
 защото [3] because  
 звуча (-иш) [12] sound, resound ; звучи добре [12] that sounds good  
 звънец [5] bell  
 звъня [5] ring ; звъня по телефона [10] telephone

здрав [2] healthy, lasting, strong  
 здраве [2] health ; полезно за здравето [8] good for you [for one's health]  
 здравей [6] hi  
 зеле [4] cabbage ; салата от зеле [4] cabbage salad  
 зелен [8] green  
 зеленчук [7] vegetable  
 зима [9] winter  
 зимен [11] winter (*adj.*) ; зимен курорт [11] ski resort  
 зиморничав [11] sensitive to the cold  
 златен [9] golden  
 зле [13] bad, badly  
 знак [9] sign  
 знам [4] see знай  
 знаменит [14] famous, renowned  
 значи [1] that means, so, thus  
 значение [9] meaning ; няма значение [9] it doesn't matter  
 знай [3] know  
 зрѐя [9] ripen  
 зъб, -ѐт (*plural зѐби*) [6] [8] tooth  
 зъболекар [12] dentist

и [1] and, also ; и аз [1] me too ; и to [11] at that  
 ѝ [7] [to] her (*indirect object pronoun*)  
 и ... и [8] both...and  
 игра [14] play, game  
 играя [5] play ; играя на двора [11] play in the yard ; играя си [11] play around  
 йда [5] come, go ; идй за хляб [5] go get some bread  
 идвам [5] come  
 идеален [5] ideal  
 идея [5] idea  
 идиличен [3] idyllic  
 идилия [7] idyll  
 из [11] around, throughout; out of ; пътуване из България [11] a trip throughout Bulgaria ; разходка из града [11] city tour ; из къщи [11] around the house (*fixed phrase*)  
 избирам / избира [4] choose, select  
 избор [7] selection, choice  
 избърсвам / избърша (-еш) [13] wipe, dry  
 изваждам / извадя [14] take/bring out, produce, extract  
 изведнѐж [5] suddenly  
 извеждам / изведá [9] take out, lead away ; извеждам кучето на разходка [9] walk the dog

изви́квам / изви́кам [13] cry, call out  
 извинение [13] excuse, pardon  
 извиня́вам / извиня́ [5] pardon, excuse ;  
 извинете́ [2] excuse me  
 извъ́н [10] out of, outside  
 изгáрям / изгоря́ [14] get burned, burn  
 up  
 изглед́вам [4] look, appear, seem ;  
 изглед́жа [6] it seems  
 издока́рвам се / издока́рам се [14] dress  
 up  
 издър́жам / издържа́ (-иш) [7] stand,  
 endure  
 иззвъ́нявам / иззвъ́ня [14] ring (out)  
 изкип́явам / изкипя́ [14] boil over  
 изкъ́пвам се / изкъ́пя се (-еш) [14]  
 bathe, take a bath  
 излет [3] excursion  
 изли́зам / изля́за [4] leave, go  
 изми́вам / измия́ [13] wash up  
 изми́слям / изми́сля [12] think up,  
 invent  
 измо́крям / измо́кря [12] drench, soak ;  
 измо́крям се до ко́сти [12] get  
 soaked to the skin  
 изнена́да [12] surprise ; по  
 изнена́дите съм [14] I like surprises  
 изоб́що [8] in general, at all ; те  
 изоб́що не мо́гат да ча́кат [8] they  
 can't wait at all  
 изпи́вам / изпия́ [5] drink up  
 изпи́рам / изпера́ [12] do laundry, wash  
 изпит [5] exam, test  
 изплита́м / изплета́ [12] knit, twist  
 изплъ́звам се / изплъ́зна се [14] slip  
 out, slip through  
 изпра́щам / изпра́тя [8] send off, see  
 off, accompany  
 изпу́скам / изпу́сна [7] drop, let go ;  
 miss  
 изпя́вам / изпе́я [11] sing (to the end)  
 изсти́вам / изсти́на [8] grow/become  
 cold  
 изтръ́пвам / изтръ́пна [14] fall asleep (of  
 a body part) ; изтръ́пвам от у́жас  
 [14] freeze with terror  
 изуми́телен [13] amazing, astounding  
 изуча́вам / изуча́ (-иш) [2] [4] study,  
 make a study of  
 изчез́вам / изчезна́ [10] disappear  
 изчи́ствам / изчи́стя [14] clean up, clean  
 out  
 изя́ждам / изям́ (-яде́ш) [9] eat up  
 изясня́вам / изясня́ [14] clear up ;  
 след́ като неща́та се изясня́т [14]  
 when things get clarified  
 или [3] or  
 или ... или [8] either...or

им [7] [to] them (*indirect object pronoun*)  
 има́ [2] there is, there are ; каквó има  
 в ча́нтата? [2] what is there in the  
 bag? ; има́ ма́лко вре́ме [2] there's  
 not [very] much time ; има́ о́ще мно́го  
 ра́бота [2] there's still a lot of work  
 [to do] ; има́ си́лен вятър [2] it's  
 very windy; there's a strong wind ; има́  
 смисъл [11] it makes sense  
 има́м [2] [3] have ; има́м ну́жда от  
 [4] need, have need of  
 име́ (*plural* именá) [6] name  
 инже́нер [14] engineer  
 интере́с [7] interest ; проявя́вам  
 интере́с към [8] take an interest in  
 интере́сен [2] interesting  
 интере́сно [1] interesting ; мно́го  
 интере́сно [1] that's very  
 interesting ; интере́сно, ти́ как си  
 [3] I wonder how you are  
 интере́сýвам [8] interest (*transitive*)  
 интере́сýвам се от [11] be interested in  
 йскам [5] want  
 йстина́ [1] truth  
 йстински́ [8] real, true  
 исто́рия [7] history, story

кабинет [4] office (e.g. doctor's)  
 кавга́ [10] quarrel, dispute  
 кавгаджия́, -ийка [10] quarrelsome  
 person, brawler  
 ка́звам / ка́жа (-еш) [1] [4] say  
 ка́звам се [1] my name is ; ка́зва се  
 [1] his/her name is ; каќ се ка́звате?  
 [1] what is your name?  
 кайма́ [6] ground meat  
 каќ [1] how ; каќ се ка́звате? [1]  
 what is your name? ; каќ така? [11]  
 how is it that, how can that be? ; каќ  
 не те́ е сра́м! [12] you should be  
 ashamed!  
 каквó [1] [4] what, what for ; каквó е  
 "тече́ние"? [1] what's a "течение",  
 what does течение mean? ; каквó е  
 това́? [3] what's this? ; каквó  
 гледа́ш то́лкова в... ? [4] why are you  
 so absorbed in... ? ; каквó рабо́тите?  
 [5] what [kind of] work do you do? ;  
 каквó ще ка́жеш [7] what do you  
 think ; каквó ли не́ [12] whatever,  
 whatnot  
 каквóто [12] whatever  
 ка́кто [9] as  
 какъ́в [3] what kind of, what ; какъ́в е  
 то́й? [3] what [work] does he do? ;  
 каква́ хубава къ́ща [3] what a nice



## Българо-английски речник

- house ; какъв ли е той [5] what's he like, I wonder  
 каня [10] invite  
 каня се [11] plan, intend  
 капризен [13] capricious  
 капя (-еш) [11] drip, dribble  
 карам [6] drive, ride, push ; карам кола [6] drive a car  
 карам се [11] scold, quarrel  
 карнавален [12] carnival (*adj.*)  
 карта [5] card; map, chart  
 картинка [3] small picture  
 картичка [11] postcard  
 касетофон [5] cassette player; tape recorder  
 като [3] like, as; when ; аз правя като лелята [3] I'm doing [just] like auntie ; като бях [6] when I was ; като малък [11] when he was little  
 като че ли [14] as if, apparently ; като че ли се смееше [14] he appeared to be laughing  
 кафе [5] coffee, cup of coffee  
 кафеен, -ейна [6] coffee (*adj.*) ; кафена лъжичка [6] coffee spoon  
 качвам / кача (-иш) [7] carry up, take up  
 качвам се / кача се (-иш) [7] ascend, get on  
 кашкавал [4] kashkaval (yellow cheese) ; омлет с кашкавал [4] cheese omelet  
 квартал [9] district, living area  
 квартира [14] apartment, quarters  
 кебап [13] grilled or stewed meat  
 кебапче [6] kebab  
 килограм [6] kilogram  
 кино [5] cinema, movies  
 кир [1] sir (*archaic term of address*)  
 кира [1] ma'am (*archaic term of address*)  
 кисел [6] sour ; кисело зеле [6] sauerkraut ; кисело мляко [6] yogurt  
 китка [12] wrist  
 кихам (*or* кихвам) / кихна [14] sneeze  
 клас, -ът [7] class, grade in school ; от класа [7] from the same [school] class  
 класически [3] classical  
 климат [11] climate  
 клон [13] beak  
 ключ [7] key  
 книга [2] book  
 княз (*plural* князѐ) [8] prince  
 книжка [10] booklet; driver's license  
 кога [6] when (*interrogative*)  
 когато [11] when (*relative conjunction*)  
 кого [8] whom (*interrogative*)  
 кожа [12] skin; hide, fur  
 кой, коя, кое, кои [3] [5] who, which (*interrogative*)  
 кокал [12] bone  
 кокóшка [11] hen, fowl ; кокóшка с кисело зеле [11] chicken and sauerkraut casserole  
 кола [4] car, automobile ; карам кола [6] drive a car  
 колега [10] colleague  
 Коледа [10] Christmas  
 коледен [10] Christmas (*adj.*)  
 колежка [10] female colleague  
 колéкция [7] collection  
 колелó [14] wheel; bicycle  
 колét [5] parcel, package  
 колíчка [7] pushcart  
 колко [4] [6] how much, how many ; колко струва това? [4] how much does this cost? ; колко струва? [4] how much is it? ; колко души сме? [6] how many of us are there? ; на колко сте години? [6] how old are you? ; колко е часът? [6] what time is it? ; в колко часа? [6] when, at what time?  
 коляно (*plural* коленá *or* коленé) [12] knee  
 командировка [10] business trip  
 комедия [11] comedy  
 комíн [13] chimney  
 компáкт дýск [12] compact disk  
 комплéкс [8] complex ; жилищен комплéкс [8] block of apartments  
 кон, -ят (*plural* конé) [8] horse  
 кондýктор (ка) [5] conductor  
 консервíрам [6] preserve, can  
 консервíран [6] preserved, canned  
 контрóлен [8] control (*adj.*) ; контрóлна рáбота [8] exam, quiz  
 контрóлно [8] exam, quiz  
 конферéнция [12] conference  
 копáя [10] dig  
 копíе [13] copy ; пълно копíе [14] exact replica  
 копър [6] dill  
 корém [12] abdomen, belly  
 коридóр [2] corridor, passageway; entryway  
 косá [12] hair  
 кост, -та [12] bone ; измóкрям се до кóсти [12] get soaked to the skin  
 костенýрка [9] turtle  
 костюм [14] suit  
 кóтка [10] cat  
 кóфа [14] pail, bucket ; кóфа за боклýк [14] garbage can  
 кошмáр [6] nightmare  
 край [7] edge, end  
 край (*plural* краища) [8] district  
 крак, -ът (*plural* кракá) [8] leg ; на крак [12] hastily  
 крál, -ят (*plural* кралé) [8] king

краставица [6] cucumber  
 кратък [9] short  
 крив [3] crooked  
 кротък [13] gentle  
 кръв, -та (*plural* кръви) [12] blood  
 кръг, -ът [10] circle; тесен семеен  
 кръг [10] immediate family  
 кръгъл [10] round, circular; кръгла  
 годишнина [10] decade anniversary  
 кръстословница [8] crossword puzzle;  
 решавам кръстословница [8] do a  
 crossword puzzle  
 кубински [8] Cuban  
 кукла [13] doll, puppet  
 култура [9] culture  
 културен [12] cultural  
 кум, -ът [14] godfather  
 кума [14] godmother  
 купе [2] compartment; купе № 7 [2]  
 compartment No. 7; купето е тясно  
 [2] the compartment is cramped  
 купувам / купя [5] buy, purchase  
 курорт [11] resort; зимен курорт [11]  
 ski resort  
 кутія [10] box; пощенска кутія [10]  
 mailbox  
 кухня [5] [7] kitchen; cuisine  
 кúфар [2] suitcase  
 кúче [4] dog  
 къде [1] where (*interrogative*)  
 към [8] toward  
 къпя (-еш) [3] bathe  
 кърпа [13] cloth, towel  
 къс [12] short  
 късен [4] late  
 късмет [10] fortune, luck; баница с  
 късмети [10] banitsa with fortunes  
 къща [2] house  
 къщичка [7] little house

лакът, лакътят (*plural* лакти) [8] elbow  
 лая [11] bark  
 лев [4] lev (Bulgarian currency); 120  
 лева [4] 120 levs (*or* leva)  
 лєви *see* ляв  
 легло [4] bed  
 легна *see* лягам  
 леден, -ена [8] ice (*adj.*), frozen  
 лежа (-иш) [4] lie, be lying  
 лек [9] light, easy; лека нощ [9]  
 good night  
 лекар (ка) [1] doctor, physician  
 лекарство [8] medicine; гълтам  
 лекарство [8] take medicine  
 лекция [6] lecture, class  
 лєля [3] aunt (father's sister); "auntie"

лесен [6] easy  
 ли [1] [5] (*question particle*); от Варна  
 ли сте? [1] are you from Varna?;  
 какъв ли е този човек [5] what is this  
 person like, I wonder; каквó ли нє  
 [12] all sorts of [things]  
 лист [4] sheet of paper  
 лист (*plural* листá) [6] leaf  
 лицє [12] face  
 ловя [9] catch; ловя рíба [9] fish,  
 catch fish  
 логичен [12] logical  
 лозá [6] vine  
 лóзе (*plural* лозя) [10] vineyard  
 лóзов [6] grape, vine (*adj.*); лóзови  
 листá [6] grape leaves  
 лóш [3] bad  
 лук [6] onion  
 лунá [9] moon  
 лъжйца [6] spoon, spoonful  
 лъжйчка [6] teaspoon, teaspoonful  
 лъскав [10] shining, bright  
 любя [13] love, be in love with  
 любезен [2] kind  
 любйм [8] favorite  
 любйтел [8] lover, fan  
 ляв (*plural* лєви) [11] left, Left  
 лягам / лєгна [4] lie down, go to bed  
 лягам си / лєгна си [8] go to bed  
 лято (*plural* летá) [9] summer

магазин [5] store  
 май [9] May  
 май [12] it seems, in all probability;  
 май остава да отйдем там [12] I  
 guess we have to go there  
 майка [2] mother  
 макар [14] at least; although  
 макар че [14] although, even though  
 малина [3] raspberry  
 малко [1] [2] a little, [very] little; той е  
 малко бóлен [2] he's a bit under the  
 weather  
 малък [2] small; малко време [2]  
 not much time; малките [4] small  
 ones, children; като малък [11]  
 when he was little; от малък [13]  
 since he was little/a child; с малко  
 закъснение [14] a little late  
 мама [2] Mom; máмо [2] Mom  
 (*when addressed*); а нйє, máмо? [2]  
 and what about us, Mom?  
 манастир [8] monastery  
 март [1] March  
 мартеница [13] entwined red and  
 white tassels worn as a sign of spring

## Българо-английски речник

мартеничка [13] small martenitsa  
 маса [7] table  
 масичка [13] little table  
 матура [8] matriculation [exam]  
 махам [14] wave  
 мач [12] [sports] match, game  
 мащеха [10] stepmother  
 ме [4] [5] me (*direct object pronoun*)  
 между [12] between, among  
 мек [15] soft, mild  
 мѐн [12] (*same as мѐне*)  
 мѐне [10] me (*direct object pronoun*)  
 меню (*neuter*) [4] menu  
 месец [9] month  
 месó [6] meat  
 местá [6] see място  
 метър [15] meter  
 мече [11] bear cub  
 Мѐчо Пѹх [11] Winnie the Pooh  
 ми [7] [to] me (*indirect object pronoun*)  
 мѝгла [12] eyelash  
 мѝл [4] dear; добрѐ, мѝло [4] all right, darling  
 милѐя [13] hold dear, care for  
 минавам / мѝна [5] pass  
 мѝнал [9] past; мѝналата нощ [9] last night; мѝнало свѣршено врѐме [12] aorist tense; мѝнало несвѣршено врѐме [14] imperfect tense  
 министѐрство [14] ministry  
 минѹта [6] minute  
 миризмá [11] smell, scent  
 мѝсля [5] think  
 мѝшка [11] mouse  
 мѝя [8] wash  
 млад [7] young  
 младожѐнец [10] bridegroom, newlywed  
 младожѐнка [10] bride, newlywed  
 млѐчност [10] milkiness  
 млѝко (*plural* млѐкá) [6] milk  
 много [1] [2] very; much; many; много рáбота [2] a lot of work; много интѐресно [1] very interesting  
 мóга (-жеш) [4] can, be able  
 мóден [13] fashionable; мóдно ревю [13] fashion show  
 мóже [4] [11] possible, OK; it's possible; бѝра мóже [4] OK, I can [have a] beer  
 мóже би [9] maybe  
 мóзък (*plural* мóзъци) [12] brain  
 мóй [8] my, mine  
 мóлив [2] pencil  
 мóля [4] please; мóля ви се, гóспóдине [4] please, sir; мóля! [4] at your service

момѐнт [5] moment; в тóзи момѐнт [5] then, at that point in time; в момѐнта [10] at the moment  
 момѝче [1] girl  
 момчѐ [1] boy  
 мóмък (*plural* момѝци) [13] young man  
 монѐта [10] coin  
 морáвски [8] Moravian  
 морѐ [6] sea; на морѐто [6] at the [Black] Sea  
 мóрков [4] carrot; салáта от мóркови [4] carrot salad  
 мóрски [15] sea (*adj.*); мóрското равнѝще [15] sea level  
 мóст (*plural* мостóве) [6] bridge  
 мóтам се (*or* мотáя се) [14] fool around  
 мрáз [10] frost, chill; Дя́до Мрáз [10] Jack Frost  
 мрѐсен [9] dirty  
 му [7] [to] him/it (*indirect object pronoun*)  
 мѹзика [5] music  
 мѹскул [12] muscle  
 мустáци (*plural*) [14] mustache  
 мѹж, -ѹт (*plural* мѹжѐ) [8] man, husband  
 мѹжки [8] male, masculine  
 мѹлчá (-ѝш) [10] be silent, fall silent  
 мѹчен [13] hard, difficult; стáна ми мѹчно [13] I had a hard time  
 мѹсто [2] place, seat; мѹстото е свобóдно [2] the seat is not taken

н.е. – нoвáта ѐра [9]  
 на [1] [2] [3] [7] of; in, on, at; per; for (*indirect object*); тѝ си на № 2 [2] you've got No. 2; на сѐло [3] in the village; на бѹлгáрски [3] in Bulgarian; на [...] гóдини [6] [...] years old; на кóлко стѐ гóдини? [6] how old are you?; на ѓдро [9] wholesale; на телѐфóна [12] speaking! [on the phone]; по три пѹти на дѐн [13] three times a day  
 наблѝзо [4] nearby  
 навѐчѐрие [10] the eve of; vigil  
 нáвик [11] habit  
 наврѐме [5] on time; сѹвсѐм наврѐме [5] at exactly the right moment  
 навѝн [11] outside (*directional*)  
 навѝтре [11] inside (*directional*)  
 навѝрно [14] probably  
 нагóре [11] up (*directional*)  
 нагрáда [13] reward, prize  
 над [15] above  
 надѐжда [8] hope  
 надóлу [11] down (*directional*)  
 нáдпис [14] inscription

- надясно [11] to the right  
 наем [12] rent ; давам под наем [12] rent out  
 наесен [9] in the fall  
 назаем [12] loan ; давам назаем [12] loan  
 наздраве [11] cheers, to your health! (toast)  
 наизуст [4] by heart, verbatim ; аз знам менкото наизуст [4] I can recite the menu by heart  
 наистина [2] really, truly  
 най- [10] most... (superlative degree particle) ; най-после [1] finally ; най-много [10] the most ; най-различни неща [10] all sorts of things  
 накратко [10] in short, briefly  
 накъде [11] to where  
 нали [3] (added to form negative question) ; нали виждаш [3] don't you see ; нали знаеш, че аз съм... [3] you know, don't you, that I'm... ; голям е, нали? [3] it's big, isn't it?  
 наляво [11] to the left  
 намирам / намеря [5] find  
 намръщен (-ена) [13] sullen, gloomy  
 нанизвам / нанижа (-еш) [14] string together  
 наоколо [9] around, round about  
 написвам / напиша (-еш) [5] write, write down, finish writing  
 напитка [4] beverage, drink  
 напоследък [8] lately  
 направям / направя [6] do, make ; направя място на този човек [6] make room for this man  
 напред [14] ahead, forwards  
 напредък [9] progress, gain  
 напрежение [14] pressure, tension  
 например [8] for example  
 напролет [9] in the spring  
 наред [7] in order ; всичко е наред [7] everything's O.K.  
 нареждам / наредя [6] set up, arrange  
 наричам / нарека (-чеш) [13] call, name  
 народ [7] people, folk  
 народен [5] national, folk  
 нас [8] [10] us (direct object pronoun)  
 настъпвам / настъпя [13] come on, set in, occur; step on; advance  
 научавам / науча (-иш) [6] [9] learn; teach  
 научавам се / науча се (-иш) [14] learn to, learn about; get used to  
 нахранвам / нахраня [11] feed  
 начален [3] beginning, elementary ; начално образование [3] elementary education  
 начин [6] way, manner; по този начин [6] in this way  
 наш [8] our, ours  
 наяхдам се / наям се (-ядеш) [9] eat one's fill, gorge on  
 не [1] not ; не те е срам! [12] shame on you!  
 не [3] [5] no; (contrastive negation) ; не там [5] not there [but somewhere else]  
 небце [12] palate (roof of mouth)  
 него [10] him, it (direct object pronoun)  
 негов [8] his  
 неделя [6] Sunday  
 нейна, нейна [8] her, hers  
 непознат [5] unknown  
 непременен [13] indispensable, necessary  
 непременно [13] by all means  
 несвършен [12] incomplete, imperfect ; несвършен вид [12] imperfective aspect ; минало несвършено време [14] imperfect tense  
 неспокоен [4] uneasy, restless  
 несравним [11] incomparable  
 нестиняр [11] fire-dancer  
 нестинярство [11] fire-dancing, fire-walking  
 нетърпение [8] impatience ; чакам с нетърпение [8] await eagerly  
 неудобен [13] inconvenient, uncomfortable  
 нечетен [11] odd-numbered  
 нещо [5] something  
 нея [10] her (direct object pronoun)  
 ни [5] us (direct object pronoun)  
 ни [7] [to] us (indirect object pronoun)  
 ни [8] not, neither  
 ни ... ни [8] neither...nor  
 нива [10] [corn]field  
 ние [1] we  
 нижа (-еш) [14] thread, string together  
 никак [8] not at all  
 никакъв [8] none, no kind of  
 никога [8] never  
 никои [8] no one  
 никого [8] no one (object)  
 никъде [8] nowhere  
 нито [8] not, neither ; нито една дума [8] not a single word  
 нищо [8] nothing ; нищо, че няма [10] no matter that there isn't [any]  
 но [2] but  
 нов [7] new ; Нова година [10] New Year's  
 новина [5] [a piece of] news  
 новогодишен [11] New Year's (adj.) ; новогодишна честитка [11] New

# Българо-английски речник

Year's greeting ; **новогодишна елха**  
 [13] New Year's tree  
**нога** [12] leg (*dialectal, poetic*)  
**ноември** [9] November  
**нож** (*plural ножове*) [7] knife  
**ножче** [13] [razor] blade  
**нокът, нокътят** (*plural нокти*) [8] nail  
 (on finger or toe)  
**номер** (*plural номера*) [2] [3] number;  
 size ; **правя номера на** [8] play  
 dirty tricks on  
**нос, -ът** (*plural носове*) [11] nose ;  
**затварям вратата под нос** [13] shut  
 the door in [someone's] face  
**нося** [3] carry; wear  
**нощ, -та** [9] night ; **през нощта** [9]  
 at night ; **тази нощ** [9] tonight  
**нощен** [9] night (*adj.*) ; **нощно време**  
 [9] nighttime  
**нужда** [2] need ; **няма нужда** [2]  
 there's no need, it's not necessary ;  
**имаме нужда от въздух** [4] we need  
 air ; **имате нужда от преглед** [4]  
 you need to be examined  
**някак** [8] somehow  
**някакъв** [8] some sort  
**някога** [8] sometime  
**някой** [8] someone  
**няколко** [6] several  
**някъде** [8] somewhere  
**няма** [2] there isn't/aren't any ; **няма**  
**нужда** [2] there's no need, it's not  
 necessary ; **няма място за паника**  
 [3] there's no need to worry ; **няма**  
**значение** [9] it doesn't matter ;  
**няма нищо страшно** [11] there's  
 nothing to be afraid of  
**няма да** [7] won't (*negative future*  
*particle*) ; **нямаше да** [16]  
 wasn't/weren't going to  
**нямам** [2] [3] not have

**обаждам се / обадя се** [10] [12] call, get  
 in touch; come to the phone ; **обаждам**  
**се по телефона** [11] call on the  
 phone ; **може ли да се обади** [12]  
 can s/he come to the phone  
**обаче** [7] however  
**обед** (*or обяд*) [8] lunch  
**обеден** [9] lunch, noon (*adjective*) ;  
**обедно време** [9] lunch time  
**обещавам / обеща** [10] promise  
**обида** [14] insult ; **понасям обида**  
 [14] bear/sustain an insult  
**обикновен** [8] usual  
**обикновено** [2] usually

**обирам / обера** [8] plunder, pick  
**обичаен, -айна** [14] customary  
**обичай** [13] custom, convention  
**обичам** [2] [3] like, love  
**облечен, -ена** [14] dressed  
**обличам / облека (-чеш)** [13] dress  
 [someone]  
**обличам се / облека се (-чеш)** [13] put  
 on, don ; **обличам се спортно** [13]  
 wear/put on casual clothing  
**образованіе** [3] education  
**обръщам се / обръна се** [14] turn  
**обувам / обуя** [13] put someone's shoes,  
 stockings, etc. on  
**обувам се / обуя се** [13] put on shoes,  
 stockings, etc.  
**обувка** [3] shoe  
**обуща** [13] footwear  
**общ** [7] general, common  
**общество** [12] society  
**обяд** [9] (*see also обед*) lunch, noon ;  
**след обяд** [9] afternoon, after lunch  
**огладнявам / огладнея** [4] get hungry  
**огледало** [11] mirror  
**оглеждам / огледам** [14] survey, examine  
**оглеждам се / огледам се** [14] look at  
 one's reflection  
**огън** (*plural огньовете*) [7] fire  
**оженвам / ожения** [11] marry (*transitive*)  
**оженвам се / ожения се** [11] get married  
**окичвам / окича (-иш)** [13] adorn,  
 decorate  
**око** (*plural очи*) [12] eye  
**октомври** [6] October  
**окъпвам се / окъпя се (-еш)** [14] bathe  
**олио** [6] cooking oil  
**омеквам / омекна** [11] soften, grow  
 milder  
**омлет** [4] omelet  
**омръзвам / омръзва** [12] tire, bore ;  
**омръзва ми** [12] I'm bored  
**онази** [8] that (*feminine*)  
**оная** [11] that (*variant of онази*)  
**онези** [8] those  
**онзи** [8] that (*masculine*) ; **онзи ден**  
 [9] the day before yesterday  
**ония** [11] those (*variant of онези*)  
**оновá** [8] that (*neuter*)  
**онуй** [11] that (*variant of оновá*)  
**оня** [11] that (*variant of онзи*)  
**опасен** [4] dangerous  
**опашка** [11] tail; line, queue ; **чакам**  
**на опашка** [11] wait in/on line  
**опера** [12] opera  
**описвам / опиша (-еш)** [7] describe  
**оплаквам / оплача (-еш)** [11] mourn,  
 lament, weep ; **жив да го оплачеш**

# Българо-английски речник

[11] it makes your heart bleed to see him  
 оплаквам се / оплача се (-еш) [11] complain, grumble  
 опознавам / опозная [7] recognize, get to know  
 опомням се / опомня се [12] come to [one's] senses ; опомни се! [12] snap out of it!  
 организирам [12] organize  
 орех [6] walnut  
 ориз [6] rice  
 освен [4] except [for]; in addition to ; освен това [4] besides, in addition  
 осем [6] eight  
 осемдесет [6] eighty  
 осемнайсет [6] eighteen  
 осемнайсети [8] eighteenth  
 осемстотин [9] eight hundred  
 осми [8] eighth  
 особен [10] special, particular  
 особено [8] especially  
 оставам / остава [3] [4] remain, stay ; остава още малко [3] there's still a little left  
 остана [9] remained; remaining, left, left-over  
 оставам / остава [8] leave (transitive)  
 от [1] [4] [6] [8] from; of; since (time); than ; салата от зеле [4] cabbage salad ; имавам нужда от [4] need, have need of ; от всички страни [6] from/on all sides ; от един час само [6] for only an hour ; от н.е. [9] A.D. ; от дете [12] since childhood ; от ваша страна [15] on your part  
 отбор [12] team  
 отворям / отворя [2] [3] [4] open  
 отворен, -ена [2] open  
 отвън [11] from outside  
 отвътре [9] from within  
 отговарям / отговоря [10] answer  
 отговор [7] answer  
 отгоре [11] from above  
 отдавна [6] long ago ; отдавна вече [6] for a long time now  
 отделен [3] separate  
 отделно [2] separately, under separate cover  
 отдолу [11] from below  
 отдясно [11] from the right  
 отзад [3] in back, in the rear, behind  
 отивам / отида [5] go  
 отказвам / откажа (-еш) [13] cancel, refuse  
 откакто [10] [ever] since  
 отколкото [10] than, in as much

открито [13] openly, above board, without hiding  
 откъде [1] whence, from where (interrogative)  
 отляво [11] from the left  
 отминавам / отмина [14] pass by, leave behind  
 отначало [14] at the beginning  
 отново [2] again, once more  
 отопление [11] heating  
 отпуска [2] break, time off, vacation ; в отпуска [2] on a break, on vacation  
 отпътувам [7] set off for, depart  
 отскоро [11] [since] quite recently ; женени сме съвсем отскоро [11] we've just gotten married  
 отстъпвам / отстъпя [8] step back, yield, give up  
 оттам [3] from there  
 оттук, оттук [5] from here  
 охлюв [14] snail shell  
 очаквам [7] await, expect  
 очй see око  
 очила (plural) [11] eyeglasses  
 още [2] still, yet ; още много [2] a lot more, still a lot ; още не говоря [3] but I don't/can't speak yet ; тя още не четё [3] she doesn't [know how to] read yet ; още не [5] not yet  
 падам / падна [7] fall ; пада голям сняг [7] it's snowing heavily  
 пазя [8] guard, preserve  
 пак [9] again  
 палец [12] thumb, big toe  
 палто [13] coat  
 паника [3] panic, worry ; няма място за паника [3] there's no need to worry  
 панталон (or панталони) [14] pants  
 папагал [9] parrot  
 парá [11] coin  
 парен [11] steam (adj.) ; парно отопление [11] central heating  
 парй [11] money ; пет парй не давам [14] I don't give a damn  
 партия [14] party  
 парцал [14] rag  
 пациент (ка) [4] [medical] patient  
 певец [10] singer  
 пейзаж [3] landscape, natural scene  
 пейка [3] bench  
 пекá (-чеш) [13] bake, roast  
 пекá се на слънце [13] sunbathe  
 перá [12] wash

257



- перон [7] (railway) platform  
 песен, -та (*plural песни*) [9] song  
 пет [6] five ; пет пари не давам [14] I don't give a damn  
 петá [12] heel  
 петдесет [6] fifty  
 петима [6] five (*masculine animate*)  
 пети [8] fifth  
 петіца [10] "5" (next to top mark in school)  
 петнайсет [6] fifteen  
 петно [14] spot  
 петстотин [9] five hundred  
 петък [9] Friday  
 пешá [9] on foot ; ходя пешá [9] go for a walk, walk (not ride)  
 пея [11] sing  
 пиеса [12] play (theater)  
 пипам / пипна [9] touch, handle  
 писател (ка) [10] writer  
 пискюл [13] tassel, pendant  
 писмо [8] letter  
 питам [4] ask  
 пиша (-еш) [3] write  
 пия [3] drink  
 пияница [10] drunkard  
 плаж [14] beach  
 план [7] plan  
 планина [3] mountain  
 плаща (-иш) [9] frighten  
 плаща се (-иш) [11] be frightened, fear  
 плащам / пла́тя [4] pay  
 племенник [10] nephew  
 племенница [10] niece  
 плод (*plural плодовé*) [7] fruit  
 плоча [7] [13] tile, slab; phonograph record  
 плочка [3] tile  
 плувам [9] swim  
 по [3] [5] [7] each; along, down; according to, in the manner of; about ; хайде по една глътка [3] let's each have a drink ; по коридора [5] down the corridor ; преподавател по български [5] teacher of Bulgarian ; по това време [7] at about that time  
 по- [8] [10] more... (*comparative degree particle*) ; по-хубав [8] nicer, prettier ; по-голям [10] older ; по-малък [10] younger ; по-рано [14] before, earlier; "used to..."  
 побързвам / побързам [7] hurry up  
 повече [7] more ; по-повечето [11] the majority  
 повиквам / повикам [13] call, call out  
 повод [13] occasion, cause ; по повод [13] regarding, in connection with  
 повтарям / повторя [12] repeat  
 повторение [12] repeat, replay  
 повярвам [8] believe, give credence to  
 погледдам / погледна [14] have/take a look, look at ; погледни [14] look! look over there!  
 поговорявам / поговоря [12] talk for a bit  
 погрижвам се / погрижа се (-иш) [11] take care of, look after  
 под [3] under, below ; затварям вратата под нос [13] shut the door in [someone's] face  
 под [4] floor  
 подавам / подám (-дадеш) [11] hand, pass, reach  
 подарък [7] present, gift  
 подарявам / подаря [9] give (away), give a present  
 подготвям / подготвя [12] prepare, make ready  
 подготовка [5] preparation ; подготовката върви [5] the preparation's coming along  
 поднасям / поднесá [6] present, offer, serve  
 подобен [8] similar ; нищо подобно [8] nothing of the sort  
 подозирам / подозра [14] suspect, be suspicious  
 подпирам / подпра [14] prop up, support ; подпирам си брадичката [14] [sit] with chin in hand  
 подправка [6] spice (cooking)  
 подробен [13] detailed  
 подробно [13] in detail  
 подсещам / подсéтя [4] remind, call to mind ; това ме подсéща [4] that reminds me  
 подсказвам / подсказá (-еш) [13] hint, prompt  
 поемам / поема [8] take, take up ; поемам [си] дъх [8] catch one's breath  
 пожелавам / пожела́я [8] wish ; пожелавам от сърце [10] send heartfelt wishes  
 позволявам / позволя [6] allow  
 позвънявам / позвъня [9] call  
 поздрав [2] greeting  
 познавам [3] know, be acquainted with  
 познавам / позна́я [1] [3] [7] know; guess ; познавам по очите [7] tell by [some]one's eyes ; познавам число [14] pick/guess a number  
 познайник [13] acquaintance  
 познайница [13] female acquaintance  
 познат [8] acquaintance

- поигравам / поиграя [10] play for a while
- поисквам / пойскам [12] want, wish, ask for
- показвам / покажа (-еш) [7] show
- поканвам / покания [10] invite
- покрай [10] because of
- покрив [3] roof
- полé [15] field, plain ; софийското полé [15] the plain around Sofia
- полéзен [8] useful ; полéзно за здравето [8] good for you [for one's health] ; мога ли с нещо да бéда полéзен? [13] can I help in some way?
- полéза [12] use, advantage ; каквá е ползата [12] what's the use
- поливам / полéя [13] pour ; елá да ти полéя [13] let me pour water over your hands ; поливам цветята [13] water the flowers
- половин(а) [6] half
- полунóщ [9] midnight
- получáвам / полúча (-иш) [8] receive, get
- помáгам / помóгна [7] help
- помислям / помисля [12] think about
- помóлвам / помóля [13] beg, ask
- помня [13] remember
- помощ, -тá [9] help
- понасям / понесá [14] carry off; sustain, endure ; понасям обéда [14] bear/sustain an insult
- поне [9] at least
- понеделник [9] Monday
- понякога [8] sometimes
- попитвам / попитам [14] ask, inquire
- попитвам се / попитам се [13] ask oneself, wonder
- поприказвам [11] have a chat
- популярен [12] popular
- попявам / попея [11] sing a little
- поразхóждам / поразхóдя [11] take for a brief stroll
- пораствам / порáсна [14] grow up
- портокал [10] orange
- портокалов [10] orange (adj.)
- порция [7] portion, serving
- поръчвам / поръчам [4] order
- посáждам / посадя [8] seat, plant
- посещáвам / посетя [11] visit
- пóсле [2] [6] later, afterwards; then
- последен [6] last ; в последно време [6] lately ; четá до последната бúква [8] read every last word
- посóка [6] direction ; пита́м за посóката [6] ask directions
- посолявам / посоля [9] salt
- посрещам / посрещна [5] meet, greet, entertain
- пóст [10] Lent; fast
- пóстен [10] Lenten, pertaining to fasting
- постоянен [10] constant
- постоянно [10] constantly
- постягам / постéгна [11] tighten, fasten; prepare, fix up
- потичам / потекá (-чеш) [12] start flowing
- потърсвам / потърся [7] look for, seek
- почáквам / почáкам [7] wait
- пóчвам / пóчна [10] begin, start, commence
- почерпвам / почерпя [6] treat someone to ; почерпвам всíчки с по двé [6] treat everyone to two each
- почивам / почи́на [3] [4] rest, go on holiday
- почивам си / почи́на си [8] rest
- почивен [8] rest (adj.) ; почивен дéн [8] day off, holiday
- почивка [3] vacation trip, rest
- почина [8] die
- почитам / почетá [11] read for a bit
- почти [8] almost
- почувствувам (or почувствам) [14] have the feeling, realize, become aware
- пóща [3] mail, post office
- пóщаджия, -ийка [10] letter carrier, postman
- пóщенски [10] postal ; пóщенска кутия [10] mailbox
- появявам се / появя се [14] appear
- прав [4] straight, upright ; сто́я прав [4] stand, remain standing
- правило [12] rule ; правилá на пъ́тното движе́ние [12] traffic laws, rules of the road
- п́раво [12] [legal] right ; има́м п́раво [12] have the right ; а́вторско п́раво [12] copyright ; права́та на живóтните [12] animal rights
- правосла́вен [8] Orthodox [religion] (adj.)
- п́равя [3] do, make ; п́равя излет [3] go on an excursion ; п́равя номерá на [8] play dirty tricks on
- п́разен [6] empty
- п́разник [10] holiday; feast
- празну́вам [10] celebrate
- пращам / прáтя [2] [3] [4] send
- преброя́вам / пребро́я [6] count out
- п́ревод [14] translation
- п́реглед [4] examination (medical) ; има́те нúжда от п́реглед [4] you need to be examined
- п́реглеждам / п́регледа́м [8] examine
- п́реден [10] front, anterior



- преди [6] ago  
 преди [6] before; previously; преди  
 н.е. [9] B.C.; преди P.Хр. [9]  
 B.C.  
 преди да [14] before (*relative conjunction*)  
 предизвиквам / предизвикам [10]  
 provoke, defy; cause, evoke, induce  
 предимно [9] primarily  
 предишен [9] previous  
 предлагам / предложа (-иш) [8] proffer,  
 propose  
 предложение [9] proposition, suggestion  
 предпочитам / предпочета [4] prefer  
 представителен [14] representative;  
 personable, distinguished  
 представям / представа [13] present,  
 offer  
 представям си / представа си [13]  
 imagine  
 предстоящ [9] forthcoming, impending  
 през [4] [8] [9] during; through; at intervals  
 ; гледам през прозореца [6] look  
 out the window; през седмица [8]  
 every other week; през деня [9] in  
 the daytime; през нощта [9] at  
 night  
 прекален [13] excessive, unconscionable;  
 прекалено голям [13] way too big  
 прекарвам / прекарам [7] spend  
 преписвам / препиша (-еш) [13] rewrite,  
 copy  
 преподавател (ка) [1] teacher (university  
 level)  
 пресен, прясна [8] fresh  
 пресечка [11] intersection  
 прехвърлям се / прехвърля се [12]  
 transfer; shift  
 преча (-иш) [8] bother  
 при [7] at, by  
 прибирам / прибера [8] gather, collect  
 прибирам се / прибера се [8] arrive  
 home  
 приближавам / приближа (-иш) [14]  
 approach  
 привличам / привлеча (-чеш) [9] attract,  
 draw  
 привързан [11] tied, bound, attached  
 приготвям / приготвя [10] prepare, make  
 ready  
 приемам / приема [10] accept, adopt  
 приказвам [9] talk, converse; say  
 приказка [12] tale, story; chat, talking  
 приключение [14] adventure  
 приличам [10] look like, resemble  
 природа [7] nature  
 пристигам / пристигна [6] arrive  
 притеснявам / притесня [8] worry, cause  
 concern to, embarrass  
 притеснявам се / притесня се [7]  
 worry; не се притеснявай [7] don't  
 worry  
 притъпявам / притъпя [14] blunt, dull;  
 вниманието му се притъпи [14] his  
 attention wandered  
 прическа [12] haircut, hair style  
 приятел (ка) [1] friend  
 приятен [9] pleasant  
 проверявам / проверя [13] check, verify,  
 test  
 програма [8] program  
 продавам / продам (-дадеш) [6] sell  
 продавач (ка) [7] salesperson  
 продължавам / продължа (-иш) [5]  
 continue  
 прозорец (*plural* прозорци) [3] window  
 прозорче [13] small window  
 пролет, -та [9] spring  
 пролетен [13] spring (*adj.*); пролетно  
 равнодънствие [13] vernal equinox  
 променям / променя [11] change, alter  
 променям се / променя се [11] change  
 промяна (*plural* промени) [13] change  
 пропасть, -та [11] abyss, cavern  
 пропускам / пропустина [10] skip, let pass;  
 miss  
 простирам / простра [12] stretch out;  
 простирам дрехи [12] hang clothes  
 out to dry  
 простуда [2] cold (illness)  
 професор [13] professor  
 прохладен [15] cool  
 прочитам / прочета [5] read (to  
 completion)  
 проявявам / проявя [8] appear, show;  
 проявявам интерес към [8] take an  
 interest in  
 пръст (*plural* пръсти) [12] finger, toe  
 прясна *see* пресен  
 птица [7] bird  
 публика [10] public  
 пуканка (*singular rare*) [9] popcorn  
 пускам / пусна [10] let, allow; drop;  
 пускам писмо [10] mail a letter  
 пуст [10] empty; wretched, damned  
 пуша (-иш) [4] smoke  
 пушене [4] smoking  
 пък [11] but, yet, and, while  
 пълен [5] full; plump; пълно копие  
 [14] exact replica  
 пъля [6] fill  
 първенство [10] championship  
 първи [4] first  
 пържа (-иш) [6] fry  
 пържен, -ена [14] fried; пържени  
 филийки [14] French toast

- пържѳла [4] chop, steak ; пържѳла с гарнѳтура [4] steak with the trimmings  
 пъстѳрва [9] trout  
 път (plural пъти) [4] [6] time (instance) ; за първи път съм тѳка [4] this is the first time I've been here  
 път, -ят (plural пътища) [6] [8] way, path, road ; дълъг път [6] a long way [to go] ; ймам 6 часа път [6] have 6 hours to go ; по пътя [8] along the way  
 пътѳка [11] [foot]path  
 пътѳн [12] road (adj.), traveling ; правилá на пътното движение [12] traffic laws, rules of the road  
 пътѳшествие [11] trip  
 пътѳник [7] traveler  
 пътѳвам [1] [3] travel  
 пътѳване [7] travels, trip
- рабѳта [2] [11] work, job ; на рабѳта съм [4] be at work ; ще свѳрши рабѳта [11] it'll do the job ; ймам си рабѳта [14] have things to do  
 рабѳтен [6] work (adj.) ; рабѳтно време [6] office hours, hours of operation  
 работоспѳсѳбен [9] efficient, productive  
 рабѳтя [4] [11] work, be in operation ; каквѳ рабѳтите? [5] what [kind of] work do you do? ; не рабѳти [11] it's out of order  
 равѳн [15] even, flat; equal  
 равнѳще [15] level, standard, plain ; мѳрското равнѳще [15] sea level  
 равнодѳнствие [13] equinox  
 радвам се [5] rejoice, be happy  
 радио [14] radio ; събщáвам по радиѳто [14] announce on the radio  
 радѳст [10] joy, pleasure  
 радѳстен [5] happy, joyful  
 раждáм / родя [10] bear, give birth to, be fruitful  
 разбѳрам / разберá [1] [3] [4] understand  
 разбѳрам се / разберá се [12] come to an understanding, agree ; разбѳра се [3] of course  
 разбѳране [12] understanding ; ширѳко разбѳране [12] liberal interpretation  
 развалѳн [11] spoiled, rotten  
 развлѳчение [12] amusement  
 разглѳждам / разглѳдам [4] examine, study  
 разговáрям [10] converse
- раздáвам / раздám (-дадѳш) [8] give out, distribute  
 разказ [14] story  
 разказвам / разкáжа (-ѳш) [8] relate, tell  
 разлѳчен [10] different, various ; нáй-разлѳчни нещá [10] all sorts of things  
 разминавам се / размѳна се [15] pass each other, blow over  
 разплáквам се / разплáча се (-ѳш) [14] burst into tears  
 разпѳзнавам / разпѳзнáя [8] distinguish, discern  
 разпрáвям / разпрáвя [12] tell, relate ; разпрáвям вѳц [12] tell a joke  
 разрешѳние [13] permission  
 разсмѳивам се / разсмѳя се [14] burst out laughing  
 разсѳрдвам се / разсѳрдя се [14] get angry  
 разѳмен [13] sensible, rational  
 разхѳдка [9] walk, stroll ; извѳждам кѳчетѳ на разхѳдка [9] walk the dog ; разхѳдка из градá [11] city tour  
 разхѳждам / разхѳдя [10] take for a walk  
 разхѳждам се / разхѳдя се [8] walk around, take a walk  
 разчѳтам [12] rely on, count [on] ; мѳжеш да разчѳташ на мѳне [12] you can count on me  
 ракия [2] rakia (strong brandy from fruits)  
 рамо (plural раменá or раменѳ) [12] shoulder  
 ранѳн [13] early  
 ранѳ [9] early ; ранѳ-ранѳ [14] very early ; пѳ-ранѳ [14] before, earlier; "used to..."  
 реваншѳрам се [5] make up, return a favor ; с нѳщо да се реваншѳрам [5] make [it] up with/by doing something  
 ревер [13] lapel  
 ревѳ (neuter) [13] revue, show ; мѳдно ревѳ [13] fashion show  
 редки see рýдък  
 редѳвен [13] regular, in order  
 редѳвно [13] at regular intervals, regularly  
 редя [12] arrange, put in order ; редя се на опáшка [12] get/wait in line  
 рѳжа (-ѳш) [12] cut, slice  
 режисѳр [12] director  
 рекá (-чѳш) [7] say, utter  
 рекá [9] river  
 ремонтѳрам [2] redo, make repairs  
 репѳблика [14] republic  
 ресторáнт [4] restaurant  
 рецѳпта [6] recipe

## Българо-английски речник

речник [7] dictionary  
 реша (-еш) [13] comb  
 решавам, реша (-иш) [8] [11] solve;  
 decide ; решавам кръстословица [8]  
 do a crossword puzzle ; твърдо  
 решавам [11] firmly resolve  
 риба [9] fish ; ловя риба [9] fish,  
 catch fish ; ходя за риба [9] go  
 fishing  
 рйза [13] shirt, chemise  
 рйлски [8] Rila (*adj.*)  
 рисувам [3] draw  
 рисунка [3] drawing  
 роден [11] one's own, native ; родно  
 място [11] birthplace  
 родител [9] parent  
 роднина [10] relative  
 родя *see* раждам  
 рожден [5] birth (*adj.*) ; рожден ден  
 [5] birthday  
 рождество [9] Christmas ; Рождество  
 Христово [9] Christmas ; преди  
 Р.Хр. [9] B.C. ; след Р.Хр. [9]  
 A.D.  
 рокля [12] dress  
 роман [3] novel  
 ръка (*plural* ръце) [12] hand, arm  
 ръкавица [9] glove  
 рядък, редки [10] rare  
 рядко [10] rarely

207

с [2] [9] with; by ; пътувам с влак [2]  
 travel by train ; с всички сили [9]  
 with all one's strength, full tilt ; с една  
 дума [9] in a word ; с часовé [9]  
 for hours (on end) ; с малко  
 закъснение [14] a little late  
 са [1] are (*3rd plural*) ; *see* съм  
 сакó [13] jacket  
 салáм [11] sausage  
 салáта [4] salad  
 сáм, самá, самó, самй [12] alone, [the]  
 very, by oneself ; самйят аз [12] I  
 myself  
 сáмо [1] only  
 самолёт [11] airplane  
 сáндвич [9] sandwich  
 сармй [6] stuffed cabbage or vine leaves  
 сáтира [5] satire  
 САЩ = Съединените америкáнски щáти  
 [1] USA (United States of America)  
 сбóрник [12] collection  
 сварявам / сваря [5] cook, boil  
 свáт (*or* свáтя) [10] in-law  
 свáтба [10] wedding

свáтбен, -ена [11] wedding (*adj.*) ;  
 свáтбено пътешествие [11]  
 honeymoon  
 свéкър [10] father-in-law (to bride)  
 свекърва [9] mother-in-law (to bride)  
 светóвен [10] world (*adj.*)  
 свéтъл [10] light (*adj.*)  
 свйвам / свйя [13] bend, fold, roll ;  
 свйвам гнездó [13] build a nest  
 свйквам / свйкна [15] get used to, grow  
 accustomed to  
 свободá [7] freedom  
 свободен [2] free ; мýстото е свободно  
 [2] the seat is not taken ; свободен  
 сýм сегá [2] I'm free [not busy] now  
 свóй [10] own (*adj.*)  
 свършвам / свърша (-иш) [6] complete,  
 finish ; ще свърши рáбота [11] it'll  
 do the job  
 свършен, -ена [12] complete, perfect ;  
 мýнало свършено врéме [12] aorist  
 tense ; свършен вйд [12] perfective  
 aspect  
 сгóтвям / сгóтвя [5] cook, make  
 СДС (*pron.* сéдесé) [14] SDS (UDF,  
 Union of Democratic Forces)  
 се [1] verbal particle  
 се [5] oneself (*direct object pronoun*)  
 се [7] oneself, themselves, itself, etc.  
 сéбе си [11] oneself (*reflexive object form*)  
 сегá [1] now ; сегá излйзам [4] I'll  
 go out right away  
 сегáшен [9] present-day, current ;  
 сегáшно врéме [9] present tense  
 сéдем [2] seven  
 седемдесёт [6] seventy  
 седемнайсёт [6] seventeen  
 сéдемстотин [9] seven hundred  
 сéдми [8] seventh  
 сéдмица [6] week  
 сéдна *see* сядам  
 седя [4] sit, be seated ; седя на течéние  
 [4] sit in a drafty place  
 секá (-чéш) [9] cut  
 секретáр (ка) [1] secretary  
 сéло [2] village  
 семéен [10] family, domestic ; тéсен  
 семéен крýг [10] immediate family  
 семейство [11] family  
 септémври [5] September  
 сервйрам [4] serve, have available ; не  
 знáм каквó сервйрат тýка [4] I don't  
 know what they have here  
 сервйтóр (ка) [4] waiter  
 сестрá [10] sister  
 сéщам се / сéтя се [11] recall, come to  
 mind, think of, remember  
 си [1] are (*2nd singular*) ; *see* съм

- си [5] [7] to oneself (*indirect object pronoun*); казвам си [5] say to oneself
- сигурен [6] sure, certain
- сигурно [9] surely, certainly
- сила [7] strength, force
- силен [2] strong; има силен вятър [2] it's very windy, there's a strong wind; валият силни дъждове [12] it's raining heavily
- син (синя, синьо, сини) [8] blue
- син, -ът (*plural* синове) [9] son
- сирене [7] white cheese
- скала [14] rock, cliff
- скачам / скоча (-иш) [9] jump
- скоро [1] soon
- скоро [19] speed
- скоча *see* скачам
- скривам / скрия [13] hide
- скучен [13] boring
- скъсан [14] torn
- слаб [14] weak, thin
- слава [9] glory; слава Бóгу [9] thank God
- слагам / сложа (-иш) [4] put; слагам да легне [5] put [someone] to bed
- сладолед [6] ice cream
- сладкарница [14] sweet shop
- сладко [3] thick sweet preserves
- сладък [3] sweet
- след [6] after; след 15 минути [6] in 15 minutes; след обяд [9] afternoon, after lunch; след Р.Хр. [9] A.D.
- след като [14] after (*relative conjunction*)
- следващ [8] next, following
- следобед [4] afternoon; следобед съм на работа [4] I have to work this afternoon
- следобеден [9] afternoon (*adj.*)
- сливица [12] tonsil
- слизам / слиза [7] get off, go down, descend
- сложен [5] difficult, complex
- служба [14] service, position; в службата [14] at work
- случаен, -айна [12] accidental, chance
- случайно [12] by chance, accidentally
- случай [12] instance; chance; в такъв случай [12] in that case
- слушам [4] listen, obey
- слънце [9] sun; слънцето грее [9] the sun is shining
- слънчев [10] sunny
- сме [1] are (*1st plural*); *see* съм
- сменям / сменя [3] [4] change, replace
- смешен [13] funny, humorous
- смея се [13] laugh
- смисъл [11] sense, meaning; има смисъл [11] it makes sense
- смушавам се / смутя се [13] get confused, be embarrassed
- смъртен [4] mortal
- смятам / сметна [13] reckon, count; смятам (за) [13] consider (to be)
- смях, смехът (*plural* смехове) [11] laughter; умирам от смях [11] burst one's sides/die laughing
- снегове [7] *see* сняг
- снежен [11] snow (*adj.*); снежен човек [11] snowman
- снежинка [10] snowflake
- снимка [6] photograph
- снощен [9] last night's
- снощи [9] yesterday evening, last night
- сняг, снегът (*plural* снегове) [3] [7] snow; бял като сняг [3] white as snow
- собствен, -ена [12] one's own; виждам със собствените си очи [12] see with one's own eyes
- сок [7] juice
- сол, -та [9] salt
- солен [9] salted
- солница [9] salt shaker
- софийски [8] of Sofia; софийското поле [15] the plain around Sofia
- софиянец [14] Sofia resident (male)
- софиянка [14] Sofia resident (female)
- социалистически [14] socialist
- специален [9] special
- спечелвам / спечеля [14] win, gain, earn
- спирам / спра [11] stop
- спирка [7] bus/tram stop; на другата спирка [7] at the next stop
- списание [8] magazine, journal
- спомням си / спомня си [8] recall
- спортен [9] sports (*adj.*)
- споря [13] dispute, contend; не споря [13] don't argue
- спя [4] sleep
- срам, -ът (*plural* срамовете or срамове) [12] shame, modesty; срам ме е [12] I'm ashamed, I'm too shy; не те е срам! [12] you should be ashamed; как не те е срам [12] shame on you
- средá [2] middle
- среден [3] middle (*adj.*)
- средище [9] center
- средновековен [9] medieval
- средновековие [8] Middle Ages
- среща [9] meeting, appointment
- срещам / среща [10] meet
- срещу [12] against, opposite; across from
- сряда [9] Wednesday

ставам / стана [1] [4] [10] get up, stand up; become, happen; be; става течение [1] there's a draft; ставаме много [10] there gets to be a lot of us; синът им стана на четири [10] their son has turned four; ще ти стане топло [11] you'll be/get [too] hot; за какво става дума? [11] what's it about?; стана ми мъчно [13] I had a hard time  
стадион [12] stadium  
стар [7] old; доброто старо време [11] the good old days  
стая [9] room  
сте [1] are (2nd plural); see съм  
стига [3] enough, that's enough; стига с този прозорец [3] enough about that window; стига толкова [10] that's enough  
стигам / стигна [13] reach, arrive at  
стихотворение [3] poem  
сто [5] (a) hundred  
стока [9] goods, commodity  
стомач [12] stomach  
стол [4] chair  
стоп [10] stop-sign, hitchhiking  
стопаджия, -ийка [10] hitchhiker  
стоя [4] [11] stand, be standing; stay (in one place); стои прав [4] stand, remain standing  
страна [6] [7] [15] side; country; part; от всички страни [6] from/on all sides; от ваша страна [15] on your part  
страница [3] page  
страхотен [5] horrible, dreadful, terrifying; страхотна идея [5] [a] terrific idea  
страх, -ът (plural страхове) [12] fear, dread; страх ме е (от) [12] I'm afraid (of)  
страхувам се [14] fear, be afraid of  
страшен [9] terrible, fearful; няма нищо страшно [11] there's nothing to be afraid of  
струвам [4] cost; това колко струва? [4] how much does this cost?; колко струва? [4] how much is it?  
стригам / стресна [11] startle, scare  
стригам се / стресна се [11] be startled, take fright  
студ, -ът (plural студове) [7] cold, chill  
студен [4] cold  
студенина cold, frigidity  
студент (ка) [1] university student  
стълба [11] step, ladder; качвам се по стълбите [11] climb the stairs  
стъпало [12] sole (of the foot)

сурвакар [10] survakar (New Year's wassailer)  
суров [11] severe  
сутрин, -та [9] morning; сутрин, сутринта [9] in the morning; утре сутринта [9] tomorrow morning  
сушен [10] dried  
счупен, -ена [11] broken  
събирам / събера [3] [4] gather, collect  
събличам / съблека (-чеш) [13] undress [someone]  
събличам се / съблека се (-чеш) [13] undress, get undressed  
събота [8] Saturday  
събувам / събуя [13] take [something] off [someone's] foot  
събувам се / събуя се [13] take [something] off one's foot  
събуждам / събудя [11] wake  
събуждам се / събудя се [11] wake up, awaken  
съвет [10] advice  
съветвам [5] advise  
съвпадам / съвпадна [10] coincide, concur  
съвсем [5] completely; съвсем навреме [5] at exactly the right moment; женени сме съвсем отскоро [11] we've just gotten married  
съгласен [12] in agreement  
съжаление [1] pity; за съжаление [1] unfortunately  
съжالياвам / съжاليا [8] regret, be sorry  
съкровище [13] treasure  
сълза (plural сълзи or сълзи) [12] tear (from the eye)  
съм [1] am (1st singular); to be (citation form)  
сън (plural сънища) [8] dream  
сън, -ят [8] sleep  
сънувам [6] dream; сънувам кошмари [6] have nightmares  
съобщавам / съобщя [5] announce, inform  
съобщение [5] announcement; съобщение за колет [5] postal notice (for a package)  
съпруг, съпруга [3] [10] spouse  
сърбй (3rd person only) [12] itch  
сърдечен [2] hearty  
сърна [8] deer, doe  
сърце [10] heart; пожелавам от сърце [10] send heartfelt wishes  
със - с [7] with  
съсед (ка) [5] neighbor  
състои се [14] consist of; take place  
същ [3] same; същото [4] the same thing

също [1] also  
 съюз [14] union  
 сядам / седна [4] sit down, take a seat ;  
 седнете, господине! [4] have a seat,  
 sir!  
 та [13] and; so that  
 тази [3] this (*feminine*)  
 така [4] that way, like that ; как така  
 [11] how is it that; how can that be  
 такси (*neuter*) [14] taxi  
 такъв (такава, такóва, такива) [11]  
 such ; такива неща [11] such  
 things  
 там [4] there  
 таралéж [9] hedgehog  
 таратор [6] yogurt and cucumber soup  
 татко (*plural* татковци) [10] Dad  
 тача (-иш) [13] respect  
 тая [11] this (*variant of тази*)  
 тво́й [8] your, yours (*singular*)  
 твърд [11] hard, firm, steadfast  
 твърдо [11] firmly, staunchly ; твърдо  
 решавам [11] firmly resolve  
 те [5] you (*direct object pronoun*)  
 те́ [1] they  
 теа́тър (*plural* теа́три) [6] theater  
 тебе́ [10] you (*direct object pronoun*)  
 те́жък [2] heavy  
 те́зи [3] these  
 тека́ (-чеш) [9] flow  
 телеви́зия [6] television  
 телефо́н [5] telephone ; на телефо́на  
 съм [5] be [talking] on the phone  
 телефо́нен [13] telephone (*adj.*)  
 те́нджера [6] (cooking) pot  
 те́нис [13] tennis  
 те́сен, тя́сна [2] tight, cramped, narrow ;  
 те́сен семе́ен крѳг [10] immediate  
 family  
 тетра́дка [7] notebook  
 те́хен, тяхна [8] their, theirs  
 те́хника [12] technology  
 те́хникум [3] technical high school  
 течéние [1] current, draft ; ста́ва  
 течéние [1] there's a draft  
 ти́ [1] you (*singular, familiar*)  
 ти [7] [to] you (*indirect object pronoun*)  
 ти́п [7] type  
 типичен [3] typical  
 ти́чам [8] run  
 тия́ [11] these (*variant of те́зи*)  
 то́ [11] then (*particle*) ; и то́ [11] at  
 that  
 то́ [1] it (*rarely, he or she*)

това́ [2] [3] this (*neuter*) ; това́ не е  
 ли шише́? [2] isn't that a bottle? ;  
 това́ е [13] that's that  
 тога́ва [4] then, in that case; at that  
 point ; пий една́ би́ра тога́ва [4]  
 have a beer, then  
 то́зи [3] this (*masculine*)  
 то́й [1] he, it  
 току́-що [14] just now  
 то́лкова (or то́лкоз) [4] so much, so  
 many, to such a degree  
 то́пка [8] ball  
 то́пъл [2] warm  
 то́рба [11] bag, sack  
 то́то [14] lottery, pool  
 то́чен [6] exact, precise  
 то́чно [6] [12] just, exactly  
 то́я [11] this (*variant of то́зи*)  
 тра́кам [13] rattle  
 трамва́ен, -айна [7] tram (*adj.*)  
 трамва́й [2] tram  
 треса́ [12] shake ; тресе́ ме [12]  
 I've got the shakes; I've got a fever  
 тре́ти [8] third  
 третѳрам [8] treat  
 три́ [2] three  
 три́йсет (or три́десет) [6] thirty  
 три́ма [6] three (*masculine animate*)  
 три́найсет [6] thirteen  
 три́ста [9] three hundred  
 тротоа́р [14] sidewalk  
 тру́ден [5] difficult  
 трѳгвам / трѳгна́ [1] [4] set out, leave ;  
 трѳгвам на учѳлище́ [5] start school  
 трѳбва́ (*3rd person only*) [12] must,  
 should ; то́й трѳбва́ да до́йде [12]  
 he needs to come  
 трѳбва́м [12] be necessary to ; трѳбва́  
 му адвокѳт [12] he needs a lawyer  
 ту́й [11] this (*variant form of това́*)  
 ту́к (or ту́ка) [2] here (*location*)  
 тури́ст [8] tourist  
 ту́рци [6] Turks (*plural of ту́рчин*)  
 турши́я [10] pickles; pickled vegetables  
 тѳ́й [11] thus (*variant of така́*)  
 тѳ́кмо [10] just, exactly; only ; тѳ́кмо  
 сега́ [10] just this minute  
 търго́вец [9] merchant  
 търпели́в [3] patient (*adj.*)  
 те́рся [7] seek, look for  
 те́ст [10] father-in-law (to husband)  
 те́ща [10] mother-in-law (to husband)  
 те́я [1] she, it  
 те́ях [10] them (*direct object pronoun*)



# Българо-английски речник

у [10] at the home of ; у дома [10] at home, at one's house  
убеждавам / убедя [11] persuade ;  
убеждавам [14] try to convince  
убедя [14] succeed in convincing  
удобен [11] convenient, comfortable  
ужас [14] horror  
ужасен [12] terrible  
улица [3] street  
умен [10] smart, intelligent  
умирам / умря [11] die ; умирам от смях [11] die laughing, die from laughter  
уморен [8] tired  
уморявам се / уморя се [12] get tired, become exhausted  
университет [7] university  
университетски [12] university (adj.)  
уреджам / уредя [9] arrange, settle  
урок [5] lesson  
усилено [3] intensively  
успех [5] success ; успех на изпита [5] good luck on the test  
успявам / успея [8] succeed, manage to  
уста [12] mouth  
уста [12] lip  
устроявам / устроя [13] arrange, organize  
утре [4] tomorrow ; утре вечер [9] tomorrow evening ; утре сутринта [9] tomorrow morning  
утрешен [9] tomorrow's  
утринен [9] morning (adj.)  
утро [9] morning ; добро утро [9] good morning  
ухó (plural уши) [12] ear  
уча (-иш) [5] learn, teach  
учебник [2] textbook, manual  
ученик [7] student, pupil  
ученичка [7] female student or pupil  
училище (plural училища) [5] [6] school ; тръгвам на училище [5] start school  
училищен [10] school (adj.) ; училищен звънец [10] school bell  
учител (ка) [1] teacher (up to 12th grade)  
уши see ухó

фанелка (or фланелка) [14] sweatshirt, T-shirt  
февруари [9] February  
фестивал [5] festival  
филийка [14] little slice ; пържени филийки [14] French toast  
филия [14] slice  
филм (plural филми) [8] film, movie  
фланелка see фанелка

фотоапарат [5] camera  
фурор [13] furor ; предизвиквам фурор [13] cause a ruckus  
футбол [10] soccer

хазайка [15] landlady  
хайде [3] come on, let's ; хайде по една глътка! [3] [come on,] let's each have a drink! ; хайде да се чукнем [11] let's have a toast  
хамстер [9] hamster  
хапвам / хапна [15] eat, have a bite  
харесвам / харесам [7] [12] like  
хартия [8] paper  
хващам / хвана [9] grasp, seize, catch  
хем (хем ... хем) [12] and; both... and...; not only..., but...  
хиляда (plural хиляди) [9] thousand  
хладилник [7] refrigerator  
хлапак [14] kid ; но се появи онзи хлапак [14] and then this kid appeared  
хляб [5] bread ; иди за хляб! [5] go buy some bread!  
ходя [6] go ; ходя на кино [6] go to the movies ; ходя на училище [6] go to school ; ходя за риба [9] go fishing ; ходя пеша [9] go on foot, walk (not ride) ; ходя бос [13] go barefoot  
хора [4] people  
хотел [9] hotel  
храня [8] feed, nourish  
христов [9] Christ's ; Рождество Христово [9] Christmas ; преди Р.Хр. [9] B.C.  
хубав [2] fine, nice, beautiful, pretty ; всичко хубаво [2] all the best  
хубавица [5] beauty  
хумор [5] humor

цар, -ят (plural царé) [8] tsar, emperor  
цвете (plural цветя) [6] flower  
цветен [3] colored  
целувам / целуна [5] kiss  
цена [12] price ; на всяка цена [12] at any price, at all costs, absolutely  
централен [12] central  
център (plural центрове) [7] center  
цигара [4] cigarette  
цирк [6] circus  
църква [3] church  
цъфтя [9] bloom  
цял, цели [7] whole, entire

ч. = часът, часá [9]  
 чадър (plural чадъри) [12] umbrella  
 чаен, чаена (or чайна) [7] tea (adj.)  
 чай (plural чае́е) [7] tea  
 чайник [7] teapot  
 чака́лня [15] waiting room  
 ча́кам [3] await, wait, wait for  
 ча́нта [2] bag, briefcase  
 ча́с, -ът, 2 ча́са (plural часове́) [6] [7]  
 hour; class; ко́лко е ча́сът? [6]  
 what time is it?; в ко́лко ча́са? [6]  
 at what time?; в 1 ч. [6] at 1:00  
 часо́вник [7] watch, clock  
 ча́ша [3] glass, cup  
 че [3] that (subordinate conjunction)  
 че́йндж [10] currency exchange office  
 че́йнчаджия, -ийка [10] unofficial money  
 changer  
 че́ло (or чело́) [12] forehead  
 червѐн [3] red  
 червó [12] intestine  
 че́рен [11] black; че́рен дрóб [12]  
 liver  
 черѐша [12] cherry  
 че́рпя [4] treat; у́тре че́рпя аз [4]  
 it's my treat tomorrow  
 че́ст [3] frequent  
 че́стен [12] honorable, honest; че́стна  
 ду́ма [12] word of honor  
 че́стът [10] happy (in greeting);  
 че́стито [11] congratulations!;  
 че́стита Но́ва Годѝна [10] happy  
 New Year; че́стът пра́зник [11]  
 happy holiday; че́стът ро́ждѐн де́н  
 [11] happy birthday  
 че́стѝтка [10] greeting card  
 че́сто [3] often  
 че́сън [6] garlic  
 че́та [3] read  
 че́твърт, -та́ [11] quarter  
 че́твърти [8] fourth  
 че́твъртък [9] Thursday  
 че́тен [11] even-numbered  
 че́тири [6] four  
 че́тиридесет or че́тирийсет [6] forty  
 че́тирина́йсет [6] fourteen  
 че́тирийма [6] four (masculine animate)  
 че́тиристотин [9] four hundred  
 чий, чия, чи́е, чий [8] whose  
 (interrogative)  
 числó [14] number; позна́вам числó  
 [14] pick/guess a number  
 чи́ст [4] clean, pure  
 чи́чко [6] uncle (diminutive)  
 чи́чо (plural чи́човци) [10] uncle (father's  
 brother)  
 чове́к [4] man, person  
 чове́че [13] dwarf

чу́вам / чу́я [10] hear, listen  
 чу́вствувам се (or чу́ствам се) [13] feel  
 чудѐсен [2] marvelous, wonderful  
 чу́дя се [5] wonder  
 чужби́на [12] abroad; всѝчки са по  
 чужби́на [12] they've all gone abroad  
 чу́жд [8] foreign, alien  
 чуждене́ц [3] foreigner, stranger  
 чужденка́ [3] foreigner, stranger (female)  
 чу́квам / чу́кна [11] knock, clink (once);  
 чу́кам на дървó [11] knock on wood  
 чу́кам се / чу́кна се [11] clink glasses,  
 toast to; ха́йде да се чу́кнем [11]  
 let's have a toast  
 чу́шка [6] pepper (vegetable)

шампа́нско [11] champagne  
 ша́пка [5] hat  
 шейсе́т (or шестдесе́т) [6] sixty  
 ше́ст [6] six  
 ше́ствие [12] procession, train  
 шестдесе́т or шейсе́т [6] sixty  
 ше́сти [8] sixth  
 шестѝ́ма [6] six (masculine animate)  
 шестѝ́ца [10] "6" (top mark in school)  
 шестна́йсет [6] sixteen  
 ше́стстотин [9] six hundred  
 ше́там [10] do housework; be active  
 ширóк [12] wide, broad; ширóко  
 разби́ране [12] liberal interpretation  
 шише́ [2] bottle  
 ши́я [12] neck  
 шка́ф [6] cupboard  
 шно́ркел [14] snorkel  
 шокола́д [5] chocolate  
 шо́пски [4] of the "Shope" area near  
 Sofia; шо́пска сала́та [4] "Shope  
 salad"  
 шу́м [6] noise; вдѝгам шу́м [6]  
 make noise  
 шу́мен [10] noisy  
 шу́нка [4] ham; омле́т с шу́нка [4]  
 ham omelet

ща́ [7] want; ще́ не ще́ [7] whether  
 one wants or not  
 ща́т [1] state; Ща́тите [1] the States  
 щастли́в [12] happy  
 ще́ [7] will (future particle)  
 що́ [8] what  
 щóм [11] as soon as, since, as, if, once  
 щърке́л [13] stork



## Българо-английски речник

Ъгъл (*plural* Ъгли) [14] corner ; зад  
Ъгъла [14] around the corner

4

Юг [13] south  
Юли [2] July  
Юмрук [12] fist  
Юни [9] June

13

Я [5] her (*object pronoun*)  
Я [6] (*imperative particle*) ; Я направете  
място [6] come on, make space  
Ябълка [6] apple  
Явен [11] open, obvious  
Явно [11] clearly  
Ягода [11] strawberry  
Яд [12] anger ; Яд ме е (на) [12] I'm  
angry (at)  
Ядене [9] food, meal; dish  
Яйце (*plural* яйца) [11] egg  
Яке [13] jacket  
Ям (ядеш) [9] eat  
Януари [8] January  
Ясен [11] clear ; Ясно ми е [11]  
I get it, it's clear

## **CUMULATIVE GLOSSARY**

### **(PART 2)**

#### **English - Bulgarian**

The following pages contain a brief English-Bulgarian glossary. All words contained in the lesson glossaries are to be found here, indexed to the lesson in which the word appears in a glossary listing. Very few idioms are included in this glossary, however.

Grammatical information in this listing is likewise limited: only the part of speech is denoted (noun, verb, adjective and the like). Information necessary for correct usage in Bulgarian (conjugation type, plural formation, gender, etc.) is found in the Bulgarian-English glossary and in the lessons themselves. The purpose of this glossary is to aid the student in locating the section of the textbook where the word in question is introduced.

Neither of the two glossaries in this book is meant to function as a dictionary, as they are limited only to words used in volume 1 of this textbook (in very exceptional cases, words introduced in volume 2 of this textbook have been included). Students should acquire a standard dictionary as soon as they are able, and learn to use it.



## English-Bulgarian Glossary

- A.D. от н.е. [9]; след Р.Хр. [9]  
 abdomen корем [12]  
 abroad чужбина [12]  
 about по [7]; наоколо [9]; за [10]  
 above над [15]; (from) above отгоре [11]  
 absolutely [at all costs] на всяка цена [12]; [by all means] непременно [13]  
 abyss пропаст [11]  
 accept приемам / приема [10]  
 accidental случаен [12]  
 accompany изпращам / изпратя [8]  
 according to по [5]  
 acquaint with запознавам / запозная [14]  
 acquaintance познат [8]; познайник, познайница [13]  
 across from срещу [12]  
 actor актьор [14]  
 addition допълнение [8]  
 address (n.) адрес [9]  
 adorn окичвам / окича [13]  
 adult възрастен [4]; adults големите [4]  
 advantage полза [12]  
 adventure приключение [14]  
 advice съвет [10]  
 advise съветвам [5]  
 aerobics аеробика [8]  
 after след [6]; след като [14]  
 afternoon следобед [4]  
 afternoon (adj.) следобеден [9]  
 afterwards после [2]  
 again отново [2]; пак [9]  
 against срещу [12]  
 ago преди [6]  
 agree разбирам се / разбера се [12]; in agreement съгласен [12]  
 aha аха [5]  
 ahead напред [14]  
 air въздух [4]  
 airplane самолет [11]  
 album албум [9]  
 alcohol алкохол [2]  
 alien чужд [8]  
 alive жив [11]  
 all, in all всичко [2] [6]; all the best всичко хубаво [2]; all sorts (of things) най-различни (неща) [10]  
 allow позволявам / позволя [6]; пускам / пусна [10]  
 almost почти [8]  
 alone сам, сама, само, сами [12]  
 along по [5]  
 already вече [3]  
 also и [1]; също [1]  
 although макар че [14]  
 always винаги [4]; все [10]  
 am съм [1]  
 amazing изумителен [13]  
 American [person] американец [3]; американка [3]  
 American (adj.) американски [8]  
 among между [12]  
 amusement развлечение [12]  
 amusing забавен [11]  
 and а [1]; и [1]; пък [11]; та [13]  
 anger яд [12]  
 animal животно [8]; small animal животинче [13]  
 animal rights правата на животните [12]  
 ankle глезен [12]  
 anniversary годишнина [10]  
 announce съобщавам / съобщя [5]  
 announcement съобщение [5]  
 annual годишен [9]  
 another друг [2]  
 answer (n.) отговор [7]  
 answer (v.) отговарям / отговоря [10]  
 anterior преден [10]  
 aorist [tense] минало свършено време [12]  
 apartment апартамент [8]; квартира [14]  
 apartment building блок [8]  
 apparatus апарат [5]  
 apparently като че ли [14]  
 appear изглеждам [4]; проявявам / проявя [8]; появявам се / появя се [14]  
 appearance вид [11]  
 appetite апетит [9]  
 apple ябълка [6]  
 appointment среща [9]  
 approach (v.) приближавам / приближа [14]  
 April април [9]  
 apropos апропо [13]  
 Arab (adj.) арабски [11]  
 archaeologist археолог [3]  
 architecture архитектура [7]  
 are си [1] (2sg); сме [1] (1pl); сте [1] (2pl); са [1] (3pl)  
 aromatic ароматен [10]  
 around из [11]  
 arrange нареждам / наредя [6]; уреждам / уредя [9]; устройвам / устрой [13]; put in order редя [12]  
 arrive пристигам / пристигна [6]; стигам / стигна [13]  
 arrive home прибирам се / прибера се [8]  
 arm ръка [12]  
 army армия [12]  
 as като [3] [6]; както [9]; щом [11]  
 as if като че ли [14]  
 as soon as щом [11]  
 ascend качвам се / кача се [7]

## English-Bulgarian Glossary

ask *пита́м* [4]; *помо́лвам* / *помо́ля* [13]; *попи́твам* / *попи́там* [14]  
ask for *пои́сквам* / *пои́скам* [12]  
ask oneself *попи́твам се* / *попи́там се* [13]  
aspect *ви́д* [11]  
aspirin *аспири́н* [12]  
astounding *изуми́телен* [13]  
at *на* [2] [3]; *при* [7]  
at all *изо́бщо* [8]  
at home *вкъ́щи* [6]; *у до́ма* [10]  
at least *по́не* [9]; *мака́р* [14]  
at present *засега́* [9]  
at that *и то* [11]  
at the beginning *отнача́ло* [14]  
at the home of *у* [10]  
atmosphere *атмосфе́ра* [3]  
attached *приве́рзан* [11]  
attend, pay attention *внима́вам* [6]  
attention *внима́ние* [14]  
attentive *внима́телен* [14]  
attract *привли́чам* / *привлека́* [9]  
August *август* [5]  
aunt *ле́ля* [3]  
authentic *автенти́чен* [13]  
author *автор* [23]  
author's *авторски* [12]  
automobile *кола́* [4]  
autograph *автогра́ф* [13]  
autumn *есе́н* [9]  
await *оча́квам* [7]  
awaken *събу́ждам се* / *събу́дя се* [11]

B.C. *преди́ н.е.* [9]; *преди́ Р.Хр.* [9]  
bachelor *ерге́н* [11]  
back (*n.*) *гръ́б* [12]  
back (*adj.*) *за́ден* [14]  
bad *ло́ш* [3]; *зле́* [13]  
badly *зле́* [13]  
bag *ча́нта* [2]; *торба́* [11]  
baggage *бага́ж* [2]  
bake *пека́* [13]  
balcony *балко́н* [13]  
banitsa *ба́ница* [10]  
banquet *банкéт* [14]  
barefoot *бо́с* [13]  
bark (*v.*) *лая́* [11]  
Baroque *баро́к* [10]  
baroque (*adj.*) *баро́ков* [9]  
bath *ба́ня* [3]  
bathe *къ́пя* [3]; *изкъ́пвам се* / *изкъ́пя се* [14]; *окъ́пвам се* / *окъ́пя се* [14]  
bathing (*adj.*) *ба́нски* [13]  
bathroom *ба́ня* [3]  
be *съм* [1]; *бе́да* [7]

be afraid *бо́я се* [8]; *be frightened* *пла́ша се* [11]; *be afraid of* *страху́вам се* [14]  
be concerned/occupied with *занима́вам се* [11]  
be embarrassed *сму́щавам се* / *сму́тя се* [13]  
be ill *боле́дувам* [10]  
be interested in *интересу́вам се от* [11]  
be necessary *тря́бвам* [12]  
be reflected *огле́ждам се* / *огле́дам се* [14]  
be silent *мълча́* [10]  
be worth *заслужа́вам* / *заслужа́* [11]  
beach *пла́ж* [14]  
beak *клю́н* [13]  
bean *бо́б* [10]  
bear (*n.*) *ме́чка* [29]  
bear (*v.*) *ра́ждам* / *родя́* [10]  
bear cub *мече́* [11]  
beard *брада́* [12]  
beautiful *хубав* [2]  
beauty *хубави́ца* [5]; *красо́та* [18]  
because *защо́то* [3]  
because of *покра́й* [10]  
become *ста́вам* / *ста́на* [10]  
become aware *почу́вствувам* [14]  
bed *легло́* [4]  
beer *би́ра* [4]  
before *преди́* [6]; *по́-ра́но* [14]; *преди́ да* [14]  
beg *помо́лвам* / *помо́ля* [13]  
begin *запо́чвам* / *запо́чна* [6]; *по́чвам* / *по́чна* [10]  
begin to hurt *забо́лява* / *заболи́* [12]  
beginning (*adj.*) *нача́лен* [3]  
behind (*n.*) *за́дник* [12]  
behind (*in back*) *отза́д* [3]  
behind *зад* [13]  
believe *вя́рвам* [7]; *пова́рвам* [8]  
bell *звъне́ц* [5]  
belly *корéм* [12]  
below *под* [3]; *[from] below* *отдо́лу* [11]  
bench *пе́йка* [3]  
bend *зави́вам* / *зави́я* [6]; *сви́вам* / *сви́я* [13]  
besides, in addition *осве́н това́* [4]  
between *между* [12]  
beverage *напи́тка* [4]  
bicycle *велосипе́д* [14]; *колело́* [14]  
big *голя́м* [2]  
bird *пти́ца* [7]  
birth (*adj.*) *рожде́н* [5]  
birthday *рожде́н де́н* [5]  
birthplace *ро́дно мя́сто* [11]  
black *че́рен* [11]  
blade *но́жче* [13]

# English-Bulgarian Glossary

- blood кръв [12]  
 bloom (v.) цъфтя [9]  
 blow духам [1]  
 blow over разминавам се / размина се [15]  
 blue син [8]  
 blunt (v.) притъпявам / притъпя [14]  
 boil варя [3] ; сварявам / сваря [5] ;  
 вря [9]  
 boil over изкипявам / изкипя [14]  
 bone кост [12]  
 book книга [2]  
 booklet книжка [10]  
 bore (v.) омръзвам / омръзна [12]  
 boring скучен [13]  
 bosom гърда [12]  
 botanical ботанически [13]  
 both (...and) и ... и [8] ; хем ... хем [12]  
 bother преча [8]  
 bottle шише [2]  
 bound (adj.) привързан [11]  
 box кутия [10]  
 boy момче [1]  
 brain мозък [12]  
 bravo браво [10]  
 brawler кавгаджия, -ийка [10]  
 bread хляб [5]  
 break (n.) отпусък [2]  
 breakfast закуска [10]  
 breast гърди [12]  
 breath дъх [8]  
 bride булка [10] ; младоженка [10]  
 bridegroom младоженец [10]  
 bridge мост [6]  
 bridge (card game) бридж [14]  
 briefcase чанта [2]  
 briefly накратко [10]  
 bright лъскав [10]  
 bring донсям / донеся [7]  
 bring out изваждам / извадя [14]  
 broad широк [12]  
 broken счупен [11]  
 brother брат [8]  
 bucket кофа [14]  
 build a nest свивам гнездо [13]  
 Bulgarian български [1]  
 Bulgarian [person] българин [3] ;  
 българка [3]  
 burden with questions затрупвам с въпроси [11]  
 burn горя [11]  
 burn up изгарям / изгоря [14]  
 bury under затрупвам / затрупам [11]  
 bus автобус [2]  
 business работа [14]  
 business trip командировка [10]  
 but но [2] ; пък [11] ; ама [12]  
 buy купувам [5]  
 by с [2] ; при [7]  
 by chance случайно [12]  
 Byzantine византийски [8]  
 cabbage зеле [4]  
 call (v.) позвънявам / позвъня [9] ;  
 обаждам се / обадя се [10] ; обаждам  
 се по телефона [11] ; повиквам /  
 повикам [13]  
 call, name наричам / нарека [13]  
 call out извиквам / извикам [13] ;  
 повиквам / повикам [13]  
 camera фотоапарат [5]  
 can (n.) буркан [6]  
 can (v.) консервирам [6]  
 can, be able мога [4] [5]  
 cancel отказвам / откажа [13]  
 candy бонбон [10]  
 canned консервиран [6]  
 capricious капризен [13]  
 car кола [4]  
 car (in a train) вагон [6]  
 card карта [5]  
 cardigan жилетка [12]  
 care for милея [13]  
 carnival (adj.) карнавален [12]  
 carrot морков [4]  
 carry нося [3] ; занасям / занеса [7]  
 carry up качвам / кача [7]  
 cause (n.) повод [13]  
 cat котка [10]  
 catch хващам / хвана [9] ; ловя [9]  
 catch one's breath поемам [си] дъх [8]  
 cavern пропаст [11]  
 celebrate празнувам [10]  
 center център [7] ; средище [9]  
 central централен [12]  
 central heating парно отопление [11]  
 century век [12]  
 certain сигурен [6]  
 certainly сигурно [9]  
 chair стол [4]  
 champagne шампанско [11]  
 championship първенство [10]  
 chance (adj.) случаен [12]  
 change (n.) промяна [13]  
 change (v.) сменям / сменя [3] [4] ;  
 променям / променя [11]  
 chat поприказвам [11]  
 cheap евтин [9]  
 check (v.) проверявам / проверя [13]  
 cheek буза [12]  
 cheer up зарадвам се [12]  
 cheerful бодър [13]  
 cheese [hard yellow] кашкавал [4] ;  
 [soft white] сирене [7]

# English-Bulgarian Glossary

cherry череша [12]  
chest грѣд [12]; гърди [12]  
chief главен [9]  
child дете [1]; малко [4]  
children деца [3]  
children's детински [13]  
chill (*n.*) стѹд [7]; мраз [10]  
chimney комин [13]  
chin брада [12]; брадичка [12]  
chocolate шоколад [5]  
choice избор [7]  
choose избирам / избира [4]  
chop [of meat] пържѳла [4]  
Christ's Христѳв [9]  
Christmas Кѳледа [10]; Рождество  
Христѳва [9]  
Christmas (*adj.*) кѳледен [10]  
Christmas Eve Бѣдни вѣчер [10]  
church цѣрква [3]  
cigarette цигара [4]  
circle кръг [10]  
circular кръгъл [10]  
circus цирк [6]  
city град [6] [7]  
class [grade in school] клас [7]  
class урок [5]; лекция [6]  
classical класически [3]  
clean (*adj.*) чист [4]  
clean up, clean out изчиствам / изчиства  
[14]  
clear (*adj.*) явен [11]  
clear up изяснявам / изясня [14]  
clearly явно [11]  
climate климат [11]  
climb the stairs качвам се по стѣлбите  
[11]  
cliff скала [14]  
clink чѹкам / чѹкна [11]; clink glasses  
чѹкам се / чѹкна се [11]  
clock часовник [7]  
close (*v.*) затварям / затвѳря [3] [4]  
close (*adj.*) близък [10]  
closed затвѳрен [2]  
cloth кѣрпа [13]  
clothing дрѣхи [10]  
coat палтѳ [13]  
coffee кафе [5]  
coffee (*adj.*) кафеен [6]  
coffee spoon кафеена лъжичка [6]  
coin монѣта [10]; парѳ [11]  
coincide съвпадам / съвпадна [10]  
cold (*n.*) стѹд [7]  
cold [illness] простѹда [2]  
cold (*adj.*) студѣн [4]; get/grow cold  
изстивам / изстина [8]  
colleague колега [10]; колежка [10]  
collect събирам / събера [3] [4];  
прибирам / прибера [8]

collection колѣкция [7]; сбѳрник [12]  
color (*n.*) цвят [21]  
color (*v.*) боядисвам [10]  
colored цвѣтен [3]  
comb (*v.*) рѣша [13]  
come дохѳждам / дѳйда [5]; йда [5];  
йдвам [5]; дошѣл [11]  
come, come on настѣпвам / настѣпя [13]  
come to an agreement/understanding  
разбирам се / разбере се [12]  
come to [one's] senses опѳмням се /  
опѳмня се [12]  
come to the phone обѳждам се / обѳдя се  
[12]  
comedy комѣдия [11]  
comfortable удѳбен [11]  
command (*v.*) заповѣдвам / заповѣдам [5]  
commodity стѳка [9]  
common ѳбщ [7]  
compact disk компѳкт дѣск [12]  
compartment купѣ [2]  
complain оплаквам се / оплача се [11]  
complete (*v.*) свѣршвам / свѣрша [6]  
complete (*adj.*) свѣршен [12]  
completely съвсѣм [5]  
complex (*n.*) комплѣкс [8]  
complex (*adj.*) слѳжен [5]  
comrade дрѹгар (ка) [1]  
concur съвпадам / съвпадна [10]  
conductor кондѹктор (ка) [5]  
conference конференция [12]  
congratulations честѣто [11]  
consider смятам [13]  
consist of състоѳ се [14]  
constant постоянен [10]  
constantly всѣ [10]; постоянно [10]  
contend спѳря [13]  
continue продължавам / продължа [5]  
control (*adj.*) контролен [8]  
convenient удѳбен [11]  
convention обичай [13]  
converse (*v.*) приказвам [9];  
разговарям [10]  
convince убѣдя [14]  
cook (*v.*) варѳ [3]; гѳтвя [4];  
сварявам / сварѳ [5]; сгѳтвям /  
сгѳтвя [5]  
cooking (*adj.*) гѳтварски [7]  
cool (*adj.*) прохладен [15]  
copy (*n.*) кѳпие [13]  
copy (*v.*) препѣсвам / препѣша [13]  
copyright ѳвторско прѳво [12]  
corner (*n.*) ѳгъл [14]; around the corner  
зад ѳгъла [14]  
cornfield нѳва [10]  
corridor коридѳр [2]  
cost (*v.*) струвам [4]

## English-Bulgarian Glossary

count (v.) броя [3]; преброявам /  
преброя [6]; смятам / сметна [13]  
count, count on разчитам [12]  
country страна [7]  
cousin братовчед (ка) [2]  
cover up затрупувам / затрупам [11]  
cramped тесен [2]  
crooked крив [3]  
crossword puzzle кръстословица [8]  
cry плача [16]; burst into tears  
разплаквам се / разплача се [14]  
cry, cry out извиквам / извикам [13]  
Cuban кубински [8]  
cucumber краставица  
cuisine кухня [7]  
culinary готварски [7]  
cultural културен [12]  
culture култура [9]  
cup чаша [3]  
cupboard шкаф [6]  
currency exchange office чейндж [10]  
current сегашен [9]  
custom обичай [13]  
customary обичаен [14]  
cut секá [9]; режа [12]

dad татко [10]  
dangerous опасен [4]  
darling (form of address) мило [4]  
daughter дъщеря [10]  
day ден [4] [6]  
day after tomorrow други ден  
day before yesterday онзи ден [9]  
day off почивен ден [8]  
dear (adj.) драг [2] [3]; мил [4]  
December декември [9]  
decide решавам / реша [11]  
declaim декламирам [7]  
decorate окичвам / окича [13]  
deer елен [8]; сърна [8]  
defense защита [12]  
defy предизвиквам / предизвикам [10]  
delay (n.) закъснение [14]  
delicious вкусен [6]  
delight възторг [10]  
democracy демокрация [13]  
democratic демократически [14]  
dentist зъболекар [12]  
depart отпътувам [7]; заминавам /  
замйна [9]  
depend завися [14]  
descend сплизам / сляза [7]  
describe описвам / опиша [7]  
deserve заслужавам / заслужа [11]  
desire (n.) воля [12]; желание [14]  
desire (v.) желая [7]

dessert десерт [6]  
detailed подробен [13]  
diary дневник [10]  
dictate диктувам [14]  
dictionary речник [7]  
die почива [8]; умирам / умра [11]  
different различен [10]  
difficult сложен [5]; труден [5];  
мъчен [13]  
dig (v.) копая [10]  
dill копър [6]  
direct (adj.) директен [8]  
direction посока [6]  
director режисьор [12]; директор [13]  
dirty мръсен [9]  
disappear изчезвам / изчезна [10]  
discern разпознавам / разпозна [8]  
dish (n.) гозба [5]  
distinguish разпознавам / разпозна [8]  
distinguished представителен [14]  
dispute (n.) кавга [10]  
dispute (v.) споря [13]  
distribute раздавам / разда [8]  
district край [8]; квартал [9]  
do права [3]; напращам / напраща [6]  
do (housework) busily шетам [10]  
do laundry изпирам / изпера [12]  
doctor лекар [1]  
doe сърна [8]  
dog куче [4]  
doll кукла [13]  
domestic семеен [10]  
door врата [2]  
down долу [11]; надолу [11]  
down, along по [5]  
draft (n.) течение [1]; there's getting to  
be a draft става течение [1]  
draw рисувам [3]; привличам /  
привлека [9]  
drawing рисунка [3]  
dread (n.) страх [12]  
dreadful страховътен [5]  
dream (n.) сън [8]  
dream (v.) сънувам  
drench измъкрям / измъкря [12]  
dress (n.) рокля [12]  
dress (v.) обличам / облека [13];  
обличам се / облека се [13]  
dress up издокарвам се / издокарам се  
[14]  
dressed облечен [14]  
dried сушен [10]  
drink (n.) напитка [4]  
drink (v.) пия [3]  
drink up изпирам / изпия [5]  
drip (v.) капя [10]  
drive карам [6]  
drive in вкарвам / вкарам [12]

## English-Bulgarian Glossary

driver's license книжка [10]  
 drop (v.) изпускам / изпусна [7] ;  
     пускам / пусна [10]  
 drunkard пияница [10]  
 dry (v.) избърсвам / избърша [13]  
 dull (v.) притъпявам / притъпя [14]  
 during през [4]  
 duty дежурство [10]  
 dwarf човече [13]  
 dye боядисвам [10]

each (distributive) по [3]  
 ear ухо [12]  
 earlier по-рано [14]  
 early (adj.) ранен [13]  
 early (adv.) рано [9]  
 earn спечелвам / спечеля [14]  
 easy лесен [6] ; лек [9]  
 eat ям [9] ; изяждам / изям [9] ;  
     хапвам / хапна [15]  
 eat breakfast закусявам / закуся [11]  
 eat dinner вечерям [9]  
 eat lunch обядвам [17]  
 eat one's fill наядвам се / наям се [9]  
 education образование [3]  
 effective ефектен [5]  
 effendi [sir] ефенди [1]  
 efficient работоспособен [9]  
 egg яйце [11]  
 eight осем [6]  
 eight hundred осемстотин [9]  
 eighteen осемнайсет [6]  
 eighteenth осемнайсети [8]  
 eighth осми [8]  
 eighty осемдесет [6]  
 either...or или ... или [8]  
 elbow лакът [8]  
 elegant елегантен [5]  
 elementary начален [3]  
 elevator асансьор [11]  
 eleven единайсет [6]  
 embassy притеснявам / притесня [8]  
 emperor цар [8]  
 empty (adj.) празен [6] ; пуст [10]  
 end (n.) край [7]  
 endure издържам / издържа [7] ;  
     понасям / понесá [14]  
 engineer инженер [14]  
 English английски [2]  
 Englishman англичанин [3]  
 Englishwoman англичанка [3]  
 enough, that's enough стига [3]  
 enough (adj.) достатъчен [7]  
 enrapture предизвиквам възторг у [10]  
 enter влизам / вляза [4]  
 entertain посрещам / посрещна [5]

entire цял [7]  
 entrance вход [8]  
 entryway коридор [2]  
 equinox равнодънствие [13]  
 equipment апарат [5]  
 era ера [9]  
 err греша [7]  
 especially особено [8]  
 European европейец [8]  
 eve of навечерие [10]  
 even (adj.) равен [15]  
 even дори [8] ; даже [11]  
 even numbered четен [11]  
 even though макар че [14]  
 evening вечер [9]  
 evening (adj.) вечерен [9]  
 every всеки, всяка, всяко [6]  
 every other през [8]  
 everything всичко [2]  
 exact точен [6]  
 exactly тъкмо [10]  
 examination [school] изпит [5] ;  
     контролна работа [8] ; контролно  
     [8] ; matriculation exam матура [8]  
 examination [medical] преглед [4]  
 examine разглеждам / разгледам [4] ;  
     преглеждам / прегледам [8] ;  
     оглеждам / огледам [14]  
 example пример [18] ; for example  
     например [8]  
 excerpt, except for освен [4]  
 excessive прекален [13]  
 excursion излет [3] ; екскурзия [8]  
 excuse (n.) извинение [13]  
 excuse (v.) извинявам / извиня [5]  
 exit изход [20]  
 exotic екзотичен [5]  
 exotica, exoticism екзотика [7]  
 expect очаквам [7]  
 extract извличам / извлича [14]  
 eye око [12]  
 eyebrow вежда [12]  
 eyeglasses очила [11]

face лице [12]  
 faithful верен [10]  
 fall (n.) есен [9] ; in the fall наесен [9]  
 fall (v.) падам / падна [7]  
 fall asleep заспивам / заспя [14] ; (of  
     body part) изтръпвам / изтръпна [14]  
 fall silent мълча [10]  
 family семейство [11]  
 family (adj.) семейен [10]  
 famous знаменит [14]  
 fan (n.) любител [8]  
 far, far away далече [4]



# English-Bulgarian Glossary

fashion мода [21]  
 fashion show модно ревю [13]  
 fashionable моден [13]  
 fast (n.) пост [10]  
 fast (adj.) бърз [6]; постен [10]  
 fasten постягам / постягна [11]  
 father баща [8]  
 father-in-law свекър [10]; тъст [10]  
 favorite (adj.) любим [8]  
 fear (n.) страх [12]  
 fear, be afraid боя се [8]; плаша се [11]; страхувам се [14]  
 fearful страшен [9]  
 February февруари [9]  
 feed (v.) храня [8]; нахранвам / нахраня [11]  
 feel чувствавам се (also чувствам се) [13]  
 feel ashamed досрамява ме / досраме ме [13]  
 feel like laughing досмешава ме / досмеша ме [13]  
 feel nauseated гнус ме е [12]  
 festival фестивал [5]  
 fiancé годеник [10]; годеница [10]  
 field (n.) нива [10]; поле [15]  
 fifteen петнайсет [6]  
 fifth пети [8]  
 fifty петдесет [6]  
 fill пълня [6]  
 film (n.) филм [8]  
 finally най-после [1]  
 find (v.) намирам / намеря [5]  
 fine (adj.) хубав [2]  
 fine (adv.) добре [2]  
 finger пръст [12]  
 finish свършвам / свърша [6]  
 fir елха [13]  
 fire огън [7]  
 fire dancer нестиняр [11]  
 fire dancing нестинярство [11]  
 firm твърд [11]  
 first първи [4]  
 fish (n.) риба [9]  
 fish (v.) ловя риба [9]  
 fist юмрук [12]  
 five пет [6]; петима [6]  
 five hundred петстотин [9]  
 fix up постягам / постягна [11]  
 flat (adj.) равен [15]  
 fleece (v.) деря [12]  
 floor под [4]; [of multi-story building] етаж [8]  
 flow (v.) текá [9]  
 flower (n.) цвете [6]  
 flu грип [13]  
 fly, fly up to долитам / долетя [13]  
 fold (v.) свивам / свия [13]  
 folk народ [7]

folk (adj.) народен [5]  
 food ядене [9]  
 fool around мотам се (or мотая се) [14]  
 footwear обувка [13]  
 for за [1] [6]; от [6]; на [7]  
 for, for a short while закрáтко [11]  
 for now засега [9]  
 for the sake of заради [13]  
 forehead чело [12]  
 foreign чужд [8]  
 foreigner чужденец [3]; чужденка [3]  
 forest гора [3]  
 forget забравям / забравя [7]  
 fork (n.) вилица [10]  
 forthcoming предстоящ [9]  
 fortune късмет [10]  
 forty четиридесет, четирийсет [6]  
 forwards напред [14]  
 four четири [6]; четирима [6]  
 four hundred четиристотин [9]  
 fourteen четиринайсет [6]  
 fourth четвърти [8]  
 fowl кокóшка [11]  
 free свободен [2]  
 freedom свобода [7]  
 freeze [with terror] изтръпвам от страх [14]  
 French toast пържени филийки [14]  
 frequent чест [3]  
 fresh прясен [8]  
 Friday петък [9]  
 friend приятел (ка) [1]  
 frighten плаша [9]  
 from от [1]  
 from within отвътре [9]  
 front (adj.) преден [10]  
 frozen леден [8]  
 fruit плод [7]  
 fry пържа [6]  
 full пълен [5]  
 fun забавен [11]  
 funny смешен [13]  
 furor фурор [13]  
 future (adj.) бъдещ [9]  
  
 gain (n.) напредък [9]  
 gain (v.) спечелвам / спечеля [14]  
 game игра [14]; мач [12]  
 garbage боклук [14]  
 garbage can кофа за боклук [14]  
 garden (n.) градина [3]  
 garlic чесън [6]  
 garnish (n.) гарнитурa [4]  
 gather събирам / събера [3] [4];  
 прибирам / прибера [8]; бера [12]  
 gay, lively весел [9]

# English-Bulgarian Glossary

general (*adj.*) общ [7]; in general  
изобщо [8]  
gentle кротък [13]  
Gentlemen господа [3]  
German (*adj.*) германски [14]  
get получавам / получа [8]  
get acquainted запознавам се / запозна [10]  
get angry разсърдвам се / разсърдя се [14]  
get burned изгарям / изгоря [14]  
get confused смущавам се / смутя се [13]  
get dressed обличам се / облека се [13]  
get in line редя се на опашка [12]  
get in touch with обаждам се / обадя се [10]  
get married женя се [11]; оженвам се / оженя се [11]  
get off слизам / слеза [7]  
get on качвам се / кача се [7]  
get ready готвя се [9]  
get sick заболявам / заболя [12]  
get tired уморявам се / уморя се [12]  
get to be ставам / стана [10]  
get to know опознавам / опозна [7]  
get up ставам / стана [4]  
get used to свиквам / свикна [15]  
gift подарък [7]  
girl момиче [1]  
give дай [4]; давам / дам [9]; [a  
present] подарявам / подаря [9]  
give birth to раждам / родя [10]  
give out раздавам / раздам [8]  
give up отстъпвам / отстъпя [8]  
glass чаша [3]  
gloomy намръщен [13]  
glory слава [9]  
glove ръкавица [9]  
go вървя [3]; ида [5]; отивам /  
отиде [5]; ходя [6]; движа се [14]  
go back връщам се / върна се [11]  
go down слизам / слеза [7]  
go in влизам / вляза [4]  
go out излизам / изляза [4]  
go to bed лягам си / легна си [8]  
goal цел [16]  
goal [sports] гол [12]  
God, god бог [9]  
godfather кум [14]  
godmother кума [14]  
golden златен [9]  
good (*adj.*) добър [2]  
good night лека нощ [9]  
good old days доброто старо време [11]  
goodbye довиждане [8]; дочуване [12]  
goods стока [9]  
gorge (*v.*) наляждам се / наям се [9]

grade [in school] клас [7]  
granddaughter внучка [10]  
grandfather дядо [10]  
grandmother баба [8]  
grandson внук [10]  
Granny March Баба Марта [11]  
grape (*adj.*) гроздов [2]; лозов [6]  
grapes грозде [9]  
grasp (*v.*) хващам / хвана [9]  
Greeks гърци [6]  
green зелен [13]  
greeting поздрав [2]  
greeting card честитка [10]  
grow milder омеквам / омекна [11]  
grow up пораствам / порасна [14]  
grownups възрастни [4]  
grumble оплаквам се / оплача се [11]  
guard (*v.*) пазя [8]  
guess познавам / позна [7]  
guest гост [8]  
  
habit навик [11]  
half половин(а) [6]  
hail (*n.*) град [12]  
hail (*v.*) вали град [12]  
hair коса [12]  
haircut прическа [12]  
hall зала [12]  
ham шунка [4]  
hamster хамстер [9]  
hand (*n.*) ръка [12]  
hand to подавам / подам [11]  
handle пипам [9]  
hang закачам / закача [13]  
hang clothes out to dry простирам дрехи [12]  
happen ставам / стана [4]  
happy радостен [5]; весел [9]; [in  
greeting] честит [10]  
Happy New Year честита Нова Година [10]  
hard твърд [11]; мъчен [13]  
hastily на крак [12]  
hat шапка [5]  
have имам [2] [3]  
have a bite хапвам / хапна [15]  
he той [1]; то [1]  
head (*n.*) глава [12]  
health здраве [2]  
healthy здрав [2]  
hear чувам / чуя [10]  
heart сърце [10]; by heart наизуст [4]; send heartfelt wishes пожелавам от сърце [10]  
hearty сърдечен [2]  
heat, heat up грея [9]

## English-Bulgarian Glossary

- heating отопление [11]  
 heavy тежък [2]  
 hedgehog таралеж [9]  
 heel (n.) петá [12]  
 hello добър ден [6]; здравей [6]; алó [12]  
 help (n.) помощ [9]  
 help (v.) помагам / помóгна [7]; help yourself заповядай [5]  
 hen кокóшка [11]  
 hence, from here оттука [5]  
 her (direct object) я [5]; не́я [10]  
 her (indirect object) ѝ [7]; на не́я [10]  
 her, hers не́ин [8]  
 here е́то [2] (pointing); ту́к(а) [2] (location)  
 hey! е́й [1]  
 hi здравей [6]  
 hide (v.) скривам / скрия [13]  
 high висóк [5]  
 high school гимназия [3] (academically oriented); техникум [3] (technical)  
 high school dropout двóйкаджия, -ка [10]  
 him (direct object) го [5]; не́го [7]  
 him (indir. object) му [7]; на не́го [10]  
 hint (v.) подсказвам / подска́жа [13]  
 his не́гов [8]  
 history исто́рия [7]  
 hitch-hiker сто́паджия, -ийка [10]  
 hitch-hiking сто́п [10]  
 hold (v.) държа́ [11]  
 hold dear миле́я [13]  
 holiday почи́вен ден [8]; пра́зник [10]  
 home (n.) до́м [7]  
 home, at home вкѝщи [6]  
 home (adj.) дома́шен [7]  
 homemade дома́шен [2]  
 homework дома́шно [8]  
 honest че́стен [12]  
 honeymoon сва́тбено пътеше́ствие [11]  
 honorable че́стен [12]  
 hope (n.) наде́жда [8]  
 hope (v.) надя́вам се [19]  
 horrible страхо́тен [5]  
 horror у́жас [14]  
 horse ко́н [8]  
 hospital бо́лница [6]  
 hot горещ [11]  
 hotel хоте́л [9]  
 hour ча́с [6] [7]  
 hours of operation рабо́тно вре́ме [6]  
 house кѝща [2]; до́м [7]; small house кѝщичка [7]  
 how ка́к [1]  
 how many ко́лко [4]  
 how much ко́лко [4]  
 however оба́че [7]  
 humor ху́мор [5]  
 humorous сме́шен [13]  
 hundred сто́ [5]  
 hunger гла́д [7]  
 hungry гла́ден [2]; get hungry огладня́вам / огладне́я [4]  
 hurry бѝрзам [4]; побѝрзвам / побѝрзам [7]  
 hurt (v.) боли́ [12]  
 husband съпру́г [3]; мѝж [8]  
 I аз [1]  
 ice (adj.), icy ле́ден [8]  
 ice cream сладолед [6]  
 idea иде́я [5]  
 ideal идеáлен [5]  
 idyll идѝлия [7]  
 idyllic иди́личен [3]  
 if ако [4]; дали́ [11]; щом [11]  
 if only данó [10]  
 imagine преста́вам си / предста́вя си [13]  
 immediate family те́сен семе́ен крѝг [10]  
 immediately ведна́га [4]  
 impatience нетѝрпéние [8]  
 impending предсто́ящ [9]  
 imperfect несвѝршен [12]  
 imperfect (tense) ми́нало несвѝршено време́ [14]  
 imperfective aspect несвѝршен ви́д [12]  
 important ва́жен [8]  
 in в [1]; на [2] [3]; след [6]; въ́в [7]  
 in, inside въ́тре [11]  
 in general въ́обще [11]  
 in-law свáт, свáтя [10]  
 in love влѝобен [14]  
 in order редóвен [13]  
 in order to за да [11]  
 in short накра́тко [10]  
 include вкљю́чвам / вкљю́ча [14]  
 incomparable несравни́м [11]  
 incomplete несвѝршен [12]  
 inconvenient неудо́бен [13]  
 indispensable неoбхо́дим [13]  
 inexpensive е́фтин [9]  
 influenza гри́п [13]  
 inform съoбща́вам / съoбща́ [5]  
 inquire попи́твам / попи́там [14]  
 inscription на́дпис [14]  
 inside въ́тре [11]; (to the) inside навѝ́тре [11]  
 instance пѝ́т [6]; слѝ́чай [12]  
 insult (n.) оби́да [14]  
 intelligent у́мен [10]  
 intend ка́ня се [11]  
 intensively усѝ́лено [3]  
 interest (n.) интерéс [7]

## English-Bulgarian Glossary

interest (v.) интересувам [8]; занимавам [11]  
 interesting интересно [1]; интересен [2]  
 intersection пресечка [11]  
 intestine черво [12]  
 invent измислям / измисля [12]  
 invite каня [10]; поканвам / поканя [10]  
 is е [1] (3sg.); isn't it? нали [3]  
 it то [1]; тя [2]; той [2]  
 itch сърби [12]

Jack Frost Дядо Мраз [10]  
 jacket сакó [13]; яке [13]  
 January януари [8]  
 jar буркан [6]  
 jeans джѝнси [13]  
 job ра́бота [4] [11]  
 joke (n.) ви́ц [12]  
 journalist журналист (ка) [5]  
 joy ра́дост [10]  
 joyful ра́достен [5]  
 juice (n.) со́к [7]  
 July юли [2]  
 jump (v.) ска́чам / ско́ча [9]  
 June юни [9]  
 just тъ́кмо [10]; то́чно [12]  
 just now току́що [14]  
 just this moment тъ́кмо сегá [10]

kebab кеба́бче [6]  
 keep (v.) държа́ [11]  
 key (n.) ключ [7]  
 kid (young person) хлапа́к [14]  
 kilogram килогра́м [6]  
 kind (adj.) любезен [2]  
 king кра́л [8]  
 kiss (v.) целу́вам / целу́на [5]  
 kitchen ку́хня [5]  
 knee (n.) коля́но [12]  
 knife (n.) но́ж [7]  
 knit изплѝтам / изплета́ [12]  
 knock чу́кам / чу́кна [11]  
 know позна́вам / позна́я [1] [3] [7];  
 зна́я [3]; зна́м [4]

ladder стѝлба [11]  
 lady да́ма [3]  
 lake е́зеро [3]  
 lament (v.) опла́квам / опла́ча [11]  
 landlady хазáйка [15]  
 landscape пейза́ж [3]

lapel реве́р [13]  
 large голя́м [2]; е́дър [9]  
 last (adj.) последен [6]  
 last night миналата но́щ [9]; сно́щи [9]  
 last night's сно́щен [9]  
 late къ́сен [4]; be late закъ́снявам /  
 закъ́снѝя [7]  
 lately в последно време [6];  
 напоследѝк [8]  
 later по́сле [2]  
 laugh (v.) сме́я се [13]; burst out  
 laughing разсмѝвам се / разсме́я се  
 [14]  
 laughter сме́х [11]  
 lawyer адво́кат (ка) [2]  
 lead (v.) во́дя [8]; заве́ждам / заведа́  
 [10]  
 lead away изве́ждам / изведá [9]  
 leaf (n.) ли́ст [6]  
 leak (v.) ка́пя [10]  
 learn у́ча [5]; науча́вам / нау́ча [9];  
 науча́вам се / нау́ча се [14]  
 leave (v.) изля́зам / изля́за [4]; трѝгвам  
 / трѝгна [4]; оста́вам / оста́вя [8];  
 замина́вам / замѝна [9]  
 leave behind отмина́вам / отми́на [14]  
 lecture (n.) ле́кция [6]  
 left (adj.) ля́в [11]; [to the] left наля́во  
 [11]; [from the] left отля́во [11]  
 left over оста́нало [9]  
 leg кра́к [8]; нога́ (dialectal, poetic) [12]  
 Lent по́ст [10]  
 Lenten по́стен [10]  
 lesson уро́к [5]  
 let пу́скам / пу́сна [10]  
 let go изпу́скам / изпу́сна [7]  
 let pass пропу́скам / пропу́сна [10]  
 let's ха́йде [3]  
 let's hope дано́ [10]  
 letter писмо́ [8]  
 letter [of alphabet] бу́ква [8]  
 letter carrier поща́джѝя, -ѝйка [10]  
 lev (currency) ле́в [4]  
 level (n.) равни́ще [15]  
 library библиотѝка [5]  
 lie, be lying down лежа́ [4]  
 lie down ля́гам / лега́на [4]  
 life живо́т [9]  
 lift (v.) вдѝгам / вдѝгна [6]  
 light (adj.) ле́к [9]; све́тъя [10]  
 like (v.) обѝчам [2] [3]; харѝсвам /  
 харѝсам [7] [12]  
 like като [3] [6]  
 line опа́шка [11]  
 lip у́стна [12]  
 listen слу́шам [4]  
 little ма́лко [1] [2]  
 live живѝя [3]

# English-Bulgarian Glossary

- live (*adj.*) жив [11]  
lively бодър [13]  
liver черен дроб [12]  
living жив [11]  
loan (*n.*) заем [12]  
loan (*v.*) давам на заем [12]  
lock (*v.*) заключвам / заключа [8]  
logical логичен [12]  
long (*adj.*) дълъг [2]; a long time дълго [8]  
long ago отдавна [6]  
look (*v.*) изглеждам [4]; поглеждам / погледна [14]  
look, look at гледам [4]  
look after гледам [9]; погрижвам се / погрижа се [11]  
look around оглеждам се / огледам се [14]  
look at one's reflection оглеждам се / огледам се [14]  
look for търся [7]  
look like приличам [10]  
lottery тото [14]  
lose губя [14]  
love (*v.*) обичам [3]; любя [13]  
lover любител [8]  
luck късмет [10]  
lunch (*n.*) обед [8]; обяд [9]  
lunch (*adj.*) обеден [9]  
lunchtime обедно време [9]  
lung (бял) дроб [12]
- Ma'am госпожа [1]; кира [1] (*archaic*)  
magazine списание [8]  
magician вълшебник [11]  
make правя [3]; сготвям / сготвя (prepare food) [5]; напращам / напраща [6]  
make up [to someone, for something] реванширам се [5]  
mail (*n.*) поща [3]  
mail [a letter] пукам [писмо] [10]  
mailbox пощенска кутия [10]  
main (*adj.*) главен [9]  
mainly главно [9]  
majority повечето [11]  
male (*adj.*) мъжки [8]  
man човек [4]; мъж [8]; young man момък [13]  
manual учебник [2]  
manner начин [6]  
many много [1], [2]  
many happy returns за много години [11]  
map (*n.*) карта [5]  
March март [1]  
mark (*v.*) белжежа [7]
- marriage брак [10]  
married женен [10]  
marry женя [11]; женя се [11]; оженвам се / оженя се [11]; оженвам / оженя [11]  
marvelous чудесен [2]  
masculine мъжки [8]  
match [sports] мач [12]  
matriculation exam матура [8]  
matter (*n.*) работа [11]  
May май [9]  
maybe може би [9]  
me (*direct object*) ме [4] [5]; мене [10]  
me (*indirect object*) ми [7]; на мене [10]  
meal ядене [9]  
mean (*v.*) знача [1]  
meaning значение [9]; смисъл [11]  
meat месо [6]  
meat (ground) кайма [6]; (grilled/stewed) кебап [13]  
medicine лекарство [8]  
medieval средновековен [9]  
meet (*v.*) посрещам / посрещна [5]; запознавам се / запозная се [10]; срещам / срещна [10]  
meeting среща [9]  
menu меню [4]  
merchant търговец [9]  
meter (*n.*) метър [15]  
middle (*n.*) среда [2]  
middle (*adj.*) среден [3]  
Middle Ages средновековие [8]  
midnight полунощ [9]  
mild мек [15]  
milk (*n.*) мляко [6]  
miliness млечност [10]  
mine мой [8]  
ministry министерство [14]  
minute (*n.*) минута [6]  
mirror (*n.*) огледало [11]  
Miss госпожица [1]  
miss (*v.*) изпускам / изпусна [7]  
mistake (*n.*) грешка [3]  
modesty срам [12]  
Mom мама [2]  
moment момент [5]  
monastery манастир [8]  
Monday понеделник [9]  
money пари [11]  
moneychanger [unofficial] чейнджиджия, -ийка [10]  
month месец [9]  
moon луна [9]  
Moravian моравски [8]  
more повече [7]; once more отново [2]  
more (*comparative degree*) по- [10]

# English-Bulgarian Glossary

more or less горе-долу [11]  
 morning (n.) сутрин [9]; утро [9]  
 morning (adj.) утринен [9]  
 mortal (adj.) смъртен [4]  
 most (superlative degree) най- [10]; the most най-много [10]  
 mother майка [2]  
 mother-in-law свекърва [9]; теща [10]  
 mountain планина [3]  
 mourn оплаквам / оплача [11]  
 mouse мишка [11]  
 mouth (n.) уста [12]  
 move (v.) вървя [3]; движа се [14]  
 movement движение [12]  
 movie филм [8]  
 Mr. господин [1]  
 Mrs. госпожа [1]  
 much много [2]  
 muscle мускул [12]  
 mushroom гъба [4]  
 music музика [5]  
 must трябва [12]  
 mustache мустаци [14]  
 my мой [8]  
 nail [finger or toe] нокът [8]  
 name (n.) име [6]; my name is аз се казвам [1]  
 name (v.) наричам / нарека [13]  
 narrow тесен [2]  
 national народен [5]  
 native (adj.) роден [11]  
 nature природа [7]  
 near до [2]  
 nearby близо [4]  
 necessary необходим [13]; it's not necessary няма нужда [2]  
 neck шия [12]; neck, back of the neck врат [12]; гуша [12]  
 necklace гердан [14]  
 necktie вратовръзка [13]  
 need (n.) нужда [2]  
 need (v.) имам нужда от [4]; трябва [12]  
 neighbor съсед (ка) [5]  
 neither нито [8]; neither...nor ни ... ни [8]; ни [8]  
 nephew племенник [10]  
 nest (n.) гнездо [13]  
 never никога [8]  
 new нов [7]  
 New Year's нова година [10]  
 New Year's (adj.) новододшен [11]  
 New Year's greeting новододшна честитка [11]

newlywed младоженец [10]; младоженка [10]  
 news [a piece of] новина [5]  
 newspaper вестник [6]  
 next (adj.) друг [7]; следващ [8]  
 next (adv.) после [6]  
 next year догодина [7]  
 nice хубав [2]  
 niece племенница [10]  
 night (n.) нощ [9]  
 night (adj.) нощен [9]  
 nightmare кошмар [6]  
 nine девет [6]  
 nine hundred деветстотин [9]  
 nineteen деветнайсет [6]  
 ninety деветдесет [6]  
 ninth девети [8]  
 no не [3]  
 no one (subject) никой [8]  
 no one (object) никого [8]  
 noise шум [6]; make noise вдигам шум [6]  
 noisy шумен [10]  
 none, no kind of никакъв [8]  
 noon (n.) обяд [9]  
 noon (adj.) обеден [9]  
 nose нос [11]  
 not не [1]; not yet още не [3]; not a one нито един [8]  
 not at all никак [8]  
 not have нямам [2]  
 not only...but хем ... хем [12]  
 note (n.) белажка [7]  
 notebook тетрадка [7]  
 nothing нищо [8]; nothing of the sort нищо подобно [8]  
 notice (v.) забелязвам / забелаж [5]  
 nourish храня [8]  
 novel (n.) роман [3]  
 November ноември [9]  
 now сега [1]  
 nowhere никъде [8]  
 number (n.) номер [2] [3] [8]; число [14]  
 obey слушам [4]  
 obvious явен [11]  
 occasion (n.) повод [13]  
 occupy занимавам [11]; заемам / заема [12]  
 occur настъпвам / настъпя [13]; случвам се / случа се [20]  
 October октомври [6]  
 odd numbered нечетен [11]  
 of на [1]; от [4]  
 of course разбира се [3]

# English-Bulgarian Glossary

- offer (v.) поднасям / поднеса [6] ;  
 представям / представя [13]  
 office кабинет [4]  
 often често [3]  
 oil [cooking] олио [6]  
 OK може [4] ; наред [7] ; добре [3]  
 old стар [7] ; how old are you? на  
 колко сте години? [6]  
 older по-голям [10]  
 omelet омлет [4]  
 on на [2]  
 on duty дежурен [10]  
 on foot пеша [9]  
 on the left вляво [11]  
 on the right вдясно [11]  
 once (adv.) веднъж [7]  
 once (conjunction) щом [11]  
 one един [2] [3] ; едно [2] [3] ; една  
 [3]  
 oneself сам, сама, само, сами [12]  
 oneself (direct object) се [5] ; себе си  
 [11]  
 oneself (indirect object) си [5] [7] ; себе  
 си [11]  
 onion лук [6]  
 only (adj.) единствен [11]  
 only (adv.) само [1]  
 open (v.) отварям / отворя [2] [3] [4]  
 open (adj.) отворен [2] ; явен [11]  
 openly открито [13]  
 opera опера [12]  
 opposite срещу [12]  
 or или [3]  
 orange (adj.) портокалов [10]  
 order (v.) поръчвам / поръчам [4] ;  
 заповядвам / заповядам [5]  
 organize организирам [12] ; устройвам /  
 устрой [13]  
 Orthodox [religion] (adj.) православен [8]  
 other друг [2]  
 our, ours наш [8]  
 out вън [11]  
 out of извън [10]  
 outside извън [10], навън [11] ; to the  
 outside навън [11]  
 own (adj.) свой [10] ; собствен [12]
- page (n.) страница [3]  
 pail кофа [14]  
 pain (n.) болка [12]  
 paint (n.) боя [10]  
 paint (v.) боядисвам [10]  
 painter, paint merchant бояджия [10]  
 pair (n.) двойка [13]  
 palate небцѐ [12]  
 pale (adj.) блѐд [11]
- palm [of the hand] длан [12]  
 panic (n.) паника [3]  
 pants панталон(и) [14]  
 paper хартия [8]  
 parcel пакет [5]  
 pardon (n.) извинѐние [13]  
 pardon (v.) извинявам / извиня [5]  
 parent родител [9]  
 parrot папагал [9]  
 part страна [15]  
 particular особѐн [10]  
 party партия [14]  
 pass (v.) минавам / мина [5] ; подавам  
 подам [11]  
 pass by отминавам / отмина [14]  
 pass one another разминавам се / размина  
 се [15]  
 past (adj.) минал [9]  
 path път [8] ; пътека [11]  
 patient (n.) пациент (ка) [4]  
 patient (adj.) търпелив [3]  
 pay (v.) плащам / платя [4]  
 pay attention внимавам [6]  
 pencil молив [2]  
 pendant пискюл [13]  
 people хора [4] ; души [6] ; народ [7]  
 pepper (vegetable) чушка [6]  
 perfective aspect свършен вид [12]  
 permission разрешѐние [13]  
 person човек [4]  
 personable представителен [14]  
 persuade убеждавам / убедя [11]  
 photograph (n.) снимка [6]  
 physician лекар [1]  
 pick (v.) обирам / обера [8] ; бера [12]  
 pick a number познавам число [14]  
 pickles, pickled vegetables туршия [10]  
 picture-book албум [9]  
 pile up затрупвам / затруна [11]  
 pin (v.) забोधам / забодя [13]  
 pitchfork вила [10]  
 pity (n.) съжалѐние [1] ; жалко [11]  
 place (n.) място [2]  
 plain (n.) полѐ [15] ; равнище [15]  
 plan (n.) план [7]  
 plan (v.) каня се [11]  
 plant (v.) посаждам / посадя [8]  
 platform перон [7]  
 play (n.) пиеса [12] ; игра [14]  
 play (v.) играя [5]  
 play around играя си [11]  
 play for a while поигравам / поиграя [10]  
 play tricks on правя номера на [8]  
 playing (n.) игра [14]  
 playmate, playfellow другарче [13]  
 pleasant приятен [9]  
 please моля [4]  
 pleased доволен [6]



# English-Bulgarian Glossary

plunder обирам / оберá [8]  
 poem стихотворение [3]  
 pond езеро [3]  
 pool (lottery) тóто [14]  
 popcorn пуканки [9]  
 popular популярен [12]  
 portion порция [7]  
 position (job) служба [14]  
 (it is) possible може [4]  
 post office поща [3]  
 postal пощенски [10]  
 postcard картичка [3]  
 postman пощаджия, -ийка [10]  
 pot тенджерa [6]  
 pour поливам / полéя [13]  
 precise точен [6]  
 prefer предпочитам / предпочетá [4]  
 preparation подготовка [5]  
 prepare готвя [4]; готвя се [9];  
     приготвям / приготвя [10];  
     постягам / постегна [11];  
     подготвям / подготвя [12]  
 prepared готов [6]  
 present (n.) подарък [7]  
 present (v.) поднасям / поднесá [6];  
     представям / представя [13]  
 present-day сегашен [9]  
 preserve консервирам [6]  
 preserved консервиран [6]  
 preserves [thick sweet] сладко [3]  
 pressure (n.) напрежение [14]  
 pretty хубав [2]  
 previous предишен [9]  
 price цена [12]  
 primarily предимно [9]  
 prince княз [8]  
 prize (n.) награда [13]  
 probably май [12]; навярно [14]  
 procession шествие [12]  
 produce (v.) изваждам / извадя [14]  
 productive работоспособен [9]  
 professor професор [13]  
 program програма [8]  
 progress напредък [9]  
 promise (v.) обещавам / обеща́я [10]  
 prompt подсказвам / подсказá [13]  
 prop up подпирам / подпíра [14]  
 propose предлагам / предложá [8]  
 proposition предложение [9]  
 protect пазя [8]  
 provoke предизвиквам / предизви́кам [10]  
 public публица [10]  
 puppet кукла [13]  
 purchase (v.) купувам [5]  
 push бу́там [6]; ка́рам [6]  
 push in вка́рам / вкарам [12]  
 pushcart количка [7]

put сла́гам / сло́жа [4]; put to bed  
     сла́гам да ле́гне [5]  
 put in order редя́ [12]  
 put on [clothing] обличам / облекá [13];  
     обличам се / облекá се [13] [footwear]  
     обувам се / обуя́ се [13]; обу́вам /  
     обуя́ [13]

quarrel (n.) кавга́ [10]  
 quarrel (v.) ка́рам се [11]  
 quarrelsome person кавгаджия, -ийка [10]  
 quarter (n.) четвърт [11]  
 quarters кварти́ра [14]  
 question (n.) въпрóс [11]  
 queue опáшка [11]  
 quick бърз [6]  
 quiz (n.) контро́лна ра́бота [8];  
     контро́лно [8]

radio ра́дио [14]  
 rag парца́л [14]  
 rain (n.) дъжд [12]  
 rain (v.) валя́ [12]; валя́ дъжд [12]  
 raise (v.) вдига́м / вдигна́ [6]  
 rakia ракия́ [2]  
 rapture (n.) възто́рг [10]  
 rare рядък [10]  
 rarely рядко [10]  
 raspberry мали́на [3]  
 rational разу́мен [13]  
 rattle (v.) тра́кам [13]  
 razorblade но́жче [13]  
 reach пода́вам / подáм [11]; сти́гам /  
     сти́гна [13]  
 read четá [3]; прочи́там / прочетá [5]  
 read for a bit почи́там / почетá [11]  
 ready (adj.) готов [6]  
 real и́стински [8]  
 really найстина́ [2]  
 rear (adj.) за́ден [14]  
 rear end за́дник [12]  
 recall спо́мням си / спо́мня си [8];  
     се́щам се / се́тя се [11]  
 recently отскóро (since recently) [11]  
 receive получа́вам / полúча [8]  
 recipe реце́пта [6]  
 recite декла́мирам [7]  
 reckon смя́там / сме́тна [13]  
 recognize опозна́вам / опозна́я [7]  
 record [phonograph] (n.) плóча [13]  
 recording за́пис [13]  
 red червén [3]  
 redo, repair ремо́нтирам [2]  
 refrigerator хладилник [7]



# English-Bulgarian Glossary

refuse (v.) откáзвам / откáжа [13]  
 regarding по пóвод [13]  
 regret (v.) съжaлявам / съжaля [8]  
 regular редóвен [13]  
 rejoice рáдвам се [5]  
 relate разкáзвам / разкáжа [8] ;  
 разпpáвям / разпpáвя [12]  
 relative (n.) родни́на [10]  
 rely on разчítам [12]  
 remain оста́вам / оста́на [3] [4]  
 remaining оста́нало [9]  
 remember по́мня [13] ; запóмням /  
 запóмня [9] ; сéщам се / сéтя се  
 [11]  
 remind подcéщам / подcéтя [4]  
 renowned знаменíт [14]  
 rent (n.) на́ем [12]  
 rent out да́вам под на́ем [12]  
 repeat, replay (n.) повтopéние [12]  
 repeat (v.) повтáрям / повтóря [12]  
 replace (v.) смéням / смeня́ [3] [4]  
 report (n.) доклáд [12]  
 republic репуб́лика [14]  
 resemble прилíчам [10]  
 residential жiлищен [8] ; residential  
 district жiлищен комплéкс [8]  
 resort (n.) курóрт [11]  
 respect уважáвам [20] ; тáча [13]  
 rest (n.) почiвкa [3]  
 rest (v.) почiвам си / почiна си [8]  
 rest, go on holiday почiвам / почiна [4]  
 rest (adj.) почивен [8]  
 restaurant рeстopáнт [4]  
 restless неспокóбен [4]  
 return връщам / върна [5] ; връщам  
 се / върна се [11]  
 return a favor реванши́рам се [5]  
 revue ревю́ [13]  
 reward (n.) нагpáда [13]  
 rewrite препи́свам / препи́ша [13]  
 rice ори́з [6]  
 rich богáт [7]  
 right (n.) пpáво [12]  
 right (adj.) дéсен [11] ; right, to the right  
 надя́сно [11] ; right, from the right  
 отдя́сно [11]  
 Rila (adj.) рилски [8]  
 ring (v.) звъня́ [5]  
 ring out иззвъня́вам / иззвъня́ [14]  
 ripen зpея́ [9]  
 river рекá [9]  
 road (n.) пýт [6]  
 road (adj.) пýтен [12]  
 rock (n.) кáмък [21] ; скалá [14]  
 roll (v.) свiвам / свiя [13]  
 room стáя [9]  
 rotate въртá се [14]  
 rotten развалéн [11]

round (adj.) кpýгъл [10]  
 round about на́около [9]  
 rub (v.) бърша́ [13]  
 rubbish боклýк [14]  
 rule (n.) пpáвило [12]  
 run (v.) тичам [8]  
 sack (n.) торбá [11]  
 salad салáта [4]  
 salesperson продавáч (ка) [7]  
 salt (n.) сол [9]  
 salt (v.) посоля́вам / посоля́ [9]  
 salt shaker солни́ца [9]  
 same същ [3] ; the same thing същото  
 [4] ; one and the same едiн и същ  
 [10]  
 sandwich сáндвич [9]  
 Santa Claus Дядо Кóледа [10]  
 satire сáтира [5]  
 satisfied доволéн [6]  
 Saturday сýбота [8]  
 sauerkraut кiсело зéле [6]  
 sausage салáм [11]  
 say кáзвам / кáжа [1] [4] ; рекá [7]  
 scare (v.) стрýскам / стрéсна [11] ;  
 стрýскам се / стрéсна се [11]  
 scent (n.) миризмá [11]  
 school (n.) училище́ [5] [6]  
 school (adj.) училищен [10]  
 school bell училищен звъне́ц [10]  
 scold кáрам се [11]  
 score a goal вкарвам гóл [12]  
 scratch (v.) дерá [12]  
 sea (n.) морé [15]  
 sea (adj.) мóрски [15]  
 sea level мóрското равни́ще [15]  
 seasons [of the year] годи́шните времeнá  
 [9]  
 seat (n.) мýсто [2]  
 seat (v.) посáждам / посáдя [8]  
 second (adj.) втóри [8]  
 secretary секретáр (ка) [1]  
 see ви́ждам / ви́дя [3] [4]  
 see off, send off изпpáщам / изпpátя [8]  
 seek търся́ [7] ; потърсвам / потърся́  
 [7]  
 seem изглéждам [4] [6]  
 seize хвáщам / хвáна [9]  
 select (v.) избiрам / избeрá [4]  
 selection избор [7]  
 sell прода́вам / продáм [6]  
 send пpáщам / пpátя [2] [3] [4]  
 sense (n.) смýсл [11]  
 sensible разу́мен [13]  
 sensitive to the cold зимóрничав [11]  
 separate (adj.) отдéлен [3]

# English-Bulgarian Glossary

separately	отдѣлно [2]	sixty	шестдесѣт, шейсѣт [6]
September	септѣмври [5]	size	нóмер [8]
serve	сервирам [4]; поднасям / поднеса [6]	ski resort	зймен курóрт [11]
service	слўжба [14]	skin (n.)	кóжа [12]
serving	пóрция [7]	skin (v.)	дерá [12]
set (v.) [of the sun]	зальзвам / зальза [9]	skip (v.)	пропýскам / пропýсна [10]
set in	настѣпвам / настѣпя [13]	slab	плóча [7]
set out	трѣгвам / трѣгна [4]	sleep (n.)	сѣн [8]
set up	нареждам / наредя [6]	sleep (v.)	спя [4]
settle	урѣждам / уредя [9]	slice (n.)	филия [14]; small slice филийка [14]
seven	сѣдем [2]	slice (v.)	рѣжа [12]
seven hundred	сѣдемстотин [9]	slip out, slip through	изплѣзвам се / изплѣзна се [14]
seventeen	седемнайсѣт [6]	slow	бáвен [3]
seventh	сѣдми [8]	small	мáлѣк [2]
seventy	седемдесѣт [6]	smart (adj.)	ýмен [10]
several	нѣколко [6]	smell (n.)	миризмá [11]
severe	сýров [11]	smoke (n.)	дѣм [4]
shake	тресá [12]	smoke (v.)	пýша [4]
shame (n.)	срám [12]	smoking	пýшене [4]
she	тá [1]; тó [1]	sneeze (v.)	кѣхам (or кѣхвам) / кѣхна [14]
sheet [of paper]	лѣст [4]	snorkel (n.)	шнóрхел [14]
shell [of a snail]	бхлюв [14]	snow (n.)	снѣг [3] [7]
shift (v.)	прехвѣрлям се / прехвѣрля се [12]	snow (v.)	валѣ снѣг [12]
shining	лѣскав [10]	snow (adj.)	снѣжен [11]
shirt	рѣза [13]	snowflake	снежинка [10]
shoe	обýвка [3]	snowman	снѣжен човѣк [11]
shoes	обýща [13]	so many	тóлкова [4]
shoelace	врѣзка [13]	so much	тóлкова [4]
Shope (adj., of the region)	шóпски [4]	so that	та [13]
short	крáтък [9]; кѣс [12]	soak	измóкрям / измóкря [12]
should	трѣбва [12]	soccer	фýтбол [10]
shoulder (n.)	рáмо [12]	socialist	социалистѣчески [14]
shout (v.)	вѣкам [12]	society	обществó [12]
shove (v.)	бýтам [6]	Sofia resident	софиáнец, софиáнка [14]
show (n.)	ревю [13]	Sofia (adj.)	софѣйски [8]
show (v.)	пока́звам / пока́жа [7]; проявѣвам / проявя [8]	soft	мѣк [15]
sick	бóлен [2]	soften	омѣквам / омѣкна [11]
side (n.)	странá [6] [15]	soldier	войнѣк [7]
sidewalk	трóтоáр [14]	sole [of the foot]	стѣпáло [12]
sign (n.)	знáк [9]	solve	решáвам / решá [8]
similar	подóбен [8]	some sort	нѣкакъв [8]
sin (v.)	грешá [7]	somehow	нѣкак [8]
since	от [6]; откáкто [10]; щом [11]	someone	нѣкой [8]
sing	пѣя [11]; изпѣвам / изпѣя [11]; sing a little	something	нѣщо [5]
singer	пѣвѣц	sometime	нѣкога [8]
single	едѣнствен [11]	sometimes	понѣкога [8]
Sir	госпóдин [1]; кѣр [1] (archaic)	somewhere	нѣкѣде [8]
sister	сестрá [10]	son	сѣн [9]
sit	седя [4]	song	пѣсен [9]
sit down	сѣдам / сѣдна [4]	soon	скóро [1]
six	шѣст [6]; шѣстѣма [6]	sound (v.)	звучá [12]
six hundred	шѣстстотин [9]	sour	кѣсел [6]
sixteen	шѣстнайсѣт [6]	south	юг [13]
sixth	шѣсти [8]	speak	говóря [3]
		special	специáлен [9]; осóбен [10]
		spend [time]	прекáрвам / прекáрам [7]

## English-Bulgarian Glossary

- spice (*n.*) подправка [6]  
 spoiled развален [11]  
 spoon (*n.*) лъжица [6]  
 spoonful лъжица [6]  
 sports (*adj.*) спортен [9]  
 spot петно [14]  
 spouse съпруг [3] [10]; съпруга [10]  
 spring (*n.*) пролет [9]; in the spring  
     напролет [9]  
 spring (*adj.*) пролетен [13]  
 stadium стадион [12]  
 stag елен [8]  
 stand стои [4]  
 stand, endure издържам / издържа [7]  
 stand up ставам / стана [4]  
 standard (*n.*) равнище [15]  
 start почвам / почна [10]  
 start flowing потичам / потека [12]  
 start to rain (or other precipitation)  
     завалява / завали [12]  
 startle стряскам / стресна [11];  
     стряскам се / стресна се [11]  
 state [political] щат [1]  
 station (bus, train) гара [5]  
 stay оставам / остана [3] [4]  
 stay in one place стои [11]  
 steadfast твърд [11]  
 steak пържола [4]  
 steam (*adj.*) парен [11]  
 step (*n.*) стъпка [11]  
 step back отстъпвам / отстъпя [8]  
 stepfather втори баща [10]  
 stepmother втора майка [10]; мащеха  
     [10]  
 stick (*v.*) забोधам / забодя [13]  
 still още [2]  
 stomach стомач [12]  
 stop sign стоп [10]  
 stop [bus or tram] (*n.*) спирка [7]  
 stop (*v.*) спирам / спра [11]  
 store (*n.*) магазин [5]  
 stork щъркел [13]  
 story приказка [12]; разказ [14]  
 straight (*adj.*) прав [4]  
 stranger чужденец [3]; чужденка [3]  
 strawberry ягода [11]  
 street улица [3]  
 strength сила [7]  
 stretch out простирам / простра [12]  
 string (*n.*) връзка [13]  
 string together нижа [14]; нанизвам /  
     наниза [14]  
 stroll (*n.*) разходка [9]  
 strong силен [2]  
 student [university level] студент (ка) [1]  
 student [elementary or secondary] ученик,  
     ученичка [7]
- study, examine разглеждам / разгледам  
     [4]  
 study, make a study of изучавам / изуча  
     [4]  
 stuffy задъшен [4]  
 subscribe абонирам [11]  
 succeed успявам / успея [8]  
 success успех [5]  
 such такъв, такава, толкова, такива [11]  
 suddenly изведнъж [5]  
 sugar захар [12]  
 suggestion предложение [9]  
 suit (*n.*) костюм [14]  
 suitcase куфар [2]  
 sullen намръщен [13]  
 summer лято [9]  
 summit връх [11]  
 sun слънце [9]  
 sunbathe пекá се (на слънце) [13]  
 Sunday неделя [6]  
 sunny слънчев [10]  
 supplement (*n.*) допълнение [8]  
 support (*v.*) подпирам / подпíра [14]  
 sure сигурен [6]  
 surely сигурно [9]  
 surprise (*n.*) изненада [12]  
 survey (*v.*) оглеждам / огледам [14]  
 suspect (*v.*) подозирам / подозра [14]  
 suspend закачам / закача [13]  
 sustain понáсям / понесá [14]  
 swallow (*n.*) глътка [3]  
 swallow (*v.*) глътвам / глътна [7];  
     гълтам [8]  
 sweater жилетка [12]; пулôвер [12]  
 sweet (*adj.*) сладък [3]  
 sweet shop сладкарница [14]  
 swim плувам  
 swim suit бански [13]
- T-shirt фанелка (or фланелка) [14]  
 table маса [7]; small table масичка  
     [13]  
 tail (*n.*) опашка [11]  
 take взíмам (or взéмам) / взéма [4];  
     вóдя [8]; поéмам / поéма [8]; take  
     somewhere завéждам / заведá [10]  
 take a bath изкúпвам се / изкúпя се [14]  
 take an interest in проявявам интерес към  
     [8]  
 take a look поглéждам / поглéдна [14]  
 take a walk разхóждам се / разхóдя се [8]  
 take care of погрíжвам се / погрíжа се  
     [11]  
 take for a brief stroll поразхóждам [11]  
 take for a walk разхóждам / разхóдя [10]

# English-Bulgarian Glossary

take off [clothing] съблѣчам / съблѣка [13]; съблѣчам се / съблѣка се [13]; [footwear] събѹвам / събѹя [13]; събѹвам се / събѹя се [13]  
take out извѣждам / извѣда [9]; извѣждам / извѣдя [14]  
take place състоѹ се [14]  
take to занѣсям / занесѣ [7]  
take up кѣчвам / качѣ [7]; поѣмам / поѣма [8]; заѣмам / заѣма [12]  
tale приказка [12]  
talk (v.) говорѣя [3]; приказвам [9]  
talk for a bit поговорѣвам / поговорѣя [12]  
tall висок [5]  
tape recorder [cassette] касетофон [5]  
tardiness [state of being late] закъснѣние [14]  
tassel пискюл [13]  
taste (n.) вкус [7]  
tasty вкусен [6]  
taxi такси [14]  
tea (n.) чай [7]  
tea (adj.) чаен [7]  
teach уча [5]; научѣвам / научѣ [6]  
teacher [university level] преподавател (ка) [1]; [elementary or secondary] учител (ка) [1]  
team отбор [12]  
teapot чайник [7]  
tear [in eye] сълза [12]  
tear (v.) дерѣ [12]  
teaspoon лъжичка [6]  
teaspoonful лъжичка [6]  
technology техника [12]  
telephone (n.) телефон [5]  
telephone (v.) звѣня по телефона [10]  
telephone (adj.) телефонен [13]  
television телевизия [6]  
tell разказвам / разказа [8]; разпѣвам / разпѣва [12]  
ten десет [6]  
tennis тенис [13]  
tense [verbal] време [9]  
tension напрежение [14]  
terrible страшен [9]; ужасен [12]  
terrifying страхотен [5]  
test (n.) изпит [5]  
test (v.) проверявам / проверя [13]  
textbook учебник [2]  
than от [8]; отколкото [10]  
thank благодарѣя [10]  
thank God слава Бѣгу [9]  
thank you благодарѣя [2]  
thanks, thankfulness благодарност [9]  
Thanksgiving Day Дѣн на благодарността [9]

that това [2]; онази [8]; ѡнзи [8]; ѡновѣ [8]; онаѣя [11]; ѡнуѣ [11]; ѡня [11]  
that (conjunction) че [3]; та [13]  
that way така [4]  
that's that това е [13]  
theater теѣтр [6]  
their, theirs тѣхен [8]  
them (direct object) ги [5]; тѣх [10]  
them (indirect object) им [7]; на тѣх [10]  
then, in that case тогѣва [4]; то [11]  
then, next после [6]  
thence, from there оттѣм [3]  
there тѣм [4]  
there is/are ѣма [2]; there isn't/aren't нѣма [2]  
therefore затѡва [5]  
these тѣзи [3]; тѣя [11]  
they тѣ [1]  
thigh бедрѡ [12]  
thin слаб [14]  
think мѣсля [5]  
think about помѣслям / помѣсля [12]  
think of сѣщам се / сѣтя се [11]  
think up измѣслям / измѣсля [12]  
third трѣти [8]  
thirsty жаден [2]  
thirteen тринаѣсет [6]  
thirty трийсет [6]  
this това [2]; тѣзи [3]; тѡзи [3]; тѹѣ [11]; тѡя [11]; тѣя [11]  
this evening довѣчера [9]  
those ѡнѣзи [8]; ѡнѣя [11]  
thousand хиляда [9]  
thread together нѣжа [14]  
three трѣ [2]; трѣма [6]  
three hundred трѣста [9]  
throat гѣрло [12]; гѹша [12]  
through през [6]  
throughout из [11]  
thumb пѣлец [12]  
Thursday четвѣртѣк [9]  
thus затѡва [5]; thus, that way така [4]; тѣѣ [11]  
ticket билѣт [11]  
tie (n.) врѣзка [13]  
tie (v.) заврѣзвам / заврѣжа [13]  
tied приврѣзан [11]  
tight тѣсен [2]  
tighten постѣгам / постѣгна [11]  
tile плѡчка [3]; плѡча [7]  
time време [2]; ѡn time навреме [5]  
time [instance] път [4] [6]  
time off ѡтпуска [2]  
tip (n.) врѣх [11]  
tire (v.) омрѣзвам / омрѣзна [12]  
tired уморѣн [8]

## English-Bulgarian Glossary

- title заглавие [13]  
 to (*preposition*) за [1]; до [5]; на [7]  
 to (*subordinating conjunction*) да [5]  
 toast (v.) чукам се / чука се [11]  
 today днес [1]  
 today's днешен [9]  
 toe пръст [12]; big toe палец [12]  
 together заедно [5]  
 tomato домат [6]  
 tomorrow утре [4]  
 tomorrow's утрешен [9]  
 tonight тази нощ [9]  
 tonsil сливица [12]  
 too bad жалко [11]  
 too much прекалено [13]  
 tooth зъб [6] [8]  
 torn скъсан [14]  
 touch (v.) пипам [9]  
 tour of a city разходка из града [11]  
 tourist турист [8]  
 toward към [8]  
 towel кърпа [13]  
 town град [6]  
 traffic движение [12]  
 traffic laws правила на пътното движение [12]  
 train (n.) влак [2]  
 tram трамвай [2]  
 tram (*adj.*) трамваен [7]  
 transfer прехвърлям се / прехвърля се [12]  
 translation превод [14]  
 travel (v.) пътувам [1] [3]  
 traveler пътник [7]  
 traveling (*adj.*) пътен [12]  
 travels пътуване [7]  
 treasure (n.) съкровище [13]  
 treat (v.) черпя [4]; почерпвам / почерпя [6]; третирам [8]  
 tree дърво [7]  
 trip (n.) пътуване [7]; пътешествие [11]  
 trout пъстърва [9]  
 true истински [8]; верен [10]  
 truly наистина [2]  
 truth истина [1]  
 try to convince убеждавам [14]  
 tsar цар [8]  
 Tuesday вторник [9]  
 Turks турци [6]  
 turn (v.) завивам / завия [6]; обръщам се / обърна се [14]  
 turn around въртя се [14]  
 turtle костенурка [9]  
 twelve дванайсет [6]  
 twenty два̀йсет [6]  
 twist (v.) изплитам / изплета [12]  
 two две [2] [6]; два [6]; двама [6]  
 two-colored двуцветен [13]  
 two hundred двеста [9]  
 type (n.) тип [7]  
 typical типичен [3]  
 umbrella чадър [12]  
 uncle чичко [6]; вуйчо [10]; чичо [10]  
 unconscionable прекален [13]  
 under под [3]  
 understand разбира́м [1] [3] [4]  
 understanding разби́ране [12]  
 undress (v.) съблещам / съблека́ [13]; съблещам се / съблека́ се [13]  
 uneasy неспокоен [4]  
 unfortunately за съжаление [1]  
 union (n.) съюз [14]  
 United States of America Съединените америка̀нски ща̀ти [1]  
 university (n.) университет [7]  
 university (*adj.*) университетски [12]  
 unknown непознат [5]  
 until до [6]; докато [9]; докато не [13]  
 until now досега [6]  
 up горе [11]; нагоре [11]  
 up to до [5]  
 upright прав [4]  
 USA САЩ [1]  
 us (*direct object*) ни [5]; нас [10]  
 us (*indirect object*) ни [7]; на нас [10]  
 use (n.) полза [12]  
 useful полъзен [8]  
 usual обикновен [8]  
 usually обикновено [2]  
 utter река́ [7]  
 vacation отпуска [2]; почивка [3]; вака̀нция [6]  
 various разли́чен [10]  
 vegetable зеленчу́к [7]  
 vegetarian (n.) [person] вегетери́анец [3]; вегетери́анка [3]  
 vegetarian (*adj.*) [of food] безме́сен [7]  
 verbatim наизу́ст [4]  
 verify проверя́вам / проверя́ [13]  
 very мно́го [1]  
 [the] very са́м, сама́, само́, сами́ [12]  
 videocamera видеока́мера [5]  
 videocassette видеокасе́та [12]  
 view (n.) ви́д [11]  
 vigil навече́рие [10]  
 village се́ло [2]  
 vine (n.) лоза́ [6]

# English-Bulgarian Glossary

- vine (*adj.*) лѳзов [6]  
vineyard лѳзе [10]  
visit (*v.*) ѳдвам на гѳсти [5];  
посещѳвам / посетѳ [11]  
voice (*n.*) глас [12]
- wagon вагон [6]  
waistcoat жилѳтка [12]  
wait (*v.*) почѳквам / почѳкам [7]  
wait, wait for чѳкам [3]  
wait in line редѳ се на опѳшка [12]  
waiter сервитьѳр (ка) [4]  
waiting room чѳкалня [15]  
wake събѳждам / събѳдя [11]  
wake up събѳждам се / събѳдя се [11]  
walk (*n.*) разхѳдка [9]  
walk (*v.*) вървѳ [3]; разхѳждам се /  
разхѳдя се [8]  
walk the dog извѳждам кѳчето на  
разхѳдка [9]  
walnut ѳрех [6]  
want (*v.*) ѳскам [5]; щѳ [7];  
поѳсквам / поѳскам [12]  
war (*n.*) война [7]  
warm (*v.*) грѳя [9]  
warm (*adj.*) тѳпъл [2]  
was бѳше [6] (2-3sg); бѳх [6] (1sg)  
wash (*v.*) мѳя [8]; перѳ [12];  
изпѳрам / изперѳ [12]; измѳвам /  
измѳя [13]  
wassailer сурвакар [10]  
watch (*n.*) часѳвник [7]  
water (*n.*) водѳ [4]  
water (*v.*) поливам / полѳя [13]  
wave (*v.*) махам [14]  
way наѳин [6]  
way, road пѳт [6] [8]  
we нѳе [1]  
weak слѳб [14]  
wear (*v.*) нѳся [3]  
weather (*n.*) врѳме [2]  
wedding (*n.*) свѳтба [10]  
wedding (*adj.*) свѳтбен [11]  
Wednesday срѳда [9]  
week сѳдмица [6]  
welcome добрѳ дошли [2] [11]; добрѳ  
дошла [11]; добрѳ дошѳл [11]  
well добрѳ [2]  
well (*hesitation sound*) амѳ [7]  
were бѳха [6] (3pl); бѳхме [6] (1pl);  
бѳхте [6] (2pl)  
what каквѳ [1] [4]; какѳв [3]; what is  
your name? как се кѳзвате? [1];  
what kind of какѳв [3]; щѳ [8];  
what's it about? за каквѳ стѳва дѳма?  
[11]
- whatever каквѳ ли не [12]; каквѳто  
[12]  
wheel колелѳ [14]  
when кога [6]; when, at what time в  
кѳлко часѳ [6]; като [6]  
whence, from where откѳдѳ [1]  
where кѳдѳ [1]  
whether дали [11]  
which кѳй, коѳ, коѳ, коѳ [5]  
while докѳто [9]; пѳк [11]  
white бѳл [2]  
who кѳй [3]; коѳ, коѳ, коѳ [5]  
whole (*adj.*) цѳл [7]  
wholesale на ѳдро [9]  
whom когѳ [8]  
whose чѳй, чѳй, чѳе, чѳй [8]  
why защѳ [3]; каквѳ [4]  
wide ширѳк [12]  
wife женѳ [2]  
will (*n.*) воля [12]  
will (*v.*, future tense) ще [7]  
win (*v.*) спечѳлвам / спечѳля [14]  
wind вѳтър [2] [7]  
window прозѳрец [3]; small window  
прозѳрче [13]  
wine вѳно [2]  
Winnie the Pooh Мѳчо Пѳх [11]  
winter зѳма [9]  
winter (*adj.*) зѳмен [11]  
wipe бѳрша [13]; избѳрсвам / избѳрша  
[13]  
wish (*n.*) желѳние [14]  
wish (*v.*) желѳя [7]; пожелѳвам /  
пожелѳя [8]; поѳсквам / поѳскам  
[12]  
with с [2]; със [7]  
within, in [time] за [6]  
without без [6]; без да [14]  
wizard вѳлшебник [11]  
wolf вѳлк [8]  
woman женѳ [2]  
wonder (*v.*) чѳдя се [5]; попитѳвам се /  
попитѳм се [13]  
wonderful чудѳсен [2]  
won't нѳма да [7]  
wood (*n.*) дѳрвѳ [11]  
wood, wooden дѳрвен [13]  
woods горѳ [3]  
wool (*n.*) вѳлна [21]  
wool, woollen вѳлнен [13]  
word дѳма [7]; word of honor чѳстна  
дѳма [12]  
work (*n.*) рѳбота [2] [4] [14]  
work (*v.*) рабѳтя [4] [11]  
work (*adj.*) рабѳтен [6]  
world (*n.*) свѳт [18]  
world (*adj.*) светѳвен [10]

## English-Bulgarian Glossary

wopry (v.) притеснявам / притесня [8]  
wopry, be wopried притеснявам се /  
притесня се [7]  
wrap (v.) зави́вам / зави́я [6]  
wrist кѝтка [12]  
write пѝша [3]; напѝсвам / напѝша [5]  
writer писатѝл (ка) [10]

yard двір [11]  
year година [3]  
yearly щорічний [9]  
yell вікам [12]  
yes да [1]  
yesterday вчора [9]  
yesterday evening вночі [9]

yesterday's вчѣрашен [9]  
yet още [2]; пъкъ [11]  
yield (v.) отстъпвам / отстъпя [8]  
yogurt кисело мляко [6]  
you (subject) вие [1] (*pl.*; *sg. polite*); ти [1] (*sg.*, *familiar*)  
you (direct object) ви [5] (*pl.*; *sg. polite*);  
вас [10] (*pl.*; *sg. polite*); те [5]; тебе [10] (*sg.*, *familiar*)  
you (indirect object) ви [7] (*pl.*; *sg. polite*);  
на вас [10] (*pl.*; *sg. polite*); ти [7] (*sg.*, *familiar*); на тебе [10] (*sg.*, *familiar*)  
young млад [7]  
younger по-малък [10]  
your, yours ваш [8] (*pl.*; *sg. polite*); твой [8] (*sg.*, *familiar*)



Courtyard of house in eastern Bulgarian seaside town



## INDEX

*Note: alphabetic ordering in Cyrillic lists is as in Cyrillic.*

### Accent, *see also* Intonation

- to distinguish meanings
  - numeral vs. indefinite article: 55
  - time on the clock vs. as duration: 107
  - преди in meaning "ago" vs. "before": 107, 108
  - само in meaning "only" vs. "alone": 250
- general: 13
- distinguishing present from aorist: 180
- in numbers: 111
- in present tense: 49
- of clitics after negation: 35, 91
- of prepositions: 26, 278
- of words before ли: 25
- on contrastive не: 93
- on ще: 131
- stress shifts
  - between present and aorist, summarized: 255
  - to article in feminine nouns in a consonant: 172
  - to masculine singular article: 111, 132
  - to masculine plural in -ове: 125, 132
  - to masculine plurals in -е, -а: 159
  - to theme vowel in certain aorist forms: 180
  - neuter plural: 103, 110
  - quantified vs. masculine definite object: 104-105, 111
- unstressed vowels: 14

### Adjectives

- general review: 315
- agreement with nouns: 33-34
- comparison of: 198-199
- conjoined, modifying nouns of different gender: 161
- consonant shifts in derivation: 208
- contrasted with adverbs: 50
- definiteness in: 145, 153-154
- derived from nouns: 134, 207
- expressing time past and future: 177
- fleeting vowels: 34, 40
- functioning as nouns: 153-154
- masculine form in -н: 56, 144, 153
- ordinal numbers: 144, 177
- past active participles as: 172-173, 177
- possessive pronominal adjectives
  - compared with long-form pronouns: 203
  - derivation of possessive adjectives: 207
  - мой, etc.: 146
    - definiteness in: 154-155
  - свой, etc.: 196-197
  - чий, etc.: 146
- "soft" adjective (син): 154
- stem: 40
  - subject vs. object usage: 177





## Adverbs

- general form: 50
- directional (навън, отгоре, etc.): 223-224
- indefinite (някога, някъде, etc.): 147
- interrogative (кога, къде, etc.): 147
- of location (вътре, вън, etc.): 223-224
- negative (никога, никъде, etc.): 147
- of time: 174
- usage: 55

## Agreement

- adjectives and nouns: 33-34
- adjectives with neuter plural nouns: 104
- definite articles and nouns: 33
- in conjoined adjectives: 161
- pronouns referring to nouns: 32
- "rhyming" principle: 34, 57, 199
- of past active participles: 172-173
- of verbs in да-phrases: 81
- вне with singular meaning: 41

## Aorist tense

- general: 102
- and aspect: 245-246, 256
- meaning: 103
- of a-verbs (type питам, отварям): 102
- of e-verbs
  - (type стана, пиша, пия, взема): 194-195
  - (type кля, коая): 202, 227
  - (type живея, умира): 219-220
  - (type лая, позная): 227
  - (type пера, разбира): 245
- of и-verbs
  - (type ходя, броя): 170
  - (type вървя, видя): 219
  - спя: 227
  - боли: 248
- in -ох
  - (type чета, дам, дойда, отида): 171
  - (type сека): 180
- of съм: 102
- contrast of aorist and imperfect tenses: 293-294, 301
- relationship between aorist and present tense forms: 253-255
- usage of aorist: 245-246

## Article, *see* Definiteness

## Aspect

- general review: 316
- general: 64, 132-133, 302-303
- in да-phrases: 82-83
- and the aorist: 245-246, 256
- and conjunctions: 274
- and the future tense: 122-123
- and the imperative: 65, 70, 273
- and the imperfect tense: 302-303
- derivation of imperfectives: 132
- meaning of imperfective aspect: 69

meaning of perfective aspect: 69  
 and motion verbs: 85-86, 93, 112  
 pairs  
     simplex vs. paired: 70  
     prefixation and pairs: 70, 125-127  
     meaning of paired verbs: 132-133  
 perfective of habitual action: 69  
 prefixation: 70, 125-126, 132  
 simplex imperfectives: 69-70, 126-127  
 verbs of body position: 66, 71  
 verbs with imperfective only: 69

**Body, reference to**

body language for yes/no: 46  
 verbs of body position: 66, 71  
 body-ache construction: 247-248  
 names of body parts: 251, 259

**Clitics, see Word order rules**

defined: 13-14

**Conjugation, see also Verbs; names of individual tenses**

present tense conjugations: 48-49  
 theme vowels in aorist tense: 102, 170-171, 180, 184, 219  
 theme vowels in present tense: 54  
 theme vowels in aorist and present compared: 253-255  
 theme vowel of the imperfect tense: 270, 290-291, 299

\* **Conjunctions**

and aspect: 274  
 conjoined phrases: 160  
 contrast of **и**, **а**, and **но**: 41  
 subordinate clauses: 296-297, 303  
**а**: 21, 26, 41  
**ако**: 296  
**без да**: 297  
**докато**: 274, 296  
**и**: 21, 26, 41, 160  
**или**: 160  
**както**: 177-178, 296  
**като**: 177-178, 296  
**когато**: 297  
**ни**: 155, 160  
**нито**: 155  
**но**: 41  
**преди да**: 297, 303  
**след като**: 297, 303  
**че**: 234, 297  
**щом**: 297

**Cyrillic alphabet**

names of letters: 6  
 order of letters: 6-7  
 transliteration: 6-7  
 cursive form of letters: 9-12

### Да-phrases

- as infinitive replacement: 81-82, 89-90, 127
- as subject or object of sentence: 127-128
- after хайде: 82
- with modal meaning: 128, 224-225, 273

### Definiteness

- general review: 313
- definite article: 33, 39
- definite article as possessive: 39
- definite article on adjectives: 145, 153-154
  - contrasted with on nouns: 146
- definite article on nouns: 33
  - masculine nouns, subject case: 39
  - masculine nouns, object case: 65-66, 70-71, 146
  - plural nouns in -а: 57, 103
- generic usage: 72
- indefinite article: 49-50, 54-55
- in body-ache constructions: 257
- in cardinal numbers: 232-233
- in ordinal numbers: 145
- in possessive pronominals (мой, etc.): 154-155
- in possessives with short form indirect objects: 196
- in referring to duration of time: 184
- in referring to seasons of the year: 176
- in referring to times of the day: 174
- "rhyming" definite article: 34, 57
- usage of definite article: 39, 154

### Derivation

- general: 133
- of adjectives from names of times of the day: 183
- of days of the week from numbers or descriptive nouns: 183
- of imperfectives by suffixation: 132
- of ordinal from cardinal numbers: 144
- of perfectives by prefixation: 126
- of surnames: 207, 215
- the suffixes -джия, -джийка in nouns: 206-207
- the suffix -ен in adjectives: 134, 183
- the suffix -ец in nouns: 51, 55-56
- the suffix -ин in nouns: 55-56
- the suffix -ица in nouns: 206
- the suffix -ка in nouns: 23, 56, 135
- the suffix -ник in nouns: 136
- the suffixes -ов, -ев in adjectives: 207
- the suffix -ски in adjectives: 56, 153
- the suffix -ч- in diminutives: 279-280

### Diacritics, *see* Spelling

### Dictionary forms

- alphabet order: 6-7
- of adjectives: 40
- of verbs: 49
  - aspect pairs: 64, 69-70, 93, 127
  - paired and unpaired: 126-127

- English, contrast with**  
 body parts: 259  
 capitalization of days of week or months of year: 175  
 clitics (small unaccented words): 13-14  
 conjoined adjectives: 161  
 conjoined phrases (e.g. "John and I"): 160  
 definite article  
     placement in phrase: 145  
     usage: 39  
 direct objects: 84  
 indefinite article: 49-50, 54-55  
 indirect objects: 124  
 infinitive usage: 81, 89-90  
 intonational cues: 277  
 letter-sound correspondences: 3-5  
 "double" negation: 148  
 object-raising: 89-90  
 order of alphabet: 6  
 past tense ("was, were"): 103  
 possession ("one's own" vs. another's): 197  
 pronoun agreement: 39  
 pronunciation of consonants and vowels: 3-5  
 subject pronouns obligatory or not: 24  
 tense shifts in indirect discourse: 295-296  
 time periods of the day: 182  
 time scope (present vs. perfect): 112-113  
 usage of "for" in time expressions: 107-108  
 usage of "if" vs. "whether": 249  
 usage of "it": 67  
 usage of "they": 73  
 usage of "this" vs. "that": 151  
 word order of questions: 20, 25, 66  
 word order of subject and predicate: 185

**Fleeting vowels, see Spelling**

- French and German, correspondence with**  
 impersonal **има**: 40  
 generic definiteness: 72

- Future tense**  
 general: 122  
 of **съм**: 122  
 "particle" **няма да**: 122  
 particle **ще**: 122, 131  
 placement of object pronouns: 148  
 placement of question marker: 148

- Gender**  
 general review: 313  
 and agreement: 32-34, 161  
 in nouns: 32  
 marked as feminine vs. general: 23, 205  
 marked as masculine vs. general: 112  
 of nouns referring to persons: 18, 23  
 of nouns referring to professions: 23

**Glossary lists**

- Bulgarian-English glossary: 331-356
- English-Bulgarian glossary: 357-378
- distinguishing **и-** and **е-** conjugation verbs: 49
- form of aspect pairs: 64
- form of derivatives in **-ка**: 23
- predicting fleeting vowels: 51
- predicting form of masculine article: 39
- predicting form of neuter plural: 103
- predicting gender of noun: 32, 181
- predicting verb conjugation type: 49, 54, 194

**Imperative**

- form of endings: 64-65
- choice of aspect: 65, 273
- implied command with **да**: 273
- iterative imperatives: 273
- irregular forms
  - бъди (съм)**: 131
  - виж (видя)**: 65
  - влез (вляза)**: 65
  - дай (дам)**: 70, 170
  - ела (дойда)**: 92-93
  - излез (изляза)**: 65
  - яж (ям)**: 170
- use of **заповядай** in various formulas: 232

**Imperfect tense**

- general: 270
- and the imperfective aspect: 302-303
- formation: 290-292, 299-300
- usage
  - similarity with present: 292-293
  - contrast with aorist: 293-294, 301
  - expression of simultaneity or distancing: 300

**Impersonal (and related) constructions**

- "true" impersonals
  - general: 246, 256
  - има**: 35, 40, 246
  - може**: 246-247
  - няма**: 40, 246
  - трябва**: 246-247
- contrast between conjugated form and impersonal form: 246-247
- "experiencer" constructions (**добре ми е**): 221-222
- "emotional state" constructions (**страх ме е**): 258
- "third-person" verbs
  - body-ache constructions (**боли, болят**): 247-248
  - verbs of liking (**хареса**): 248-249
  - verbs of precipitation (**вали**): 257-258
  - verbs of "feeling like" (**досмешава**): 280
- past tense of impersonal verbs: 270-271

**Indefinite article, see** Definiteness

### Infinitive

- lack of: 49
- object and subject pronouns in infinitive replacement: 89-90
- replacement by да-phrase: 81-82

### Intonation, *see also* Accent

- statements vs. questions: 25
- negative questions: 272-273, 278

### Kinship terms

- masculine nouns in a vowel (type баща, дядо): 199-200
- nicknames: 79, 200
- overview: 205
- usage: 205, 215
- with short form possessives: 196

### Negation

- general: 35
- and conjunctions: 155
- "double" negation: 148
- causing stress on following clitic: 35, 91
- contrastive: 93
- negative pronouns (никой, etc.): 147
- of има: 35
- word order in negated questions: 272-273

### Nouns

- general review: 313-314
- adjectives functioning as: 153-154
- derived from adjectives: 206
- derived from numbers: 183, 206
- derived from other nouns: 135-136, 206-207, 279-280
- derived from verbs: 135-136
- feminine nouns
  - in -а
    - plural: 18-19
  - in a consonant
    - general: 171-172
    - definite form: 172, 181
- gender: 18, 32
- masculine nouns
  - and the definite article: 33, 111, 132
  - ending in a vowel: 199-200
    - plurals in -овци: 199-200
  - consonant shifts before plural in -и: 51
  - plural in -а: 57, 159
  - plural in -е: 159
  - plural in -и: 18-19, 159
  - plural in -ища: 159
  - plural in -ове: 125, 131-132
  - quantified form: 104-105, 111
  - quantified vs. plural: 111
  - accent shifts in the plural: 125, 132, 159
- review of non-plural forms: 105, 111
  - subject vs. object in definite forms: 65-66
- neuter nouns
  - expressing abbreviations: 304
  - expressing foreign words: 304

- plural: 57, 103
- accent shift in plural: 103
- irregular plural of око, ухо: 251
- vocative forms
  - masculine: 18, 24, 34
  - feminine: 18, 24, 35, 40

#### Numbers

- general review: 315-316
- and the definite article: 232-233
- as indefinite article: 50
- cardinal (up to 100): 104
- cardinal (beyond 100): 176
- compound numbers: 104
- historical source of -найсет, -йсет: 110-111
- in counting: 110
- masculine numbers (двама, etc.): 105, 112
- ordinal numbers: 144, 177, 233

#### Participles

- general overview: 317
- sample paradigms for participles/other forms: 327-328
- past active (L-participle)
  - formation: 172
  - adjectival use: 172-173, 177
  - use within past indefinite tense: 173
  - use in welcome expressions: 232

#### Particles

- бе: 114
- де: 234
- ето: 85, 128
- я: 114
- word order: 114

#### Passive

- third-person passives: 73

#### Past tense

- and aspectual meaning: 302-303
- and indirect discourse: 295-296
- contrast between aorist and imperfect: 270, 293-294, 301
- of impersonal verbs: 270-271
- past indefinite tense: 173
- simple past tense = aorist: 102

#### Prefixes

- and aspect: 70, 125-126
- and motion verbs: 92
- in adverbs of direction or location: 223-224, 230-231

#### Prepositions

- general: 20
- idiomatic use in time expressions: 108, 178
- multiple prepositions: 113
- без
  - in time expressions: 107-108
  - meaning "without": 113

- на**
- as opposed to **на**: 86-87
  - meaning "in, into": 36, 66
  - expressing day of week: 175, 178
  - expressing time of day: 106-108
  - spelled **във**: 133
- до**
- as opposed to **при**: 129
  - in time expressions: 106-108
  - meaning "by, to": 36
- за**
- after verbs of communication: 200
  - in time expressions: 108
  - meaning "for": 21
  - used in toasts: 225
- из**
- expressing non-directional movement in closed area: 225
- като**
- meaning "as, like": 51
- към**
- meaning "towards": 150
- на**
- as opposed to **в**: 86-87
  - correspondence to Russian case endings: 26
  - expressing a date: 175, 178
  - expressing intervals of space or time: 151
  - in dates: 144
  - in expressions of age: 108
  - indirect object meaning: 113, 124
  - meaning "on, at, in": 37
  - possessive meaning: 36, 87, 113
  - review of meanings: 113
- освен**
- meaning "except (for)": 72
- от**
- expressing comparison: 199, 200
  - in time expressions: 106-108, 112, 184
  - meaning "from": 20, 150
  - meaning "of, than": 150
  - specifying ingredients of something: 71
- по**
- distributive meaning: 52
  - expressing duration of time: 184
  - meaning "about" (time): 129, 178
  - meaning "along, by": 52, 87
  - meaning "of, as": 87
  - meaning "on, with, per": 274
- под**
- meaning "under": 52
- преди**
- in time expressions: 106-108, 184
  - distinct from **преди** да: 303
- през**
- expressing duration of time: 184
  - expressing intervals of time or space: 151
  - expressing season of the year: 176, 178
  - expressing time in the 24-hour period: 178
  - expressing time in a month: 175, 178



- expressing time in a year: 177, 178
- meaning "through": 129
- при**
  - as opposed to до: 129
  - as opposed to у: 200
  - meaning "at": 129, 200
- с**
  - expressing comparison: 200
  - meaning "with": 37
  - spelled със: 133
- след**
  - in time expressions: 106-108
  - distinct from след като: 303
- у**
  - as opposed to при: 200
  - meaning "at": 200

#### Present tense

- a-conjugation: 19, 48
- e-conjugation: 48
- и-conjugation: 48
- and scope of time: 112-113
- of мога: 82
- of съм: 19
- relationship between present and aorist tense forms: 253-255
- similarity with imperfect tense: 292-293

#### Pronouns, *see also* Adjectives, possessive pronominal

- general review: 314-315
- demonstrative
  - онзи, etc.: 151
  - този, etc.: 49, 151
  - distinction between този and онзи: 151
  - "presentative" това: 41, 49
  - тоя, оня, etc.: 224
  - similarity to personal pronouns: 54
- inclusive
  - всеки, всичко, etc.: 113-114
- indefinite
  - някой, etc.: 147
  - use of object form някого: 147-148
- interrogative
  - кой, etc.: 85
  - кой, какъв, etc.: 147
  - use of object form кого: 147-148
- negative
  - никой, etc.: 147
  - нищо: 147
- personal
  - direct object: 83
    - after няма and ето: 85
    - to express states of emotion: 258
    - word order: 84, 173
  - indirect object: 123
    - word order: 123, 173
    - to express possession: 195-197
    - to express states ("experiencer"): 221-222

long forms

- contrasted with short forms: 195, 202
- in comparison with possessive adjectives: 203
- reflexive form: 203
- usage: 195, 220

potential confusion of object and subject: 89-90

short form and long form together ("doubled pronouns")

- general: 220
- in "experienter" constructions: 222
- word order: 220-221
- reflexive only doubled (себе си): 227

short form reduplication after noun

- general: 128
- after **ето, няма**: 128
- and inverted word order: 278-279

similarity to demonstrative: 54

subject: 19

- gender and subject pronouns: 24
- subject pronouns optional: 24, 81, 89
- ти** vs. **вие**: 19, 24, 99
- agreement with **вие**: 41

the pronoun **сам**: 250

**Pronunciation, see also Accent**

consonants

- in contrast with English: 3, 5
- lengthened consonants in definite form: 181
- soft vs. hard consonants: 5
- voicing assimilation: 15
- word-final position: 15

definite article: 70-71

"grammatical pronunciation" (**а** as **ъ**): 15-16

- of 1<sup>st</sup> singular and 3<sup>rd</sup> plural present: 49, 54
- of **са** (3<sup>rd</sup> plural of **съм**): 19
- of definite article object form or in **-ят**: 33, 70-71

names of alphabet letters: 6

prepositional phrases: 26

prepositions with doubled consonant sounds: 133

vowels

- in contrast with English: 4-5
- in unstressed position: 14

**Questions**

general: 20

"double" interrogatives: 86

"embedded": 66, 249-250

in the future tense: 148

with question words: 20, 24-25

with question marker **ли**: 20, 25, 36

with question marker **нали**: 56

word order: 20, 25, 36, 249

word order in negated questions: 272-273

yes-no questions: 20, 25

**"Reflexive"**

the particle **се**

- with verbs: 26, 148-150, 158
- as direct object pronoun: 83-84, 276

- as reflexive pronoun: 149
- as part of "true reflexive" verb: 149, 271-272
- as "verbal additive": 149-150
- with intransitive meaning: 222
- with non-causative meaning: 229
- retaining seeming transitive meaning: 229-230
- with reciprocal meaning: 222-223
- the particle **си**
  - with verbs: 148-150, 158, 197-198
  - as indirect object pronoun: 123, 276
  - as reflexive pronoun: 149
  - as part of "true reflexive" verb: 149, 272
  - as "verbal additive" signifying connectedness or intimacy: 150, 198
  - expressing possession: 196-197
  - with motion verbs: 198
  - with reciprocal meaning: 223
  - себе си**: 203, 227
- distinction between **се** and **си** as verbal additive: 150, 158
- the possessive pronominal **свой**: 196-197, 204
- the pronoun **сам**: 250
- reflexive verbs: 271-272

#### Russian, correspondences or contrast with

- alphabet: 3
- aspect system: 132-133
- borrowings from Russian: 136
- cases vs. prepositions: 26
- impersonal **има** and **няма**: 40-41
- numbers and gender (**две** vs. **два**): 110

#### **Се**, see "Reflexive"

#### Social formulas

- greetings appropriate to time of day: 174
- toasts and good wishes: 225
- welcome formulas: 232

#### Spelling

- я / е** alternation
  - general rule: 40, 72
  - in adjectives: 34, 145
  - in the imperfect tense: 290-291, 299
  - in neuter nouns: 110
  - in possessive pronominals (**техен**): 147
  - in verb roots: 72
- capitalization: 174
- commas: 234
- consonant shifts
  - from **к, г** to **ц, з** in masculine plurals: 51, 136, 205
  - from **г** to **ж**
    - in the verb **мора**: 82
    - in derivation: 208
  - from **к** to **ч**
    - in the verb **река**: 136
    - in the verbs **сека, облека, съблека**: 180-181
    - in derivation: 208
  - from **ц** to **ч** in derivation: 208

- from **ш, ж** to **с, з**
  - between present and aorist: 194, 202, 255
  - between perfective and derived imperfective: 202, 255
- from **м** to nothing in verbs like **взема**: 194
- fleeting vowels
  - in adjectives: 34, 40
  - in definite adjectives: 145
  - in masculine plural nouns: 131-132
  - in nouns generally: 51
  - in nouns in **-еѣ**: 51
  - in ordinal numbers: 144
  - in quantified forms: 105
  - in possessive pronominals (**техен, неин**): 147
  - in the vocative of proper names: 34
- foreign names: 22
- hard and soft consonants: 5-6, 131, 154
  - in masculine definite articles: 33, 39, 65, 70, 159
  - before masculine plural ending: 131
  - before adjective endings: 154
- й** vs. **и**: 8, 123
- й** and vowels: 5-6, 33
- masculine definite article: 33, 39
- sound-letter correspondences: 3-6
- transliteration: 6-7
- verb-conjugation type indicator: 49

**Subjectless sentences, see also Impersonal constructions**

- general: 67
- third-person passives: 73

**"Third-person" verbs, see Impersonal constructions**

**Time expressions, see also individual prepositions**

- according to 24-hour clock: 107
- dates: 144-145
- days of the week: 175, 183
- months of the year: 175
- reference to time ahead or past: 177
- seasons of the year: 174
- time as duration: 107-108, 185
- time of day: 173-174, 182
- time of the clock: 106-107
- years: 177

**Usage of certain words**

- бе** (= **беше**): 103
- бе** (particle): 114
- боли**: 247-248, 257
- бъда**: 122, 273-274
- вали**: 257-258
- вечер**: 174
- вървя**: 86, 112
- големите**: 72
- горе-долу**: 231
- госпожа**: 30
- дали**: 249-250
- де**: 234
- довечера**: 174

догодина: 184

добре дошли: 232  
 другар: 30  
 души: 105  
 ето: 85, 128  
 заповядайте: 232  
 ида: 92  
 идвам: 86, 92-93, 112  
 има: 35, 40  
 интересувам (се): 229-230  
 какъв: 50-51, 147  
 ли: 20, 25, 36, 86, 148, 157, 249  
 лягам / легна vs. лежа: 66, 71  
 лягам си: 158  
 малките: 72  
 минал: 177  
 много: 104  
 мога: 82, 301  
 нали: 56  
 нещо: 110, 147  
 няма: 40, 85, 128  
 обичам: 248  
 обяд (and обед): 182  
 оплаквам (се): 230  
 отивам: 86, 92, 112  
 подсещам: 230  
 почина: 158  
 преподавател (ка): 30  
 път ("time"): 231  
 сещам се: 230  
 следващ: 177  
 спомням си: 158  
 срам: 258  
 ставам / стана vs. стоя: 66, 71  
 страх: 258  
 студент (ка): 30, 142  
 сутрин: 174  
 сърби: 258  
 сядам / седна vs. седа: 66, 71  
 ученик, ученичка: 142  
 учител (ка): 30  
 хайде: 82  
 харесвам: 249  
 ходя: 106, 112  
 хора: 105  
 цял: 184  
 часът, часа: 106-107  
 честито: 232  
 човек: 105  
 ща: 131  
 яд: 258

Variation

in form of demonstrative pronouns: 224  
 optional final syllable of long form pronoun objects: 203  
 two future tense forms of съм: 122  
 in accent of certain neuter nouns: 110

in accent of certain aorist forms: 180  
 in the imperfect tense forms of certain verbs: 299-300  
 in ordinal numbers (първ vs. първи): 233  
 pronunciation of masculine definite forms: 70-71  
 transitive or intransitive use of хареса(м): 249  
 свой or си: 204  
 зная vs. знам: 73

**Verbs** (see also names of individual tenses)

general review: 316-317  
 alternate forms, зная and знам: 73  
 aorist tense: 102-103  
 imperfect tense: 270  
 names of tenses: 183, 256  
 of body position: 66, 71  
 of motion: 85-86, 92-93, 106, 112  
 present tense: 19, 48-49  
 sample paradigms, all tenses and moods: 320-327  
 verb types classified by aorist-present relationship: 254  
**съм**  
 and word order rules: 92  
 as copula (with predicate): 55, 92, 110, 203-204  
 imperative: 131  
 in questions: 20, 25  
 past tense: 102  
 perfective form (бъда): 131, 273-274  
 present tense: 19

**Vocative, see Nouns**

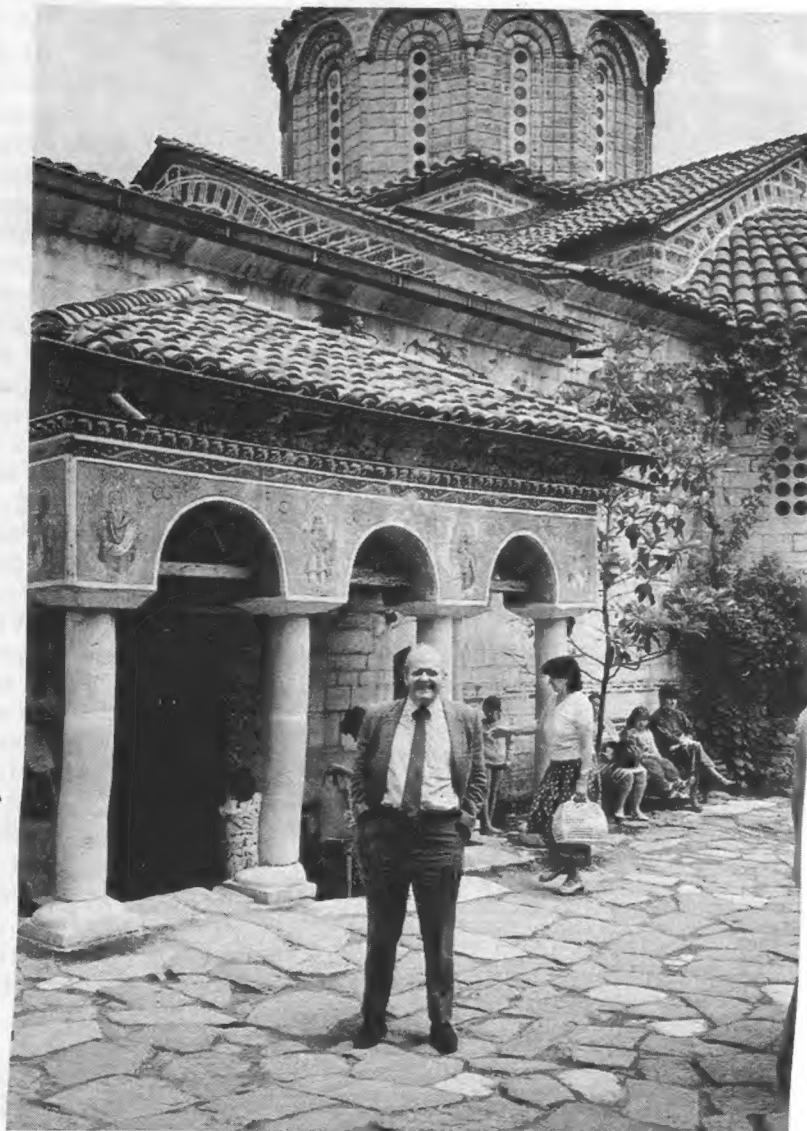
**Word order**

и vs. а in sentence initial position: 26  
 of two object pronouns: 131, 173  
 past tense of съм: 110  
 questions with question words: 20, 25  
 questions with ли  
 yes-no: 20  
 change of focus: 36  
 questions with съм: 20  
 subject inversion: 185  
 with clitics: 21

**Word order rules**

general review: 317-319  
 general: 90, 155, 181  
 definitions of notation  
 general conventions: 90, 155  
 Conj. (conjunction): 90  
 COP (copula, съм): 92  
 DIR (direct object): 90  
 Fut. (future): 156  
 IND (indirect object): 131  
 INT (interrogative): 91  
 Neg. (negation): 91  
 neg.Conj. (negative future): 156  
 body-ache constructions: 257  
 conjunctions (да) and negation (не): 91  
 direct object pronouns: 91

doubled pronouns: 227-228  
"experiencer" constructions: 228-229  
future tense: 156  
indirect object pronouns: 131  
negated future: 156-157  
negated questions in the present: 204, 276-278  
negated questions in the future: 157  
order "indirect - direct": 181-182  
predicates (after copula **съм**): 92  
question particle (**ли**): 91  
questions in the future: 157  
reflexive constructions: 276  
sequence of two object pronouns: 181-182  
short-form possessive constructions: 203  
similarity of future and negated present: 156  
third-singular copula placement: 204  
with particles: 114



Professor Eric Hamp in the courtyard of Bachkovo Monastery in the northern Rhodope Mountains